

PA 2087

.A3

1831







DR. A. ADAM'S

RUDIMENTS

OF

LATIN AND ENGLISH GRAMMAR,

WITH NUMEROUS

EXPANSIONS AND ADDITIONS,

DESIGNED

TO MAKE THE WORK MORE ELEMENTARY AND COMPLETE, AND
TO FACILITATE THE ACQUISITION OF A THOROUGH
KNOWLEDGE OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE.

BY JAMES D. JOHNSON, A. M.

Grammaticæ est ars, necessaria pueris, jucunda senibus, dulcis secretorum comes, et quæ vel sola omni studiorum genere plus habet operis, quam ostentationis. Ne quis igitur tanquam parva fastidiat Grammatices elementa; quia interiora velut sacri hujus adeuntibus, apparebit multa rerum subtilitas, quæ non modo acuere ingenia puerilia, sed exercere altissimam quoque eruditionem ac scientiam possit.—*Quintilian*, i. 4, 5.

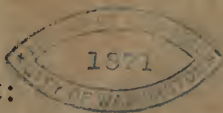
IMPROVEMENTS ON THE THIRD NEW-YORK, FROM THE LAST
ENGLISH EDITION OF ADAM'S.

Philadelphia:

PUBLISHED BY KEY & MIELKE, 175 MARKET-ST.

STEREOTYPED BY J. HOWE.

1831.



CONTENTS.

	Page		Page
Part I. ORTHOGRAPHY, which treats		Government of Words in Simple Sen-	
<i>of Letters</i>	9	tences	144
Diphthongs	11	I. Government of Substantives	ib.
Syllables	ib.	II. Government of Adjectives	146
Part II. ETYMOLOGY, which treats of		III. Government of Verbs	151
<i>Words</i>	12	1. Verbs governing one case.....	ib.
Division of Words or Parts of Speech	13	2. Verbs governing two cases.....	157
The Article;—wanting in Latin.....	ib.	Construction of Passive Verbs	160
I. Noun or Substantive	14	“ “ of Impersonal Verbs ...	161
English Nouns	15	“ “ of the Infinitive	163
Latin Nouns	16	“ “ of Participles, &c.	164
Declension of Nouns	ib.	Construction of Gerunds	165
Gender of Nouns	17	“ “ of Supines	167
First Declension	20	“ “ of Adverbs	ib.
Second Declension	22	Government of Adverbs	169
Third Declension	26	Construction of Prepositions.....	170
Fourth Declension	42	“ “ of Circumstances.....	174
Fifth Declension	43	1. Price	ib.
Coupled Compound Nouns	44	2. Manner and Cause.....	175
Irregular Nouns	ib.	3. Place.....	ib.
Division of Nouns, according to their		4. Measure and Distance	177
signification and derivation.....	50	5. Time.....	178
Adjective	52	Compound Sentences	179
Numeral Adjectives	57	Sentences are compounded by Rela-	
Comparison of Adjectives	60	tives and Conjunctions.....	ib.
II. Pronoun	62	Constructions of Relatives.....	ib.
English Pronouns	ib.	“ “ of Conjunctions	181
Latin Pronouns.....	63	“ “ of Comparatives	186
1. Simple Latin Pronouns	ib.	The Ablative Absolute	187
2. Compound Latin Pronouns	67		
III. Verb	69	APPENDIX to SYNTAX: containing	
English Verbs	71	I. Various Signification and Con-	
Conjugation of Latin Verbs	75	struction of Verbs	190
First Conjugation	80	II. Figurative Construction, or Fig-	
Second Conjugation	85	ures of Syntax	204
Third Conjugation	86	III. Analysis and Translation	207
Fourth Conjugation	89	IV. Different Kinds of Style	210
Formation of the different parts of		V. Figures of Rhetoric	211
Latin Verbs.....	90	1. Figures of Words or Tropes	ib.
Signification of the different Tenses.	93	2. Repetition of Words	215
Verbs of the First Conjugation.....	96	3. Figures of Thought	216
“ “ Second do.....	97		
“ “ Third do.....	100	Part IV. PROSODY, which treats of the	
“ “ Fourth do.....	110	<i>Quantity of Syllables, of Accent, and</i>	
Deponent and Common Verbs	111	<i>Verse</i>	219
Irregular Verbs	116	I. Quantity of Syllables	ib.
Defective Verbs	123	1. Quantity of first and middle Syl-	
Impersonal Verbs	125	lables	221
Redundant Verbs	127	2. Quantity of final Syllables....	227
Obsolete Conjugation	128	3. Quantity of Derivatives and	
Derivation and Composition of Verbs	129	Compounds	230
IV. Participle	130	II. Accent	232
V. Adverb	132	III. Verse	233
VI. Preposition	135	The measuring of Verses by Feet, or	
VII. Interjection	137	Scanning	ib.
VIII. Conjunction	ib.	Different kinds of Verse	234
Part III. SYNTAX, or CONSTRUCTION,		Figures in Scanning.....	238
<i>which treats of Sentences</i>	137	Different kinds of Poems.....	241
Division of Sentences into Simple and		Combination of Verses in Poems....	ib.
Compound	ib.	Different kinds of Verse in Horace	
I. Simple Sentences	140	and Buchanan	242
Concord or Agreement of Words in		English Verse.....	245
Simple Sentences	ib.		
		Appendix.—Punctuation, Capitals,	
		Division of Months, Coins, &c....	248

ADAM'S PREFACE.

THE Compiler was first led, at an early period of life, to think of composing this book, by observing the hurtful effects of teaching boys Grammar Rules in Latin verse, which they did not understand; while they were ignorant, not only of the principles of that language, but also of those of their mother-tongue. Experience has since afforded him the most convincing proofs of the impropriety of this practice; and his opinion has been still further confirmed by perusing the writings of the old grammarians, and of the most eminent among the moderns. The old grammarians, *Charisius, Diomedes, Priscianus, Probus, Donatus, Servius, Victorinus, Augustinus, Cassiodorus, Macrobius, Beda, Alcuinus*,* &c. have no verse rules: and so in later times, *Perotte, Manutius, Erasmus, Valerius, Buchanan, Milton*, &c. Nicolaus Perotte was one of the chief restorers of learning in the fifteenth century. He died archbishop of Siponto in 1480. The Compiler has a copy of the first edition of his grammar, printed at Brescia, anno 1474. It is composed by way of question and answer, but without any verse rules.—Soon after the invention of printing, and perhaps before, for the Compiler has not been able to ascertain the precise period, the custom was introduced of expressing the principles of almost every art and science in Latin and Greek verse. The rules of logic, and even the aphorisms of Hippocrates, were taught in this manner. Among the versifiers of Latin grammar, *Despauter* and *Lily* were the most conspicuous. The first complete edition of Despauter's Grammar was printed at Cologne, anno 1522; his *Syntax* had been published anno 1509. Lily was made first master of St. Paul's school in London, by Dr. Colet, its founder, anno 1510; so that he was contemporary with Despauter. His grammar was appointed by an act which is still in force, to be taught in the established schools of England. Various attempts were afterwards made by different authors, as, *Sanctius, Alvarus, Scioppius, Kirkwood, Watt, Rudiman*, &c. to improve on the plan of Despauter and Lily; but with little success. The truth is, it seems impracticable to ex-

* TERENTIANUS MAURUS, a learned grammarian, by birth an African, who is supposed to have lived under Trajan, and wrote in verse, treats only of poetry.

press with sufficient perspicuity the principles of grammar in Latin verse; and it appears strange, that when scholastic jargon is exploded from elementary books on other sciences, it should be retained by public authority, where it ought never to have been admitted, in Latin grammars for children. But such is the force of habit and attachment to established modes, that we go on in the use of them, without thinking whether they be founded in reason or not. When there are a great many exceptions from a general rule, whatever can assist the memory is no doubt useful. On this account the principal rules for the genders of nouns, &c. are here subjoined, for local reasons, from Ruddiman's Grammar; although many of them are by no means adapted to the capacity of boys: and more of them are inserted, in compliance with the opinion of others, than the Compiler judges necessary.* They are printed at the end of the book; and such as choose it, may have Lily's rules, Watt's rules, or any other, substituted in their place.

The authors of the *Nouvelle Methode*, or *Port Royal Grammar* in France, judging it as absurd to teach Latin by rules in Latin verse, as to teach Greek by rules in Greek verse, or Hebrew by rules in Hebrew, composed the rules of Latin grammar in French verse. Some authors in England, as *Clarke*, *Philips*, &c. have imitated their example. But this plan has not in either country been much followed. Nothing can be more uncouth than such versification. So that Latin rules, on the whole, seem preferable. However this may be, the following remarks concerning the method of teaching Latin, it is hoped, will not be deemed improper.

When the learner is once master of the inflexion of nouns and verbs, he should be exercised in getting by heart words and phrases, while at the same time he is employed in reading some easy author, and in turning plain sentences from English into Latin. The sooner he can be brought to write part of his exercises, the better; but he should never be obliged to get grammar rules, in Latin verse, till he is capable of understanding them by himself: because, though the teacher may explain them, the scholar will soon forget the interpretation, and repeat the words merely by rote, without attending to their meaning. Nor should he be forced to get rules in Latin verse, which may be remembered equally well in English prose. Rules in verse are only useful when they assist the memory; as when there is a number of exceptions from a general rule, where alone they are indeed

* Not printed in this new edition.

of advantage : and even here, perhaps, any chime of words might answer the purpose as well as Latin hexameters. It is of importance, when the rule is long, that the learner be accustomed to repeat no more of it than is strictly applicable to the word or phrase in question. The repetition of the whole is a useless waste of time. The great object ought to be, to bring the learner, in as short time as possible, to join without hesitation an adjective with a substantive in any case, number, or degree of comparison ; and in like manner to touch upon any part of a verb, and tell readily by what case any adjective, verb, or preposition, is followed. The facility practice alone can teach, and the method of acquiring it, must in all languages be much the same.

The niceties of construction, the figures of syntax, and the other parts of grammar, should be occasionally taught, as the learner proceeds in reading the more difficult authors.

As the ancient Romans joined the grammar of their own language with that of the Greek : so we ought to connect the study of English grammar with that of the Latin ; and when the learner properly understands Latin grammar, he ought to join with it the study of the Greek : the knowledge of both these languages being requisite for the thorough understanding of the English. This is the practice in England, and other countries, where the best Greek and Latin scholars are formed. It is particularly necessary in Scotland to pay attention to the English, in conjunction with the Latin, as by neglecting it, boys at school learn many improprieties in point of grammar, as well as of pronunciation, which it is difficult in after life to correct.* This attention is less requisite in England : though even there, in the opinion of Dr. Lowth, to use his own words, "the connexion of the English with the Latin grammar, if it could be introduced into schools, might be of good service."

* Let teachers in the United States heed this remark of Dr. Adam's, and keep their pupils "to the English in conjunction with the Latin."—Ep.

PREFACE

TO

JOHNSON'S ADAM'S.

THE frequent change of Latin grammars in our schools and colleges, proves pretty conclusively that they are incomplete and unsatisfactory. And while the diversity used by different instructors, needlessly swells the expense and retards the progress of the pupil in his preparatory course; economy and the best interests of classic learning, earnestly demand some remedy for these evils. But individual dictation or opposition to the current of established usage on this subject, would be equally presumptuous and unavailing. You may tell parents and guardians of the waste of money, time, and mind, involved in the change of elementary books generally followed by every change in teachers; but custom, ignorance, prejudice, and selfishness array themselves successfully against you, and the child not unfrequently is condemned to all the drudgery and detriment incident to a revolution for the worse. And it seems as if nothing but the interposition of authorities regularly constituted from all departments of the republic of letters in our union, can effectually regulate this important matter. Such a body might select and sanction the best standard authors, as text-books adapted to the whole academic course, and thereby secure to them uniformity and excellence; and they might also in a great degree check that *cacoethes scribendi*, which incumbers science, by a worse than useless multiplication of books. Until our universities and minor institutions shall delegate such a congress of literati, the evil cannot be removed; and classic literature must labor much for want of more uniformity and perfection in every elementary treatise, and especially in grammars. Individual exertion, however, may not be entirely lost, if it be applied to any good work already extensively patronized, so as to combine in that, without material alteration in its arrangement,* the best of such valuable matter, as gives popularity to the choice works of a like kind. With this view, the edition of Adam's now under consideration was planned and partly executed, ten or

* So trivial is the change in arrangement, that students of the same class may without inconvenience use this with any previous edition of Adam's.

twelve years ago; and though somewhat anticipated by Mr. Gould's estimable edition of 1825, yet it is believed so little interfered with in its main design, as not to lessen the necessity and value of filling up the original outline, with all the fullness and minuteness of detail at first proposed. Indeed, that some likeness should exist in works of this kind, is not wonderful; since streams from the same fountains must naturally resemble each other. And besides, a compiler aims not at originality, but at increased utility. The subjoined expansions and additions have been suggested, and proved useful, during a long course of teaching. They are designed both to make the acquisition of Latin more easy, and still to leave ample scope for that invigorating exercise of the *comparing* and other faculties of the opening mind, which the study of the languages is so *eminently* and *exclusively* qualified to give. There is a brevity in some of our Latin grammars, and a prolixity in others, that equally perplex and obscure. Between these, a just medium, as far as possible, ought to be preserved; so that the beginner may neither be disheartened by too much conciseness, nor rendered indolent by too much simplicity and plainness. And as most students seldom ever look beyond the grammar they first learn, it is of the utmost consequence that that should be sufficiently full to give them a critical knowledge of the structure and peculiarities of the Latin language; and at the same time so elemental as to suit the capacity of the youngest scholar. The primary course should comprise the larger print, and gradual advances be made on the more critical parts as the pupil grows in knowledge, until he is perfect master of the whole. For if you would make *profound scholars*, keep them to First Principles, and let the grammar be daily studied through the whole course, a due proportion of English grammar and parsing being interlarded.

The principal variations in this edition are as follows: A view of some of the vowel sounds, and also of the powers of a few other letters; additional rules for syllabication; a general rule for the neuter gender. The English is affixed to several examples of nouns, pronouns, and verbs, leaving the pupil to the mental discipline requisite to English the rest. Many Greek as well as Latin nouns of peculiar construction are declined at length. Examples are added to the paradigms of the third, and one to that of the fifth declension. An article is given on coupled compound nouns. An enlarged account of numeral letters is transferred from the appendix to the chapter on numeral adjectives, that the pupil may learn them as early as possible.

The import of some pronouns is given, and a few of the more difficult compound ones declined. To the third conjugation is added a paradigm of its verbs in *io*, as far as they differ from *lęgo*. Rules full and simple are given for forming the verb from the present and perfect Indic. active, and supine in *um*. *Lętor* is declined at length, and a synopsis given of the modes and tenses of deponent examples in the other three conjugations. By a new arrangement, the defective verbs are easier to learn. *Edo*, to eat, is declined as far as it is redundant. Throughout the whole, the vowel quantity in many words has been marked, and numerous typographical errors of long standing have been corrected.

Rules and explanations have been interspersed through the prosody; the appendix enlarged by remarks, with a table showing the correspondence of the Roman with our own method of reckoning the days of the month; and lastly, a short chapter on Roman coins has been added, exhibiting the value of a few of them in Sterling and Federal money. For these variations in the main, selections have been made from approved current sources, as well as from those excellent *laid by* works, whose rich materials constitute most of the bone and sinew of the whole race of Latin grammars now in vogue. And in presenting this grammar to the community, and thereby adding to the multitude that almost continuously pour from the press without apparent reason; no other apology seems necessary than what may be found in the incessant calls of an experience of fourteen years' teaching, for just such helps as it affords. And if the cause of sound learning shall be advanced by this humble effort to facilitate the teaching and acquisition of a language the vehicle of much sacred and important knowledge, its end will be answered, and the labor not prove fruitless. Under these circumstances, and for these purposes, with whatever claims to patronage it may possess, this grammar now stands at the tribunal of an intelligent public, with full confidence that, after an impartial examination, its adoption or rejection will ultimately rest upon this sound principle,

"Si quid novisti, rectius istis,
Candidus imperti: si non, his utere mecum."

Oxford, North Carolina, October 5, 1830.

THE
RUDIMENTS
OF
LATIN AND ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

GRAMMAR is the art of speaking and writing correctly.

Latin or English Grammar is the art of speaking and writing the Latin or the English language correctly.

The *Rudiments* of Grammar are plain and easy instructions, teaching beginners the first principles and rules of it.

Grammar treats of sentences, and the several parts of which they are compounded.

Sentences consist of words: Words consist of one or more syllables: Syllables of one or more letters. So that Letters, Syllables, Words, and Sentences, make up the whole subject of Grammar.

LETTERS.

A letter is the mark of a sound, or of an articulation of sound.

That part of Grammar which treats of letters, is called *Orthography*.

The letters in Latin are twenty-five: A, a; B, b; C, c; D, d; E, e; F, f; G, g; H, h; I, i; J, j; K, k; L, l; M, m; N, n; O, o; P, p; Q, q; R, r; S, s; T, t; U, u; V, v; X, x; Y, y; Z, z.

In English, there is one letter more, namely, W, w.

Letters are divided into *Vowels* and *Consonants*.

Six are vowels; *a, e, i, o, u, y*.* All the rest are consonants.

A vowel makes a full sound by itself; as, *a, e*.

A consonant cannot make a perfect sound without a vowel; as, *b, d*.

A vowel is properly called a *simple sound*; and the sounds formed by the concurrence of vowels and consonants, *articulate sounds*.

* There can be no syllable without a vowel.

The Latin vowels have each a long and a short sound—Thus : *a* is sounded short like *ă* in *păn*, *făn* : or long like *a* in *spār*, *ārm*, *bāsin*.

e is short like *ě* in *pěn* : and long like *ē* in *hē*, *frēe*.

i is short like *ĭ* in *fĭn*, *bĭrd*, *vĭrtue* : long like *ī* in *līne*, *dīre*.

o is short like *ō* in *spōt*, *sōt* : long like *ō* in *rōte*, *vōte*.

u is short like *ŭ* in *hŭt*, *ŭnder* : long like *ū* in *flūte*, *mūle*.

*y** is short like *ŷ* in *sŷncope* : long like *ȳ* in *sȳthe*.

Consonants are divided into *Mutes*, *Semi-Vowels*, and *Double Consonants*.

A mute is so called, because it entirely stops the passage of the voice ; as, *p*, in *ap*.

The mutes are *p*, *b* ; *t*, *d* ; *c*, *k*, *q*, and *g* : but *b*, *d*, and *g*, perhaps may more properly be termed *Semi-mutes*.

A semi-vowel, or half vowel, does not entirely stop the passage of the voice ; thus, *al*.

The semi-vowels are, *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *f*. The first four of these are also called *Liquids*, particularly *l* and *r* ; because they flow softly and easily after a mute in the same syllable ; as, *bla*, *stra*.

The mutes and semi-vowels may be thus distinguished. In naming the mutes, the vowel is put after them ; as *pe*, *be*, &c. but in naming the semi-vowels, the vowel is put before them ; as, *el*, *em*, &c.

Z seems not to be a double consonant in English. It has the same relation to *s*, as *v* has to *f*, being sounded somewhat more softly.

In Latin *z*, and likewise *k* and *y*, are found only in words derived from the Greek.

C sounds hard, like *k*, before *a*, *o*, *u*, *l*, *r* ; as, *cado*, *conor* : but commonly soft like *s*, before *e*, *i*, *y*, *æ*, *œ*, and an apostrophe noting *e* cut off : as, *ācer*, *cĭbus*, &c.

G usually sounds soft like *j*, before *e*, *i*, *y*, *æ*, *œ*, and an apostrophe noting *e* cut off ; or before another *g* followed by *e* ; as, *gyrus*, *aggĕr*, *tragædia* : but hard before *a*, *o*, *u*, *l*, and *r*, like the English *g* in *gum*, *go*, *get* ; as, *gustus*, *gāneo*.

* These vowels have other varieties of sound, as they have in English ; and may in general be truly sounded by following the analogy of our language.

Though there is much diversity in the pronunciation of the *a* in Latin words, yet perhaps the prevailing pronunciation in our country and on the continent of Europe, is like *a* broad, as in *army*, *marrow*, *far* ; or the Italian *a* in *father*. But the true pronunciation of the Latin tongue being lost, and all nations pronouncing it as they do their own, many classic teachers adopt English analogy as their standard in pronouncing Latin ; and subject the letter *a* to such rules as regulate its sound in English. Thus every accented *ā*, ending a syllable, is pronounced by such teachers like *a* in *flavor*, *caper* : but *a*, ending an unaccented syllable, has the obscure sound of *a* in *farmer*.

Ti when a vowel follows, sounds like *shi* ; as, *Natio, quoties* ; except when it begins a word ; as, *Tiara* ; and when *s* or *x* comes immediately before it, as *questio, mixtio, istius* ; and in infinitives ending in *er* by paragoge ; as, *mittier* ; and in Greek derived words ; as, *politia* ; and also when the accent is on the vowel following the *t* ; as, *satietas*.*

Y in English is sometimes a consonant, as in *youth*.

H by some is not accounted a letter, but only a breathing.

DIPHTHONGS.

A diphthong is two vowels joined in one sound.

If the sound of both vowels be distinctly heard, it is called a *Proper Diphthong* ; if not, an *Improper Diphthong*.

The proper diphthongs in Latin are commonly reckoned three ; *au, eu, ei* ; as in *aurum, Eurus, omneis*. To these some, not improperly, add other three ; namely, *ai*, as in *Maia* ; *oi*, as in *Troia* ; and *ui*, as in *Harpuia*, or in *cui*, and *huic*, when pronounced as monosyllables.

The improper diphthongs in Latin are two ; *ae*, or when the vowels are written together, *æ* ; as, *aetas, or ætas* ; *oe*, or *æ* ; as *poena, or pæna* ; in both of which the sound of the *e* only is heard. The ancients commonly wrote the vowels separately ; thus, *actas, poena*.

The English language abounds with improper diphthongs, the just pronounciation of which, practice alone can teach. In some words derived from the French, there are three vowels in the same syllable, but two of them only are sounded ; as in *beauty, lieutenant*.

SYLLABLES.

A syllable is the sound of one letter, or of several letters, pronounced by one impulse of the voice ; as, *a, to, strength*.

In every word there are as many syllables as there are distinct sounds : as, *in-fal-li-bi-li-ty*.

In Latin there are as many syllables in a word, as there are vowels or diphthongs in it ; unless when *u* with any other vowel comes after *g, q, or s*, as in *lingua, qui, suadeo* ; where the two vowels are not reckoned a diphthong, because the sound of the *u* vanishes, or is little heard.

Words consisting of one syllable are called *Monosyllables* ; of two, *Dissyllables* ; and of more than two, *Polysyllables*. But all words of more than one syllable are commonly called *Polysyllables*.

* Some contend that *ti* before a vowel, as in *justitia*, should always be pronounced as it is in *Miltiades, Tiaras, &c.*

In dividing words into syllables, we are chiefly to be directed by the ear. Compound words should be divided into the parts of which they are made up, so as to keep these parts distinct; as, *up-on*, *with-out*, &c. and so in Latin words, *ab-ūtor*, *in-ops*, *proptēr-ea*, *et-ēnim*, *vel-ut*, &c. In like manner, when a syllable is added in the formation of the English verb, as, *lov-ed*, *lov-ing*, *lov-eth*, *will-ing*, &c. But more particularly,

1. A consonant between two vowels, belongs to the latter; as, *tē-go*, *dā-tis*; *x*, and sometimes *p*, being excepted.

2. Two non-diphthongal vowels together must be divided; as *De-us*, *cre-as*, *ca-pi-o*.

3. Two consonants found together in the middle of a word must be divided; as, *par-tes*, *red-do*; unless the latter of the two be *l* or *r*, when they must both be joined to the following vowel; as, *a-gros*, *li-bri*.

Observe. A long syllable is thus marked with a horizontal line [—]; as, *amāre*; or with a circumflex accent thus, [^]; as, *amāris*. A short syllable is marked thus, with a curved line, [~]; as, *omnibus*.

What pertains to the quantity of syllables, to accent, and verse, will be treated of afterwards.

WORDS.

Words are articulate sounds, significant of thought.

That part of Grammar which treats of words, is called *Etymology*, or *Analogy*.

All words may be divided into three kinds; namely, 1. such as mark the names of things; 2. such as denote what is affirmed concerning things; and 3. such as are significant only in conjunction with other words; or what are called *Substantives*, *Attributives*, and *Connectives*. Thus in the following sentence, "*The diligent boy reads the lesson carefully in the school, and at home*," the words *boy*, *lesson*, *school*, *home*, are the names we give to the things spoken of; *diligent*, *reads*, *carefully*, express what is affirmed concerning the boy; *the*, *in*, *and*, *at*, are only significant when joined with the other words of the sentence.

All words whatever are either *simple* or *compound*, *primitive* or *derivative*.

The division of words into simple and compound, is called their *Figure*; into primitive and derivative, their *Species* or kind.

A simple word is that which is not made up of more than one; as, *pious*, pious; *ēgo*, I; *dōceo*, I teach.

A compound word is that which is made up of two or more words; or of one word and some syllable added; as, *impius*, impious; *dēdōceo*, I unteach; *ēgōmet*, I myself.

A primitive word is that which comes from no other ; as, *pius*, pious ; *disco*, I learn ; *dōceo*, I teach.

A derivative word is that which comes from another word ; as *piētas*, piety ; *doctrīna*, learning.

The different classes into which we divide words, are called *Parts of Speech*.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

The parts of speech in Latin are eight ; 1. *Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle* ; declined : 2. *Adverb, Preposition, Interjection, and Conjunction* ; undeclined.

In English the adjective and participle are not declined.

Those words or parts of speech are said to be *declined*, which receive different changes, particularly on the end, which is called the *Termination* of words.

The changes made upon words are by grammarians called *Accidents*.

Of old, all words which admit of different terminations were said to be declined. But *Declension* is now applied only to nouns. The changes made upon the verb are called *Conjugation*.

The English language has one part of speech more than the Latin, namely, the ARTICLE.

The *article* is a word put before substantive nouns, to point them out, and to show how far their signification extends.

There are two articles, *a* and *the* : *a* becomes *an* before a vowel, or a silent *h*.

A is called the *Indefinite, The* the *Definite Article*.

A is used to point out one single thing of a kind, without fixing precisely what the thing is : *The* determines what particular thing is meant.

A man means simply some one or other of that kind : *the man* signifies that particular man who is spoken of.

The want of the article is a defect in the Latin tongue, and often renders the meaning of nouns undetermined ; thus, *filius regis*, may signify, either *a son of a king*, or *a king's son* ; or *the son of the king*, or *the king's son*.

The, placed before certain common names, marks either a whole kind, or some individual of that kind, with which we are acquainted ; as, *the lion, the ox, &c.*

A can only be joined to substantive nouns in the singular number : *the* may also be joined to plurals. *A* is likewise used before adjectives which express number, when many are

considered as one whole; as, *a thousand men, a few, a great many men.*

The is likewise applied to adjectives and adverbs in the comparative or superlative degree, to mark their sense more strongly; as, "*the wiser*;" "*the better*;" "*the more I think of it, the better I like it.*"

NOUN.

A noun is either substantive or adjective.

The adjective seems to be improperly called *noun*; it is only a word *added* to a substantive or noun, expressive of its quality; and therefore should be considered as a different part of speech. But as the substantive and adjective together express but one object, and in Latin are declined after the same manner, they have both been comprehended under the same general name.

SUBSTANTIVE.

A Substantive, or Noun, is the name of any person, place, or thing; as *boy, school, book.*

Substantives are of two sorts; *proper* and *common* names.

Proper names are the names appropriated to individuals; as the names of persons and places; such as *Cæsar, Rome.*

Common names stand for whole kinds, containing several sorts; or for sorts, containing many individuals under them; as, *animal, man, beast, fish, fowl, &c.*

Every particular being should have its own proper name, but this is impossible, on account of their innumerable multitude; men have therefore been obliged to give the same common name to such things as agree together in certain respects. These form what is called a *genus*, or kind; a *species*, or sort.

A proper name may be used for a common, and then in English it has the article joined to it; as, when we say of some great conqueror, "He is *an Alexander*;" or, "*The Alexander of his age.*"

To proper and common names may be added a third class of nouns, which mark the names of qualities, and are called *abstract nouns*; as, *hardness, goodness, whiteness, virtue, justice, piety, &c.*

When we speak of things, we consider them as one or more. That is what we call *Number*. When one thing is spoken of, a noun is said to be of the *singular number*; when two or more, of the *plural*.

Things considered according to their kinds, are either male or female, or neither of the two. Males are said to be of the *masculine gender*; females of the *feminine*; and all other things of the *neuter gender*.

Such nouns as are applied to signify either the male or the

female, are said to be of the *common gender*; that is, either masculine or feminine.

Various methods are used, in different languages, to express the different connexions or relations of one thing to another. In the English, and in most modern languages, this is done by prepositions, or particles placed before the substantive; in Latin, by declension, or by different cases; that is, by changing the termination of the noun; as *rex*, a king, *or* the king; *rēgis*, of a king, *or* of the king.

ENGLISH NOUNS.

In English, nouns have only one case, namely, the genitive, or possessive case, which is formed from the noun, by adding an *s*, with an apostrophe, or mark to separate it; as, *John's book*, the same with *the book of John*. It was formerly written *Johnis book*.

Some have thought the *'s* a contraction for *his*; but improperly; because, instead of *the woman's book*, we cannot say, *the woman his book*. Others have imagined, and with more justness, that by the addition of the *'s* the substantive is changed into a possessive adjective.

When the noun ends in *s*, the sign of the possessive case is sometimes not added; as, *for righteousness sake*; and never to the plural number ending in *s*; as, *on eagles wings*. Perhaps it would be better in the plural when it ends in *s*, always to use the particle, and not the possessive form; as, *on the wings of eagles*. Both the sign and the preposition seem sometimes to be used; as, *a soldier of the king's*: but here are two possessives; for it means, *one of the soldiers of the king*.

A singular noun, in English, is made plural by adding to it *s*, or, for the sake of sound, *es*; as, *king, kings*; *church, churches*; *brush, brushes*; *witness, witnesses*; *fox, foxes*; *leaf, leaves*; in which last and in many others, *f* is also turned into *v*, to make the pronunciation easier.

Several plurals are formed by adding *en*; as, *ox, oxen*. Of these some are contracted, or interpose a letter on account of sound; as, *brethren, children, kine, swine, women, men, &c.* for *brotheren, sown, &c.* Instead of *kine*, we now commonly say *cows*; and we seldom use *brethren*, but in solemn discourse.

Nouns in *y* change *y* into *ie*; as, *cherry, cherries*; *city, cities*. *Cherry's, city's, &c.* are in the possessive case.

Some nouns form the plural more irregularly: as, *mouse, mice*; *louse, lice*; *tooth, teeth*; *foot, feet*; *goose, geese, &c.*

The words *sheep, deer*, are the same in both numbers. Some nouns, from the nature of the things which they express, are used only in the singular, or in the plural form; as, *wheat, pitch, gold, sloth, pride, &c.* and *bellows, scissors, lungs, bowels, &c.*

Several nouns in English are changed in their termination,

to express gender ; as, *prince, princess ; actor, actress ; lion, lioness ; hero, heroine ; duke, duchess.*

The English language has a peculiar advantage over most other languages, in making all words whatever, except the names of males and females, to be of the neuter gender ; unless when inanimate beings are personified, or considered as persons ; as, when we say of the sun, *he shines* ; or of the moon, *she shines.*

LATIN NOUNS.

A Latin noun is declined by *Genders, Cases, and Numbers.*

There are three genders, *Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.*

The cases are six, *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative.*

There are two numbers, *Singular and Plural.*

There are five different ways of varying or declining nouns, called the *first, second, third, fourth, and fifth declensions.*

Cases are certain changes made upon the termination of nouns, to express the relation of one thing to another.

They are so called, from *cădo*, to fall ; because they fall, as it were, from the nominative ; which is therefore named *căsus rectus*, the straight case ; and the other cases, *căsus obliqui*, the oblique cases.

The different declensions may be distinguished from one another by the termination of the genitive singular. The first declension has *æ* diphthong ; the second has *i* ; the third has *is* ; the fourth has *ûs* ; and the fifth has *ëi* in the genitive.

Although Latin nouns be said to have six cases, yet none of them have that number of different terminations, both in the singular and plural.

GENERAL RULES of Declension.

1. Nouns of the neuter gender have the Accusative and Vocative like the Nominative, in both numbers ; and these cases in the plural end always in *a*.

2. The Dative and Ablative plural end always alike.

3. The Vocative for the most part in the singular, and always in the plural, is the same with the Nominative.

Greek nouns in *s* generally lose *s* in the Vocative; as, *Thomas, Thoma; Pāris, Pari; Panthus, Panthu; Pallas, -antis, Palla*; names of men. But nouns in *es* of the third declension oftener retain the *s*; as, *ō Achilles*, rarely *-e*; *O Socrātes*, seldom *-e*: and sometimes nouns in *is* and *as*; as, *O Thais, Mysis, Pallas, -adis*, the goddess Minerva, &c.

4. Proper names for the most part want the plural:

Unless several of the same name may be spoken of; as, *duōdēcim Cæsāres*, the twelve Cæsars.

The cases of Latin nouns are thus expressed in English;

1. With the indefinite article, *a king*.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom.	<i>a king,</i>	Nom.	<i>kings,</i>
Gen. <i>of</i>	<i>a king,</i>	Gen. <i>of</i>	<i>kings,</i>
Dat. <i>to or for</i>	<i>a king,</i>	Dat. <i>to or for</i>	<i>kings,</i>
Acc.	<i>a king,</i>	Acc.	<i>kings,</i>
Voc. <i>O</i>	<i>king,</i>	Voc. <i>O</i>	<i>kings,</i>
Abl. <i>with, from, in, by,</i>	<i>a king:</i>	Abl. <i>with, from, in, by,</i>	<i>kings.</i>

2. With the definite article, *the king*.

Singular.

Plural.

Nom.	<i>the king,</i>	Nom.	<i>the kings,</i>
Gen. <i>of</i>	<i>the king,</i>	Gen. <i>of</i>	<i>the kings,</i>
Dat. <i>to or for</i>	<i>the king,</i>	Dat. <i>to or for</i>	<i>the kings,</i>
Acc.	<i>the king,</i>	Acc.	<i>the kings,</i>
Voc. <i>O</i>	<i>king,</i>	Voc. <i>O</i>	<i>kings,</i>
Abl. <i>with, from, in, by,</i>	<i>the king:</i>	Abl. <i>with, from, in, by,</i>	<i>the kings.</i>

GENDER.

Nouns in Latin are said to be of different genders, not merely from the distinction of sex, but chiefly from their being joined with an adjective of one termination, and not of another. Thus, *penna*, a pen, is said to be feminine, because it is always joined with an adjective in that termination which is applied to females; as, *bōna penna*, a good pen, and not *bōnus penna*.

The gender of nouns which signify things without life, depends on their termination, and different declension.

To distinguish the different genders, grammarians make use of the pronoun *hic*, to mark the masculine; *hæc*, the feminine; and *hoc*, the neuter.

GENERAL RULES concerning Gender.

1. Names of males are masculine; as, *Hômērus*, Homer; *pāter*, a father; *poēta*, a poet.

2. Names of females are feminine; as, *Hēlēna*, Helen; *mūlier*, a woman; *uxor*, a wife; *māter*, a mother; *sōror*, a sister; *Tellus*, the goddess of the earth.

3. Nouns which signify either the male or female, are of the common gender; that is, either masculine or feminine; as,

Hic bos, an ox; *hæc bos*, a cow; *hic pārens*, a father; *hæc pārens*, a mother.

The following list comprehends most nouns of the common gender.

Adölescens, } a young man,
Jüvénis, } or woman.
Affinis, a relation by marriage.
Antistes, a prelate.
Auctor, an author.
Augur, a soothsayer.
Cānis, a dog or bitch.
Civis, a citizen.
Cliens, a client.
Cōmes, a companion.
Conjux, a husband or wife.

Convīva, a guest.
Custos, a keeper.
Dux, a leader.
Hæres, an heir.
Hostis, an enemy.
Infans, an infant.
Interpres, an interpreter.
Jūdex, a judge.
Martyr, a martyr.
Miles, a soldier.
Mūniceps, a burgess.
Nēmo, no body.

Obses, an hostage.
Patruēlis, a cousin-german, by the father's side.
Præs, a surety.
Princeps, a prince or princeps.
Sācerdos, a priest or priestess.
Sus, a swine.
Testis, a witness.
Vātes, a prophet.
Vindex, an avenger.*

But *antistes*, *cliens*, and *hospes*, also change their termination to express the feminine; thus, *antistīta*, *clienta*, *hospīta*: in the same manner with *leo*, a lion; *leāna*, a lioness; *ēquus*, *ēqua*; *mūlus*, *mūla*; and many others.

There are several nouns, which, though applicable to both sexes, admit only of a masculine adjective; as, *advēna*, a stranger; *agrīcōla*, a husbandman; *assecla*, an attendant; *accōla*, a neighbor; *exul*, an exile; *latro*, a robber; *fur*, a thief; *ōpīfex*, a mechanic, &c. There are others, which, though applied to persons, are, on account of their termination, always neuter; as, *scortum*, a courtesan; *mancīpium*, *servitium*, a slave, &c.

In like manner, *ōpēræ*, slaves or day-laborers; *vīgīliæ*, *excūbiæ*, watches; *noxæ*, guilty persons; though applied to men, are always feminine.

* *Conjux*, atque *parens*, *infans*, *patruelis*, et *hæres*,
Affinis, *vindex*, *judez*, *dux*, *miles*, et *hostis*,
Augur, et *antistes*, *juvenis*, *conviva*, *sacerdos*,
Municeps, *vates*, *adolescens*, *civis*, et *auctor*,
Custos, *nemo*; *comes*, *testis*, *sus*, *bosque*, *canisque*,
Interpres, *cliens*, *princeps*, *præs*, *martyr*, et *obses*.

4. All nouns undeclined (except names of men and women) are neuter; as, *gūmmi*, gum; *git*, a small seed: so are all names of letters; as, *Alpha*, *A salutare*; *illud* B, that B: also all words or phrases used as nouns (though not so); as, *ultimum vale*, the last farewell; *scire tuum nihil est*, your knowledge is nothing; *videre est jucundum*, to see is pleasant; *hoc diu odi*, I hate that word diu.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1. The names of brute animals commonly follow the gender of their termination.

Such are the names of wild beasts, birds, fishes, and insects, in which the distinction of sex is either not easily discerned, or seldom attended to. Thus *passer*, a sparrow, is masculine, because nouns in *er* are masculine; so *āquīla*, an eagle, is feminine, because nouns in *a*, of the first declension are feminine. These are called *Epicene*, or promiscuous nouns. When any particular sex is marked, we usually add the word *mas* or *fēmīna*; as, *mas passer*, a male sparrow; *fēmīna passer*, a female sparrow.

OBS. 2. A proper name, for the most part, follows the gender of the general name under which it is comprehended.

Thus, the names of months, winds, rivers, and mountains, are masculine; because *mensis*, *ventus*, *mons*, and *fluvius*, are masculine; as,

Hic *Aprilis*, April; hic *aquīlo*, the north wind; hic *Afrīcus*, the south-west wind; hic *Tibēris*, the river Tiber; hic *Othrys*, a hill in Thessaly. But many of these follow the gender of their termination; as, hæc *Matrōna*, the river Marne in France; hæc *Ætna*, a mountain in Sicily; hoc *Sōracte*, a hill in Italy.

In like manner, the names of countries, towns, trees, and ships, are feminine, because *terra* or *regio*, *urbs*, *arbor*, and *nāvis*, are feminine; as,

Hæc *Egyptus*, Egypt; *Sāmos*, an island of that name; *Cōrinthus*, the city Corinth; *pōmus*, an apple-tree; *Centaurus*, the name of a ship: Thus also the names of poems, hæc *Ilias*, *-ados*, and *Odyssēa*, the two poems of Homer; hæc *Ænēis*, *-idos*, a poem of Virgil's; hæc *Eunūchus*, one of Terence's comedies.

The gender, however, of many of these depends on the termination; thus, hic *Pontus*, a country of that name; hic *Sulmo*, *-ōnis*; *Pessīnus*, *-untis*; *Hydrus*, *-untis*, names of towns; hæc *Persis*, *-īdis*, the kingdom of Persia; *Carthāgo*, *-īnis*, the

city of Carthage; hoc *Albion*, Britain; hoc *Cære*, *Reâte*, *Pre-neste*, *Tibur*, *Ilium*, names of towns. But some of these are also found in the feminine; as *Gelida Præneste*, Juvenal, iii. 190, *Alta Ilion*, Ovid. Met. xiv. 466.

The following names of trees are masculine, *oleaster*, -*tri*, a wild olive-tree; *rhamnus*, the white bramble.

The following are masculine or feminine; *cýtissus*, a kind of shrub; *rûbus*, the bramble-bush; *larix*, the larch-tree; *lôtus*, the lot-tree; *cupressus*, the cyprus-tree. The first two, however, are oftener masculine; the rest oftener feminine.

Those in *um* are neuter; as, *buxum*, the bush, or box-tree; *ligustrum*, a privet; so likewise are *sûber*, -*ëris*, the cork-tree; *sîler*, -*ëris*, the osier; *rôbur*, -*ôris*, oak of the hardest kind; *âcer*, -*ëris*, the maple-tree.

The place where trees or shrubs grow is commonly neuter; as, *Arbustum*, *quercetum*, *esculetum*, *sâlictum*, *fruticetum*, &c. a place where trees, oaks, beeches, willows, shrubs, &c. grow: also the names of fruits and timber; as, *pômum*, or *mâlum*, an apple: *pîrum*, a pear: *ëbënum*, ebony, &c. But from this rule there are various exceptions.

OBS. 3. Several nouns are said to be of the *doubtful gender*; that is, are sometimes found in one gender, and sometimes in another; as, *dies*, a day, masculine or feminine; *vulgus*, the rabble, masculine or neuter.

FIRST DECLENSION.

Nouns of the first declension end in *a*, *e*, *as*, *es*.

Latin nouns end only in *a*, and are of the feminine gender.

The terminations of the different cases are: Nom. and Voc. Sing. *a*; Gen. and Dat. *æ* diphthong; Acc. *am*; Abl. *â*; Nom. and Voc. Plur. *æ*; Gen. *ârum*; Dat. and Abl. *is*; Acc. *as*: thus,

Penna, <i>a pen</i> , fem.		Terminations.
Singular.	Plural.	
N. pennâ,* <i>a pen</i> ;	N. pennæ, <i>pens</i> ;	<i>a</i> , <i>æ</i> .
G. pennæ, <i>of a pen</i> ;	G. pennârûm, <i>of pens</i> ;	<i>æ</i> , <i>arum</i> ,
D. pennæ, <i>to a pen</i> ;	D. pennîs, <i>to pens</i> ;	<i>æ</i> , <i>is</i> ,
A. pennâm, <i>a pen</i> ;	A. pennâs, <i>pens</i> ;	<i>am</i> , <i>as</i> ,
V. pennâ, <i>O pen</i> ;	V. pennæ, <i>O pens</i> ;	<i>a</i> , <i>æ</i> ,
A. pennâ, <i>with a pen</i> ;	A. pennîs, <i>with pens</i> .	<i>â</i> , <i>is</i> .

* If the first or middle syllable in the Nominative of a Latin noun or adjective be long or short, that syllable generally continues so through all cases and numbers.

In like manner decline,

Acerra, a censor.	Gēnista, broom.	Orca, a jar.
Amīta, an aunt, the father's sister.	Hābēna, a rein.	Pānūla, a riding-coat.
Bālēna, a whale.	Hārūga, a sacrifice.	Palpebra, the eye-lid.
Bibliōpōla, a bookseller.	Jactūra, loss.	Quadra, & -um, a square.
Caliga, a kind of shoe set with nails.	Idiōta, m. an illiterate person.	Rāna, a frog.
Campāna, a bell.	Illēcebra, an allurement.	Rūga, a wrinkle.
Dēcempēda, a pole of ten feet.	Juba, the mane.	Sāga, a sorceress.
Dōlābra, an az.	Lācīnia, a fringe.	Sālebra, a ragged way.
Epistōla, a letter.	Lānista, m. a fencing-master.	Tāberna, a shop.
Esca, a bait.	Mactra, a kneading-trough.	Tessēra, a dye.
Fāba, a bean.	Marra, a mattock.	Ulūla, an owl.
Fistūca, a rammer.	Nassa, a net.	Ungūla, a nail, the hoof.
Gālēa, a helmet.	Nēnia, a funeral song.	Vacca, a cow.
	Occa, a harrow.	Verrūca, a wart.
		Zona, a girdle, a zone, &c.

EXCEPTIONS.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine: *Hadria*, the Hadriatic sea; *cōmēta*, a comet; *planēta*, a planet; and sometimes *talpa*, a mole; and *dāma*, a fallow-deer. *Pascha*, the passover, is neuter.

Exc. 2. The ancient Latins sometimes formed the genitive singular in *āi*; thus, *aula*, a hall, gen. *aulāi*; and sometimes likewise in *as*; which form, the compounds of *fāmīlia* usually retain; as, *māter-fāmiliās*, the mistress of a family: thus,

Nom. *māter-fāmiliās*, the mistress of a family.

Gen. *matrīs-fāmiliās*, of the mistress of a family.

Dat. *matrī-fāmiliās*, to the mistress of a family.

Acc. *matrem-fāmiliās*, a mistress of a family.

Voc. *mater-fāmiliās*, O mistress of a family.

Abl. *matre-fāmiliās*, with the mistress of a family.

Nom. plural, *matres-fāmiliās*, or *matres-fāmiliarum*, &c.; it being also found declined after the other manner; as, *Singulis, patribus familiarum*. Cic. *Quidam pater-familiæ*. Liv.

Exc. 3. The following nouns have more frequently *abus* in the dative and ablative plural, to distinguish them in these cases from masculines in *us* of the second declension:

Anīma, the soul, the life.

Dea, a goddess.

Equa, a mare.

Fāmūla, a female servant.

Fīlia, & *Nata*, a daughter.

Liberta, a freed-woman.

Mūla, a she-mule.

Thus, *deābus, filiābus*, rather than *filiis*, &c.

GREEK NOUNS.

Nouns in *as*, *es*, and *e* of the first declension, are Greek. Nouns in *as* and *es* are masculine: nouns in *e* are feminine.

Nouns in *as* are declined like *penna*; only they have *am* or *an* in the accusative; as, *Ænēas*: *Æneās*, the name of a man: thus,

Nom. *Ænēās*, *Æneās*. *Acc.* *Ænēam, vel -an, Æneās*.

Gen. *Ænēæ*, of *Æneās*. *Voc.* *Ænēā*, O *Æneās*.

Dat. *Ænēæ*, to *Æneās*. *Abl.* *Ænēā*, with *Æneās*.

So *Bōreas*, -*æ*, the north wind; *Tiāras*, -*æ*, a turban. In prose they have commonly *am*, but in poetry oftener *an*, in the accusative. Greek nouns in *a* have sometimes also *an* in the acc. in poetry: as *Ossa*, -*am* or -*an*, the name of a mountain.

Nouns in *es* and *e* are thus declined:

Anchises, *Anchises*, the name of a man.

Singular.

<i>Nom.</i> Anchises,	<i>Anchises.</i>
<i>Gen.</i> Anchisæ,	<i>of Anchises.</i>
<i>Dat.</i> Anchisæ,	<i>to Anchises.</i>
<i>Acc.</i> Anchisen,	<i>Anchises.</i>
<i>Voc.</i> Anchise, <i>vel</i> - <i>a</i> ,	<i>O Anchises.</i>
<i>Abl.</i> Anchise, <i>vel</i> - <i>a</i> ,	<i>with Anchises.</i>

Pēnēlōpe, *Penelope*, the name of a woman.

Singular.

<i>Nom.</i> Penelopē,	<i>Penelope.</i>
<i>Gen.</i> Penelopēs,	<i>of Penelope.</i>
<i>Dat.</i> Penelopē,	<i>to Penelope.</i>
<i>Acc.</i> Penelōpem, <i>vel</i> Penelopen,	<i>Penelope.</i>
<i>Voc.</i> Penelope,	<i>O Penelope.</i>
<i>Abl.</i> Penēlōpē,	<i>with Penelope.</i>

Greek nouns of the first declension in *as* and *es*, drop *s* in the Vocative; as, *Tiāras*, voc. *Tiāra*.

These nouns, being proper names, want the plural, unless when several of the same name are spoken of, and then they are declined like the plural of *penna*.

The Latins frequently turn Greek nouns in *es* and *e* into *a*; as, *Atrīda*, for *Atrīdes*; *Persa* for *Perses*, a Persian; *Geōmetra*, for -*tres*, a Geometrician; *Circa* for *Circe*; *Epitōma*, for -*me*, an abridgment; *Grammātica*, for -*ce*, grammar; *Rhētōrica*, for -*ce*, oratory. So *Clinia*, for *Clinias*, &c. The accusative of nouns in *es* and *e* is found sometimes in *em*.

Note. We sometimes find the genit. plural contracted; as, *Cœlicolūm*, for *Cœlicolarum*, *Æneādūm*, for -*arum*.

SECOND DECLENSION.

Nouns of the second declension end in *er*, *ir*, *us*, *um*; *os*, *on*.

Nouns in *um* and *on* are neuter; the rest are masculine.

Nouns of the second declension have the gen. sing. in *i*; the dat. and abl. in *o*; the acc. in *um*; the voc. like the nom. (But nouns in *us* make the vocative in *e*;) The nom. and voc.

plur. in *i* or *a*; the gen. in *orum*; the dat. and abl. in *is*; and the acc. in *os*, or *a*; as,

Gēner, *a son-in-law*, masc.

Sing.

Plur.

N. gēner,	<i>a son-in-law.</i>	N. gēnēri,	<i>sons-in-law.</i>
G. genēri,	<i>of a son-in-law.</i>	G. generōrum,	<i>of sons-in-law.</i>
D. genero,	<i>to a son-in-law.</i>	D. generis,	<i>to sons-in-law.</i>
A. generum,	<i>a son-in-law.</i>	A. generos,	<i>sons-in-law.</i>
V. gener,	<i>O son-in-law.</i>	V. generi,	<i>O sons-in-law.</i>
A. genero,	<i>with a son-in-law.</i>	A. generis,	<i>with sons-in-law.</i>

After the same manner decline *sōcer*, -ēri, a father-in-law; *puer*, -ēri, a boy: So *Furcifer*, a villain; *Lucifer*, the morning star; *adulter*, an adulterer; *armiger*, an armor-bearer; *presbyter*, an elder; *Mulciber*, a name of the god Vulcan; *vesper*, the evening; and *Iber*, -ēri, a Spaniard, the only noun in *er* which has the gen. long, and its compound *Celtiber*, -ēri: Also, *vir*, *vīri*, a man, the only noun in *ir*; and its compounds *Lēvir*, a brother-in-law; *Semivir*, *duumvir*, *triumvir*, &c. And likewise *Satur*, -ūri, full, (of old, *satūrus*,) an adjective.

But most nouns in *er* lose the *e* in the genitive; as,

Ager, *a field*, masc.

Sing.

Plur.

Nom. āger,	<i>a field.</i>	Nom. āgri,	<i>fields.</i>
Gen. agri,	<i>of a field.</i>	Gen. agrōrum,	<i>of fields.</i>
Dat. agro,	<i>to a field.</i>	Dat. agris,	<i>to fields.</i>
Acc. agrum,	<i>a field.</i>	Acc. agros,	<i>fields.</i>
Voc. ager,	<i>O field.</i>	Voc. agri,	<i>O fields.</i>
Abl. agro,	<i>with a field.</i>	Abl. agris,	<i>with fields.</i>

In like manner decline,

Aper, <i>a wild boar.</i>	Cōlūber, & -bra, <i>a serpent.</i>	Māgister, <i>a master.</i>
Arbiter, (& -tra) <i>a judge.</i>	Culter, <i>the coultter of a</i>	Minister, <i>a servant.</i>
Auster, <i>the south wind.</i>	<i>plow, a knife.</i>	Onāger, <i>a wild ass.</i>
Cancer, <i>a crab fish.</i>	Fāber, <i>a workman.</i>	Scalper, <i>a lancet.</i>
Cāper, <i>a he goat.</i>		

Also *liber*, the bark of a tree, or a book, which has *libri*; but *liber*, free, an adjective, and *Liber*, a name of Bacchus, the god of wine, have *libēri*. So likewise proper names, *Alexander*, *Evander*, *Periander*, *Mēnander*, *Teucer*, *Mēleāger*, &c. gen. *Alexandri*, *Evandri*, &c.

Dōmīnus, *a lord*, masc.

Sing.

Plur.

Nom. dōminus,	<i>a lord.</i>	Nom. dōmini,	<i>lords.</i>
Gen. domini,	<i>of a lord.</i>	Gen. dominorum,	<i>of lords.</i>
Dat. domino,	<i>to a lord.</i>	Dat. dominis,	<i>to lords.</i>
Acc. dominum,	<i>a lord.</i>	Acc. dominos,	<i>lords.</i>
Voc. domine,	<i>O lord.</i>	Voc. domini,	<i>O lords.</i>
Abl. domino,	<i>with a lord.</i>	Abl. dominis,	<i>with lords.</i>

In like manner decline,

Abācus, a table or desk.
 Argentārius, a banker.
 Bajūlus, a porter.
 Barrus, an elephant.
 Cādūceus, a wand.
 Carpus, the wrist.
 Caurus, a west wind.
 Discus, a quoit.
 Dūmus, a bush.
 Ephēbus, a youth.
 Equūleus, an instrument of
 torture.
 Fāvus, a honeycomb.
 Fiscus, the exchequer.
 Gibbus, a swelling.

Grābātus, a couch.
 Hārīūlus, a diviner.
 Hinnūs, a mule.
 Juncus, a bulrush.
 Lānius, a butcher.
 Lītuus, a crooked staff.
 Mālus, the mast of a ship.
 Mēdiastinus, a slave, a
 drudge.
 Nānus, a dwarf.
 Nōdus, a knot.
 Obōlus, a farthing.
 Orcus, hell.
 Pāgus, a canton or village.

Patruus, the father's brother.
 Quālus & quāsilus, a basket.
 Rēmus, an oar.
 Rhoncus, a snorting.
 Sarcōphāgus, a stone in which
 dead bodies were inclosed.
 Sciūrus, a squirrel.
 Tālus, the ankle, a die.
 Taxus, f. the yew-tree.
 Uncus, a hook.
 Urus, a buffalo.
 Villus, shaggy hair.
 Vitricus, a step-father.
 Zēphyrus, the west-wind, &c.

Regnum, a kingdom, neut.

Sing.

Plur.

Nom. rēgnum,	a kingdom.	Nom. rēgna,	kingdoms.
Gen. regni,	of a kingdom.	Gen. regnōrum,	of kingdoms.
Dat. regno,	to a kingdom.	Dat. regnis,	to kingdoms.
Acc. regnum,	a kingdom.	Acc. regna,	kingdoms.
Voc. regnum,	O kingdom.	Voc. regna,	O kingdoms.
Abl. regno,	with a kingdom.	Abl. regnis,	with kingdoms.

In like manner decline,

Acōnītum, wolf's bane, a
 poisonous plant.
 Allium, garlic.
 Bārāthrum, an abyss.
 Cāpistrum, a halter or
 muzzle.
 Cīlium, the eye-lashes.
 Dēlūbrum, a temple.
 Dīlūcūlum, the dawning of
 day.
 Electrum, amber.
 Emōlūmentum, profit.
 Fercūlum, a dish of meat.
 Flābellum, a fan.
 Grāphium, a pencil.

Gynēcēum, the woman's
 apartment.
 Hellēbōrum, & -us, helle-
 bore, a plant.
 Hōrōlōgium, any thing that
 tells the hours.
 Idyllium, a pastoral poem.
 Indūsium, a shirt.
 Jūgum, a yoke, the ridge of
 a hill.
 Justitium, a vacation.
 Lardum, bacon.
 Lustrum, a survey.
 Macellum, the shambles.
 Mustum, new wine.

Nasturtium, cresses.
 Naufrāgium, shipwreck.
 Omāsium, the paunch.
 Opsōnium, fish, or any thing
 eaten with bread.
 Pactum, an agreement.
 Pālūdamentum, a general's
 robe.
 Rāstrum, a rake.
 Rēpūdium, a divorce.
 Sābūlum, gravel.
 Sāgum, a soldier's cloak.
 Tābulātum, a story.
 Tintinnābūlum, a little bell.
 Vaccinium, a berry.
 Vestībūlum, a porch, &c.

EXCEPTIONS in Gender.

Exc. 1. The following nouns in *us* are feminine; *hūmus*, the ground; *alvus*, the belly; *vannus*, a sieve.

And the following derived from Greek nouns in *os*;

Abyssus, a bottomless pit.
 Antidōtus, a preservative
 against poison.
 Arctos, the Bear, a constel-
 lation near the north pole.
 Carbāsus, a sail.

Diālectus, a dialect or man-
 ner of speech.
 Diāmetros, the diameter of
 a circle.
 Diphthongus, a diphthong.
 Erēmus, a desert.

Mēthōdus, a method.
 Pēriōdus, a period.
 Pērīmetros, the circumfer-
 ence.
 Phārus, a watch-tower.
 Sŷnōdus, an assembly.

To these add some names of jewels and plants, because *gemma* and *planta* are feminine; as,

Amēthystus, an amethyst.
 Chrysolīthus, a chrysolite.
 Chrysōphrāsus, a kind of
 topaz.
 Chrystallus, crystal.
 Leucōchrysus, a jacinth.

Sapphīrus, a sapphire.
 Tōpazius, a topaz.
 Biblus, } an Egyptian reed,
 Papȳrus, } of which paper
 was made.

Byssus, fine flax or linen.
 Costus, costmary.
 Crōcus, saffron.
 Hyssōpus, hyssop.
 Nardus, spikenard.

Other names of jewels are generally masculine ; as, *Beryl-lus*, the beryl ; *Carbunculus*, a carbuncle ; *Pyröpus*, a ruby ; *Smäragdus*, an emerald : And also names of plants ; as, *Aspäräpus*, asparagus, or sparrowgrass ; *ellebörus*, hellebore ; *raphäpus*, radish or colewort ; *intybus*, endive or succory, &c.

Exc. 2. The nouns which follow are either masculine or feminine :

Atömus, an atom.

Bäläpus, the fruit of the

palm-tree, ointment.

Barbitus, a harp.

Cämelus, a camel.

Cölus, a distaff.

Grossus, a green fig.

Pëpus, a store-house.

Phäsëlus, a little ship.

Exc. 3. *Virus*, poison ; *pëläpus*, the sea, are neuter.

Exc. 4. *Vulgus*, the common people, is either masculine or neuter, but oftener neuter.

EXCEPTIONS in Declension.

Proper names in *iüs* lose *us* in the vocative ; as, *Hörätius*, *Höräti* ; *Virgilius*, *Virgili* ; *Georgius*, *Georgi*, names of men ; *Lärius*, *Läri* ; *Mincius*, *Minci*, names of lakes. *Filius*, a son, also hath *fili* ; *gënius*, one's guardian angel, *geni* ; and *deus*, a god, hath *deus*, in the voc. and in the plural more frequently *dii* and *diis*, than *dëi* and *dëis* ; as,

Singular.

Plural.

N. Dëus,	a God,	N. Dii or Dëi & Di,	Gods,
G. Dei,	of a God,	G. Deorum,	of Gods,
D. Deo,	to a God,	D. Diis or Dëis or Dïs,	to Gods,
A. Deum,	a God,	A. Deos,	Gods,
V. Deus,	O God,	V. Dii,	O Gods,
A. Deo,	with a God:	A. Diis or Dëis or Dïs,	with Gods.

Meus, my, an adjective pronoun, hath *mi*, and sometimes *meus*, in the vocative ; as, *mi Deus* ! O my God !

Other nouns in *iüs* have *e* ; as, *täbellärius*, *tabellarie*, a letter-carrier ; *pius*, *pie*, &c. So these epithets, *Dëlius*, *Dëlie* ; *Tirynthius*, *Tirynthie* ; and these possessives, *Laertius*, *Laertie* ; *Saturnius*, *Saturnie*, &c. which are not considered as proper names.

The poets sometimes make the vocative of nouns in *us* like the nominative ; as, *Fluviüs*, *Latinus*, for *Fluvië*, *Latine*, Virg. This also occurs in prose, but more rarely ; thus, *Auditü*, *pöpusulus*, for *pöpüle*, Liv. i. 24.

The poets also change nouns in *er* into *us* ; as, *Evander*, or *Evandrus*, vocative, *Evander*, or *Evandre*. So *Meander*, *Leander*, *Tymber*, *Teucer*, &c. ; and so anciently *puer* in the vocative had *puëre*, from *puërus*.

Note. When the genitive singular ends in *ii*, the latter *i* is sometimes taken away by the poets for the sake of quantity ; as, *tugürü*, for *tugurii* ; *ingëñä*, for *ingenii*, &c. And in the genitive plural we find *deüm*, *libërüm*, *fabrüm*, *duüm-virüm*, &c. for *deorum*, *liberorum*, &c. and in poetry, *Teucrüm*, *Graiüm*, *Argivüm*, *Dänaüm*, *Pëlasgum*, &c. for *Teucrorum*, &c.

GREEK NOUNS.

Os and on are Greek terminations ; as, *Alphëos*, a river in Greece ; *Ilion*, the city Troy ; and are often changed into *us* and *um*, by the Latins ; *Alphëus*, *Ilium*, which are declined like *dominus* and *regnum*.

Nouns in *eos* or *ëus* are sometimes contracted in the genitive; as, *Orphëus*, genitive *Orphëi*, *Orpei*, or *Orphi*. So *Thesëus*, *Promethëus*, &c. But nouns in *eus*, when *eu* is a diphthong, are mostly of the third declension: so that *Orphëus*, *Orphë-i*, *Orphë-ō*, *Orphë-um*, *Orphë-on*, and *Orphë-e*, are seldom found.

Some nouns in *os* have the genitive singular in *o*; as, *Androgeos*, genitive *Androgeo*, or *ei*, the name of a man; *Athos*, *Atho* or *i*, a hill in Macedonia; and are thus declined:

Singular.		Singular.	
Nom.	Andrögëos,	Nom.	Athōs,
Gen.	Androgeī, or Androgëō,	Gen.	Atho, or Athī,
Dat.	Androgeō,	Dat.	Atho,
Acc.	Androgeōn, or Androgeō,	Acc.	Athon, or Atho,
Voc.	Androgëos,	Voc.	Athos,
Abl.	Androgëo,	Abl.	Atho.

But both of these nouns are also found in the third declension: thus, nominative *Androgëō*, genitive *Androgeonis*. So *Atho*, or *Athon*, *-onis*, &c. Anciently nouns in *os*, in imitation of the Greeks, had the genitive in *u*; as, *Menandru*, *Apollodōru*, for *Mēnandri Apollodori*, Ter.

Nouns in *os* have the accusative in *um* or *on*; as, *Delus* or *Delos*, accusative *Delum* or *Delon*, the name of an island: thus,

Singular.		Singular.	
Nom.	Dēlos, the island.	Acc.	Dēlum, or Delon,
Gen.	Deli, Delos,	Voc.	Dēle,
Dat.	Delo,	Abl.	Dēlo.

Ilion, the city Troy, is thus declined:

Singular.		Singular.	
Nom.	Ilion,	Acc.	Ilion,
Gen.	Ilii,	Voc.	Ilion,
Dat.	Ilio,	Abl.	Ilio.

Some neuters have the genitive plural in *ôn*; as, *Georgica*, genitive plural *Georgicôn*; books which treat of husbandry, as Virgil's *Georgicks*.

THIRD DECLENSION.

There are more nouns of the third declension than of all the other declensions together. The number of its final syllables is not ascertained. Its final letters are thirteen, *a, e, i, o, y, c, d, l, n, r, s, t, x*. Of these, eight are peculiar to this declension, namely, *i, o, y, c, d, l, t, x*; *a* and *e* are common to it with the first declension; *n* and *r* with the second; and *s*, with all the other declensions. *A, i*, and *y*, are peculiar to Greek nouns.

The terminations of the different cases are these; nom. sing. *a, e*, &c.; gen. *is*; dat. *i*; acc. *em*; voc. *the same with the nominative*; abl. *e* or *i*; nom. acc. and voc. plur., *es, a*, or *ia*; gen. *um*, or *ium*; dat. and abl. *ibus*; thus,

Sermo, a speech, masc.

Sing.	Plur.
N. sêrmo,*	N. sêrmōnes,
G. sêrmōnis,	G. sêrmōnum,
D. sermoni,	D. sermonībus,
A. sermonem,	A. sermones,
V. sermo,	V. sermones,
A. sermone,	A. sermonibus.

* To all nouns not Englished, let the pupil be taught to put the English by referring to penna.

Rupes, a rock, fem.

Sing.

N. rūpes,	a rock.
G. rupis,	of a rock.
D. rupi,	to a rock.
A. rupem,	a rock.
V. rupes,	O rock.
A. rupe,	with a rock.

Plur.

N. rūpes,	rocks.
G. rupium,	of rocks.
D. rupibus,	to rocks.
A. rupes,	rocks.
V. rupes,	O rocks.
A. rupibus,	with rocks.

Lăpîs, a stone, masc.

Sing.

N. lăpîs,
G. lapîdis,
D. lapidi,
A. lapidem,
V. lapis,
A. lăpide.

Plur.

N. lăpides,
G. lapidum,
D. lapidîbus,
A. lapides,
V. lapides,
A. lapidibus.

Căput, the head, neut.

Sing.

N. căput,	a head.
G. capîtis,	of a head.
D. capiti,	to a head.
A. caput,	a head.
V. caput,	O head.
A. capite,	with a head.

Plur.

N. căpîta,	heads.
G. capitum,	of heads.
D. capitibus,	to heads.
A. capita,	heads.
V. capita,	O heads.
A. capitibus,	with heads.

Sedile, a seat, neut.

Sing.

Plur.

N. sēdile,	N. sēdilia,
G. sedilis,	G. sedilium,
D. sedili,	D. sedilibus,
A. sedile,	A. sedilia,
V. sedile,	V. sedilia,
A. sedili.	A. sedilibus.

Iter, a journey, neut.

Sing.

Plur.

N. îter,	N. itinēra,
G. itinēris,	G. itinerum,
D. itineri,	D. itinērîbus,
A. iter,	A. itinera,
V. iter,	V. itinera,
A. itînere,	A. itineribus.

Nēmŭs, a grove, neut.

Sing.

Plur.

N. nēmŭs,	N. nēmŏra,
G. nēmŏris,	G. nemŏrum,
D. nemŏrî,	D. nemoribŭs,
A. nemus,	A. nemoră,
V. nēmŭs,	V. nemoră,
A. nemorē,	A. nemoribŭs.

Fŭlgŭr, a flash, neut.

Sing.

Plur.

N. fŭlgŭr,	N. fŭlgŭra,
G. fŭlgŭris,	G. fulgurum,
D. fŭlgurî,	D. fulguribŭs,
A. fulgur,	A. fulgura,
V. fŭlgŭr,	V. fulgura,
A. fŭlgŭrē.	A. fulguribus.

Rēx, a king, masc.		Sērpēns, a serpent, masc. or fem.	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
N. Rēx,	N. Rēgēs,	N. sērpēns,	N. sērpētēs,
G. Regis,	G. Rēgum,	G. serpentis,	G. serpentum,*
D. Regi,	D. Regibus,	D. serpenti,	D. serpentibus,
A. Regem,	A. Reges,	A. serpentem,	A. serpentes,
V. Rex,	V. Rēgēs,	V. serpens,	V. serpentes,
A. Rege.	A. Rēgībūs.	A. sērpentē.	A. serpentibus.

Summary of the main following Rules for Gender.

1. Nouns of the third declension that end in *er, or, os, o, n*, are masculine.
2. Nouns ending in *as, aus, es, is, ys, x*, and *s*, with a consonant before it; also nouns in *do* and *go*, and those in *io*, signifying a thing without a body, are feminine.
3. Nouns ending in *a, e, i, y, c, l, men, ar, ur, us, ut*, are neuter.

Of the GENDER and GENITIVE of Nouns of the Third Declension.

A, E, I, and Y.

1. Nouns in *a, e, i*, and *y*, are neuter.

Nouns in *a* form the genitive in *ātis*; as, *diadēma*, *diademātis*, a crown; *dogma*, *-ātis*, an opinion. So,

Apōthegma, a short pithy saying.	Nūmisma, a coin.	Strātāgēma, an artful contrivance.
Epigramma, an inscription.	Sōphisma, a deceitful argument.	Tōreuma, a carved vessel.

Nouns in *e* change *e* into *is*; as, *rēte*, *retis*, a net. So,

Ancile, a shield.	Crināle, a pin for the hair.	Sēcāle, rye.
Campestre, a pair of drawers.	Lāqueāre, a ceiled roof.	Suile, a sow-cote, &c.
	Mantile, a towel.	

Nouns in *i* are generally indeclinable; as, *gummi*, gum; *zingibēri*, ginger; but some Greek nouns add *ītis*; as, *hydrōmēli*, *hydromelītis*, water and honey sodden together, mead.

Nouns in *y* add *os*; as, *moly*, *molyos*, an herb; *mysy*, *-yos*, vitriol.

O.

2. Nouns in *o* are masculine, and form the genitive in *ōnis*; as,

Sermo, *sermōnis*, speech; *draco*, *dracōnis*, a dragon. So,

Agāso, a horse-keeper.	Cāpo, a capon.	Lēno, a pimp.
Arrhābo, an earnest-penny, a pledge.	Caupo, an inn-keeper.	Lurco, a glutton.
Bambālio, a flatterer.	Equiso, a groom or ostler.	Mango, a slave merchant.
Būbo, an owl.	Fūllo, a fuller of cloth.	Mōrio, a fool.
	Helluo, a glutton.	Nēbūlo, a knave.

* Nouns in *ns* have also *-ium* in the genitive plural; as, *parentium* or *-um*, from *parens*, a parent.

Pāvo, a peacock.
Pūcio, a little child.
Sāpo, soap.
Spādo, a eunuch.

Tēmo, the pole or draught-tree.
Tīro, a raw soldier.
Umbo, the boss of a shield.
Upilio, a shepherd.
Vōlo, a volunteer, &c.

Exc. 1. Nouns in *io* are feminine, when they signify any thing without a body; as, *rātio*, *rationis*, reason. So,

Captio, a quirk.	Nōtio, a notion or idea.	Sectio, the confiscation or forfeiture of one's goods.
Concio, an assembly, a speech.	Optio, a choice.	Titillatio, a tickling.
Dictio, a word.	Perduellio, treason.	Usucapio, the enjoyment of a thing by prescription.
Deditio, a surrender.	Pōtio, drink.	Vacatio, freedom from labor, &c.
Lēgio, a legion, a body of men.	Quæstio, an inquiry.	
Mentio, mention.	Rēlatio, a telling.	
	Rēmissio, a slackening.	
	Sanctio, a confirmation.	

But when they mark any thing which has a body, or signify numbers, they are masculine; as,

Curcūlio, the throat-pipe, the weasand.	Stellio, a lizard.	Ternio, the number three.
Pāpilio, a butterfly.	Titio, a firebrand.	Quāternio, ——— four.
Scorpio, a scorpion.	Unio, a pearl.	Senio, ——— six, &c.
	Vespertillo, a bat.	

Exc. 2. Nouns in *do* and *gō* are feminine, and have the genitive in *inis*; as, *ārundo*, *arundinis*, a reed; *īmāgo*, *imaginis*, an image. So,

Ærūgo, rust (of brass.)	Intercāpēdo, a space between.	Sartāgo, a frying-pan.
Cartilāgo, a gristle.	Lānūgo, down.	Torpēdo, a numbness.
Farrāgo, a mixture.	Porrigō, scurf or scales in the head; dandruff.	Uligō, the natural moisture of the earth.
Grando, hail.	Rūbigo, rust, mildew.	Vertigō, a dizziness, &c.
Hirūdo, a horse-leech.		

But the following are masculine:

Cardo, -inis, a hinge.	Margo, -inis, the brink of a river; also fem.
Cūdo, -ōnis, a leather cap.	Ordo, -inis, order.
Harpāgo, -ōnis, a drag.	Tendo, -inis, a tendon.
Ligo, -ōnis, a spade.	Udo, -ōnis, a linen or woollen sock.

Cūpido, desire, is often masc. with the poets; but in prose always fem.

Exc. 3. The following nouns have *inis*:

Apollo, -inis, the god Apollo.	Nēmo, -inis, m. or f. nobody.
Hōmo, -inis, a man or woman.	Turbo, -inis, m. a whirlwind.

Cāro, flesh, fem. has *carnis*. Anio, masc. the name of a river, Aniēnis. Nerio, Neriēnis, the wife of the god Mars; from the obsolete nominatives Anien, Nerien. Turbo, the name of a man, has *ōnis*.

Exc. 4. Greek nouns in *o* are feminine, and have *us* in the genitive, and *o* in the other cases singular; as, *Dido*, the name of a woman; genit. *Didūs*; dat. *Didō*, &c. Sometimes they are declined regularly; thus, *Dido*, *Didōnis*; so *ēcho*, -ūs, f. the resounding of the voice from a rock or wood; *Argo*, -ūs, the name of a ship; *hālo*, -onis, f. a circle about the sun or moon.

Argō, fem.

Nom. Argō,	Acc. Argō,
Gen. Argūs,	Voc. Argō,
Dat. Argō,	Abl. Argō,

Like Argō, decline, *Sapphō*, *Cælænō*, *Echō*, &c.

Dido, *fem.*

Latin form.	Greek form.
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> Didō,	<i>Nom.</i> Didō,
<i>Gen.</i> Didōnis,	<i>Gen.</i> Didūs,
<i>Dat.</i> Didōni,	<i>Dat.</i> Didō,
<i>Acc.</i> Didonem,	<i>Acc.</i> Didō,
<i>Voc.</i> Dido,	<i>Voc.</i> Didō,
<i>Abl.</i> Didōne.	<i>Abl.</i> Didō,

C, D, L.

3. Nouns in *c* and *l* are neuter, and form the genitive by adding *is*; as,

Animal, *animālis*, a living creature; *tōral*, *-ālis*, a bed-cover; *hālec*, *halēcis*, a kind of pickle. So,

Cervīcal, <i>a bolster.</i>	Mīnerval, <i>entry-money.</i>	Pūteal, <i>a well-cover.</i>
Cūbital, <i>a cushion.</i>	Mīnūtal, <i>minced meat.</i>	Vectīgal, <i>a tax.</i>
Except, Consul, -ūlis, <i>m. a consul.</i>	Mūgil, -ilis, <i>m. a mullet-fish.</i>	
Fel, fellis, <i>n. gall.</i>	Sal, sālīs, <i>m. or n. salt.</i>	
Lac, lactis, <i>n. milk.</i>	Sāles, -ium, <i>pl. m. witty sayings.</i>	
Mel, mellis, <i>n. honey.</i>	Sol, sōlis, <i>m. the sun.</i>	

D is the termination only of a few proper names, which form the genitive by adding *is*; as, *Dāvid*, *Davidis*.

N.

4. Nouns in *n* are masculine, and add *is* in the genitive; as,

Dæmon, -ōnis, <i>a spirit.</i>	Physiognomon, -ōnis, <i>one who guesses at the dispositions of men from the face.</i>
Gnōmon, -ōnis, <i>the cock of a dial.</i>	Ren, rēnis, <i>the reins.</i>
Hūmen, -ēnis, <i>the god of marriage.</i>	Sulen, -ēnis, <i>the spleen, &c.</i>
Lien, -ēnis, <i>the milt.</i>	

Exc. 1. Nouns in *men* are neuter, and make their genitive in *inis*; as, *flūmen*, *flumīnis*, a river. So,

Acūmen, <i>sharpness.</i>	Fōrāmen, <i>a hole.</i>	Pūtāmen, <i>a nut-shell.</i>
Cācūmen, <i>the top.</i>	Gērmēn, <i>a sprout.</i>	Sagmen, <i>vervain, an herb.</i>
Cognōmen, <i>a surname.</i>	Nūmen, <i>the Deity.</i>	Tegmen, <i>a covering.</i>
Discrīmen, <i>a difference.</i>	Omen, <i>a presage.</i>	Vīmen, <i>a twig.</i>
Exāmen, <i>a swarm of bees.</i>		

The following nouns are likewise neuter:

Glūten, -inis, <i>glue.</i>	Inguen, -inis, <i>the groin.</i>
Unguen, -inis, <i>ointment.</i>	Pollen, -inis, <i>fine flour.</i>

Exc. 2. The following masculines have *inis*; *pecten*, a comb; *tūbīcen*, a trumpeter; *tībīcen*, a piper; and *oscen*, *v. oscīnis*, sc. *āvis*, *f.*, a bird which foreboded by singing.

Exc. 3. The following nouns are feminine: *Sindon*, *-ōnis*, fine linen; *āēdon*, *-ōnis*, a nightingale; *halcyon*, *-ōnis*, a bird called the king's fisher; *īcon*, *-ōnis*, an image.

Exc. 4. Some Greek nouns have *ontis*; as, *Laōmēdon*, *-ontis*, a king of Troy. So *Achēron*, *Chamæleon*, *Phaëthon*, *Chāron*, &c.

AR and UR.

5. Nouns in *ar* and *ur* are neuter, and add *is* to form the genitive; as,

Calcar, calcāris, a spur; *murmur, murmūris*, a noise. So,

Guttur, -ūris, the throat.

Jūbar, -āris, a sun-beam.

Except, *Ebur, -ōris*, n. ivory.

Furfur, -ūris, m. bran.

Hēpar, -ātis, or *-ātos*, n. the liver.

Lācūnar, -āris, a ceiling.

Nectar, -āris, drink of the gods.

Jēcūr, -ōris, or *jecīnōris*, n. the liver.

Sālar, -āris, m. a trout.

Turtur, -ūris, m. a turtle-dove.

ER and OR.

6. Nouns in *er* and *or* are masculine, and form the genitive by adding *is*; as,

Anser, ansēris, a goose, or gander; *agger, -ēris*, a rampart; *āer, -ēris*, the air; *carcer, -ēris*, a prison; *asser, -ēris*, & *assis, -is*, a plank; *dōlor, -ōris*, pain; *cōlor, -ōris*, a color. So,

Actor, a doer, a pleader.

Crēditor, he that trusts or lends.

Dēbitor, a debtor.

Fētor, an ill smell.

Hōnor, honor.

Lictor, an officer among the

Romans, who attended the

magistrates.

Nidor, a strong smell.

Pædor, filth.

Pūdor, shame.

Rūbor, blushing.

Sātor, a sower, a father.

Tēpor, warmth.

Tonsor, a barber.

Vāpor, a vapor.

Vēnātor, a hunter, &c.

Rhētor, a rhetorician, has rhetōris; castor, a beaver, -ōris.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are neuter:

Acer, -ēris, a maple-tree.

Ador, -ōris, fine wheat.

Æquor, -ōris, a plain, the sea.

Cādāver, -ēris, a dead carcass.

Cicer, -ēris, vetches.

Cor, cordis, the heart.

Iter, itinēris, a journey.

Arbor, -ōris, a tree, is fem. *Tuber, -ēris*, the fruit of the tuber-tree, is masc. but when put for the tree, is fem.

Marmor, -ōris, marble.

Pāpāver, -ēris, poppy.

Piper, -ēris, pepper.

Spinther, -ēris, a clasp.

Tūber, -ēris, a swelling.

Uber, -ēris, a pap or fatness.

Ver, vēris, the spring.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *ber* have *bris* in the genitive; as, *hic imber, imbris*, a shower. So *Insūber, Octōber, &c.*

Nouns in *ter* have *tris*; as, *venter, ventris*, the belly; *pāter, patris*, a father; *frāter, -tris*, a brother; *accipiter, -tris*, a hawk; but *crāter*, a cup, has *crātēris*; *sōter, -ēris*, a savior; *lāter, a tile, latēris*; *Jūpiter*, the chief of the Heathen Gods, has *Jovis*; *linter, -tris*, a little boat, is masc. or fem.

AS.

7. Nouns in *as* are feminine, and have the genitive in *ātis*; as, *ætās, ætātis*, an age. So,

Æstās, the summer.

Piētās, piety.

Pōtestās, power.

Prōbītās, probity.

Sātiētās, a glut or disgust.

Sīmultās, a feud, a grudge.

Tempestās, a time, a tempest.

Ubertās, fertility.

Vērītās, truth.

Vōluntās, will.

Vōluptās, pleasure.

Anās, a duck, has ānātis.

Exc. 1. *As, assis*, m. a piece of money, or any thing which may be divided into twelve parts.

Mās, māris, m. a male.

Vās, vādis, m. a surety.

Vās, vāsis, m. a vessel.

Note. All the parts of *as* are likewise masculine, except *uncin*, an ounce, fem.; *as, sextans*, 2 ounces; *quadrans*, 3; *triens*, 4; *quincunx*, 5; *semis*, 6; *septunx*, 7; *bes*, 8; *dođrans*, 9; *dextans*, or *dēcunx*, 10; *deunx*, 11 ounces.

Exc. 2. Of Greek nouns in *as*, some are masculine ; some feminine ; some neuter. Those that are masculine have *antis* in the genit. *as*, *gīgas*, *gigantis*, a giant ; *ādāmas*, *-antis*, an adamant ; *ēlēphas*, *-antis*, an elephant. Those that are feminine have *adis*, or *ados* ; *as*, *lampas*, *lampadis*, or *lampados*, a lamp ; *drōmas*, *-adis*, *f.*, a dromedary : likewise *Arcas*, an Arcadian, though masculine, has *Arcadis*, or *-ados*. Those that are neuter have *atis* ; *as*, *būchēras*, *-atis*, an herb ; *artocreas*, *-atis*, a pie.

ES.

8. Nouns in *es* are feminine, and in the genitive change *es* into *is* ; *as*,

rūpes, *rupis*, a rock ; *nūbes*, *nubis*, a cloud. So,

<i>Ædes</i> , or <i>-is</i> , a temple ; pl. <i>Fīdes</i> , a fiddle.	<i>Sōbōles</i> , an offspring.
<i>a house</i> .	<i>Lues</i> , a plague.
<i>Cautes</i> , a rugged rock.	<i>Mōles</i> , a heap.
<i>Fāmes</i> , a hunger.	<i>Pālumbes</i> , <i>m.</i> or <i>f.</i> a pigeon.
	<i>Vulpes</i> , a fox.
	<i>Strāges</i> , a slaughter.
	<i>Tābes</i> , a consumption.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine, and most of them likewise excepted in the formation of the genitive :

<i>Ales</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a bird.	<i>Palmes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a vine-branch.
<i>Ames</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a fowler's staff.	<i>Pāries</i> , <i>-ētis</i> , a wall.
<i>Aries</i> , <i>-ētis</i> , a ram.	<i>Pes</i> , <i>pēdis</i> , the feet.
<i>Bes</i> , <i>bessis</i> , two thirds of a pound.	<i>Pēdes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a footman.
<i>Cespes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a turf.	<i>Poples</i> , <i>-itis</i> , the ham of the leg.
<i>Eques</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a horseman.	<i>Præses</i> , <i>-idis</i> , a president.
<i>Fōmes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , fuel.	<i>Sātelles</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a lifeguard.
<i>Gurges</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a whirlpool.	<i>Sūpes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , the stock of a tree.
<i>Hēres</i> , <i>-ēdis</i> , an heir.	<i>Termes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , an olive-bough.
<i>Indīges</i> , <i>-ētis</i> , a man deified.	<i>Trāmes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a path.
<i>Interpres</i> , <i>-ētis</i> , an interpreter.	<i>Vēles</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a light-armed soldier.
<i>Līmes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a limit or bound.	<i>Vātes</i> , <i>vatis</i> , a prophet.
<i>Miles</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a soldier.	<i>Verres</i> , <i>verris</i> , a boar-pig.
<i>Obses</i> , <i>-idis</i> , a hostage.	

But *ales*, *miles*, *heres*, *interpres*, *obses*, and *vates*, are also used in the feminine.

Exc. 2. The following feminines are excepted in the formation of the genitive :

<i>Abies</i> , <i>-ētis</i> , a fir-tree.	<i>Rēquies</i> , <i>-ētis</i> , or <i>requiēi</i> , (of the fifth declension) rest.
<i>Cēres</i> , <i>-ēris</i> , the goddess of corn.	<i>Sēges</i> , <i>-ētis</i> , growing corn.
<i>Merces</i> , <i>-ēdis</i> , a reward, hire.	<i>Tēges</i> , <i>-ētis</i> , a mat or coverlet.
<i>Merges</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a handful of corn.	<i>Tūdes</i> , <i>-is</i> , or <i>-itis</i> , a hammer.
<i>Quies</i> , <i>-ētis</i> , rest.	

To these add the following adjectives :

<i>Ales</i> , <i>-itis</i> , swift.	<i>Præpes</i> , <i>-ētis</i> , swift-winged.
<i>Bīpes</i> , <i>-ēdis</i> , two-footed.	<i>Rēses</i> , <i>-idis</i> , idle.
<i>Quadrūpes</i> , <i>-ēdis</i> , four-footed.	<i>Sospes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , safe.
<i>Deses</i> , <i>-idis</i> , slothful.	<i>Sūperstes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , surviving.
<i>Dīves</i> , <i>-itis</i> , rich.	<i>Tēres</i> , <i>-ētis</i> , round and long, smooth.
<i>Hēbes</i> , <i>-ētis</i> , dull.	<i>Lōcuples</i> , <i>-ētis</i> , rich.
<i>Perpes</i> , <i>-ētis</i> , perpetual.	<i>Mansues</i> , <i>-ētis</i> , gentle.

Exc. 3. Greek nouns in *es* are commonly masculine ; *as*, *hic ācīnāces*, *-is*, a Persian sword, a scimitar ; but some are neuter ; *as*, *hoc cācōēthes*, an evil custom, *hippōmānes*, a kind

of poison which grows in the forehead of a foal; *pănăces*, the herb all-heal; *nēpenthes*, the herb kill-grief. Dissyllables, and the monosyllable *Cres*, a Cretan, have *ētis* in the genitive; as, *hic magnes*, *magnētis*, a loadstone; *tăpes*, *-ētis*, tapestry; *lēbes*, *-ētis*, a caldron. The rest follow the general rule. Some proper nouns have either *ētis*, or *is*; as, *Dăres*, *Darētis*, or *Daris*; which is also sometimes of the first declension; *Achilles*, has *Achillis*; or *Achilli*, contracted for *Achillēi* or *Achillei*, of the second declension, from *Achillēus*: So *Ulysses*, *Përicles*, *Verres*, *Aristôtēles*, &c.

IS.

9. Nouns in *is* are feminine, and have their genitive the same with the nominative; as,

auris, *auris*, the ear; *ăvis*, *avis*, a bird. So,

<i>Apis</i> , a bee.	<i>Messis</i> , a harvest or crop.	<i>Rătis</i> , a raft.
<i>Bilis</i> , the gall, anger.	<i>Năris</i> , the nostril.	<i>Rūdīs</i> , a rod.
<i>Classis</i> , a fleet.	<i>Neptis</i> , a niece.	<i>Vallis</i> , a valley.
<i>Fēlis</i> , a cat.	<i>Ovis</i> , a sheep.	<i>Vestis</i> , a garment.
<i>Fōris</i> , a door; oftener plur. fores, -ium.	<i>Pellis</i> , a skin.	<i>Vītis</i> , a vine.
	<i>Pestis</i> , a plague.	

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine, and form the genitive according to the general rule:

<i>Axis</i> , axis, an axle-tree.	<i>Ensis</i> , a sword.	<i>Patruēlis</i> , a cousin-german.
<i>Aquālis</i> , a water-pot, an ewer.	<i>Fascis</i> , a bundle.	<i>Piscis</i> , a fish.
<i>Callis</i> , a beaten road.	<i>Fēcīālis</i> , a herald.	<i>Postis</i> , a post.
<i>Caulis</i> , the stalk of an herb.	<i>Follis</i> , a pair of bellows.	<i>Sōdālis</i> , a companion.
<i>Collis</i> , a hill.	<i>Fustis</i> , a staff.	<i>Torris</i> , a fire-brand.
<i>Cenchrīs</i> , a kind of serpent.	<i>Mensis</i> , a month.	<i>Unguis</i> , the nail.
	<i>Mūgīlis</i> , or -il, a mullet-fish.	<i>Vectis</i> , a lever.
	<i>Orbis</i> , a circle, the world.	<i>Vermis</i> , a worm.

To these add Latin nouns in *nis*; as, *pānis*, bread; *crīnis*, the hair; *ignis*, fire; *fūnis*, a rope, &c. But Greek nouns in *nis* are feminine, and have the genitive in *īdis*; as, *tŷrannis*, *tŷrannīdis*, tyranny.

Exc. 2. The following nouns are also masculine, but form their genitive differently:

<i>Cīnis</i> , -ēris, ashes.	<i>Pūbis</i> , or <i>pūbes</i> , -is, or oftener -ēris, marriageable.
<i>Cūcūmis</i> , -is, or -ēris, a cucumber.	<i>Pulvis</i> , -ēris, dust.
<i>Dis</i> , <i>dītis</i> , the god of riches, or rich, an adj.	<i>Quiris</i> , -ītis, a Roman.
<i>Glis</i> , <i>gliris</i> , a dormouse, a rat.	<i>Samnis</i> , -ītis, a Samnite.
<i>Impūbis</i> , or <i>impūbes</i> , -is, or -ēris, not marriageable.	<i>Sanguis</i> , -īnis, blood.
<i>Lăpis</i> , -īdis, a stone.	<i>Sēmīs</i> , -issis, the half of any thing.
	<i>Vōmis</i> , or -er, -ēris, a plowshare.

Pulvis and *cinis* are sometimes feminine. *Semis* is also sometimes neuter, and then it is indeclinable. *Pūbis* and *impūbis* are properly adjectives; thus, *Puberibus caulem feliis*, a stalk with downy leaves, *Virg. Æn. xii. 413. Impube corpus*, the body of a boy not having yet got the down (*pubes*, -is, f.) of youth, *Horat. Epod. 5. 13.* *Exsanguis*, bloodless, an adjective, has *exsanguis* in the genitive.

Exc. 3. The following are either masculine or feminine, and form the genitive according to the general rule :

Amnis, *a river.*

Anguis, *a snake.*

Cānālis, *a conduit-pipe.*

Clūnis, *the buttock.*

Corbis, *a basket.*

Fīnis, *the end ; fines, the boundaries of a field, or territories, is always masc.*

Scrōbis, *or scrobs, a ditch.*

Torquis, *a chain.*

Exc. 4. These feminines have *īdis* : *Cassis*, -īdis, *a helmet ; cuspis*, -īdis, *the point of a spear ; capis*, -īdis, *a kind of cup ; prōmulsis*, -īdis, *a kind of drink, metheglin. Lis*, *strife, f. has lītis.*

Exc. 5. Greek nouns in *is* are generally feminine, and form the genitive variously : some have *eos* or *ios* ; as, *hærēsis*, -eos, or -ios, or -is, *a heresy ; so, bāsis*, f. *the foot of a pillar ; phrasis*, *a phrase ; phthīsis*, *a consumption ; poēsis*, *poetry ; metrōpōlis*, *a chief city, &c.* Some have *īdis*, or *īdos* ; as, *Pāris*, -īdis, or -īdos, *the name of a man ; aspis*, -īdis, f., *an asp ; ēphēmēris*, -īdis, f., *a day-book ; īris*, -īdis, f., *the rainbow ; pyxis*, -īdis, f., *a box.* So, *Ægis*, *the shield of Pallas ; canthāris*, *a sort of fly ; pērisclēlis*, *a garter ; proboscis*, *an elephant's trunk ; pyramis*, *a pyramid ; and tigris*, *a tiger, -īdis, seldom tigris : all fem.* Part have *īdis*, as *Psophis*, -īdis, *the name of a city ; others have īnis* ; as, *Eleusis*, -īnis, *the name of a city ; and some have entis* ; as, *Sīmois*, *Simontis*, *the name of a river. Chāris*, *one of the graces, has Charītis.*

OS.

10. Nouns in *os* are masculine, and have the genitive in *ōtis* ; as,

nēpos, -ōtis, *a grandchild ; sacerdos*, -ōtis, *a priest, also fem.*

Exc. 1. The following are feminine :

Arbos, or -or, ōris, *a tree.*

Cos, cōtis, *a whetstone.*

Dos, dōtis, *a dowry.*

Eos, eōis, *the morning.*

Glos, glōris, *the husband's sister, or brother's wife.*

Exc. 2. The following masculines are excepted in the genitive :

Flos, flōris, *a flower.*

Hōnos, or -or, -ōris, *honor.*

Lābos, or -or, -ōris, *labor.*

Lēpos, or -or, -ōris, *wit.*

Mos, mōris, *a custom.*

Ros, rōris, *dew.*

Custos, -ōdis, *a keeper ; also fem.*

Hēros, herōis, *a hero.*

Mīnos, -ōis, *a king of Crete.*

Tros, Trōis, *a Trojan.*

Bos, bōvis, m. or f. *an ox or cow.*

Exc. 3. *Os*, *ossis*, *a bone* ; and *ōs*, *oris*, *the mouth*, are neuter.

Exc. 4. Some Greek nouns have *ōis* ; as, *hēros*, -ōis, *a hero, or great man* : So, *Mīnos*, *a king of Crete ; Tros*, *a Trojan ; thos*, *a kind of wolf.*

US.

11. Nouns in *us* are neuter, and have their genitive in *ōris* ; as,

pectus, pectōris, the breast ; *tempus, tempōris*, time. So,

Corpus, <i>a body.</i>	Frigus, <i>cold.</i>	Pēnus, <i>provisions.</i>
Dēcus, <i>honor.</i>	Littus, <i>a shore.</i>	Pignus, <i>a pledge.</i>
Dēdēcus, <i>disgrace.</i>	Nēmus, <i>a grove.</i>	Stergus, <i>dung.</i>
Fācīnus, <i>a great action.</i>	Pēcus, <i>cattle.</i>	Tergus, <i>a hide.</i>
Fōenus, <i>usury.</i>		

Exc. 1. The following neuters have *ēris* :

Acus, <i>chaff.</i>	Mūnus, <i>a gift or office.</i>	Scēlus, <i>a crime.</i>
Fūnus, <i>a funeral.</i>	Olus, <i>pot-herbs.</i>	Sidus, <i>a star.</i>
Fœdus, <i>a covenant.</i>	Onus, <i>a burden.</i>	Vellus, <i>a fleece of wool.</i>
Gēnus, <i>a kind or kindred.</i>	Opus, <i>a work.</i>	Viscus, <i>an entrail.</i>
Glōmus, <i>a clew.</i>	Pondus, <i>a weight.</i>	Ulcus, <i>a bile.</i>
Lātus, <i>the side.</i>	Rūdus, <i>rubbish.</i>	Vulnus, <i>a wound.</i>

Thus *acēris, funēris*, &c. *Glōmus*, a clew, is sometimes masculine, and has *glōmī*, of the second declension. *Vēnus*, the goddess of love, and *vētus*, old, an adjective, likewise have *ēris*.

Exc. 2. The following nouns are feminine, and form the genitive variously.

Incus, -ūdis, <i>an anvil.</i>	Jūventus, -ūtis, <i>youth.</i>
Pālus, -ūdis, <i>a pool or morass.</i>	Sālus, -ūtis, <i>safety.</i>
Pēcus, (<i>not used</i>) -ūdis, <i>a sheep.</i>	Sēnectus, -ūtis, <i>old age.</i>
Subscus, -ūdis, <i>a dove-tail.</i>	Sērvitus, -ūtis, <i>slavery.</i>
Tellus, -ūris, <i>the earth, or goddess of the earth.</i>	Virtus, -ūtis, <i>virtue.</i>
	Intercus, -ūtis, <i>a hydropsy.</i>

Intercus is properly an adjective, having *aqua* understood.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables of the neuter gender have *ūris* in the genitive ; as,

Crus, crūris, <i>the leg.</i>	Rus, rūris, <i>the country.</i>
Jus, jūris, <i>law or right ; also broth.</i>	Thus, thūris, <i>frankincense.</i>
Pus, pūris, <i>the corrupt matter of any sore.</i>	So Mus, mūris, <i>masc. a mouse.</i>

Līgus, or -ur, a Ligurian, has *Līgūris* ; *lēpus*, masc. a hare, *lēpōris* ; *sus*, masc. or fem. a swine, *suīs* ; *grus*, masc. or fem. a crane, *gruīs*.

Œdipus, the name of a man, has *Œdipōdis* : sometimes it is of the second declension, and has *Œdīpi*. The compounds of *pus* have *ōdis* ; as, *trīpus*, masc. a tripod, *tripōdis* ; but *līgōpus*, -ōdis, a kind of bird, or the herb hare's foot, is fem. Names of cities have *untis* ; as, *Trāpezus, Trapezuntis* ; *Opus, Opuntis*.

YS.

12. Nouns in *ys* are all borrowed from the Greek, and are for the most part feminine. In the genitive they have sometimes *yis* or *yos* ; as,

Hæc chēlys, chelyis or -yos, a harp ; *Cāpys, Capiyis*, or -yos, the name of a man ; sometimes they have *ŷdis*, or *ŷdos* ; as, *hæc chlāmis, chlamydis*, or *chlamydos*, a soldier's cloak ; and sometimes *ŷnis*, or *ŷnos* ; as, *Trāchys, Trachyŷnis*, or *Trachyŷnos*, the name of a town.

ÆS, AUS, EUS.

13. The nouns ending in *æs* and *aus*, are,

Æs, æris, n. <i>brass or money.</i>	Laus, laudis, f. <i>praise.</i>
Fraus, fraudis, f. <i>fraud.</i>	Præs, prædis, m. or f. <i>a surety.</i>

Substantives ending in the syllable *eus* are all proper names, and have the genitive in *eos*; as, *Ōrpheus, Ōrpheos; Tēreus, Tereos*. But these nouns are also found in the second declension, where *eus* is divided into two syllables: thus, *Ōrphēus*, genit. *Ōrphēi*, or sometimes contracted *Ōrphēi*, and that into *Ōrphī*.

S, with a consonant before it.

14. Nouns ending in *s* with a consonant before it, are feminine; and form the genitive by changing the *s* into *is* or *tis*; as,

trabs, trābis, a beam; *scobs, scōbis*, saw-dust; *hiems, hiēmis*, winter; *gens, gentis*, a nation; *stips, stīpīs*, alms; *pars, partis*, a part; *sors, sortis*, a lot; *mors, -tis*, death.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine:

Chālybs, -ybis, steel.

Dens, -tis, a tooth.

Fons, -tis, a well.

Gryps, grȳphis, a griffin.

Hydrops, -ōpis, the dropsy.

Mērops, -ōpis, a woodpecker.

Mons, -tis, a mountain.

Pons, -tis, a bridge.

Seps, sēpis, a kind of serpent; but,

Seps, sēpis, a hedge, is fem.

Exc. 2. The following are either masculine or feminine:

Adeps, adīpis, fatness.

Rūdens, -tis, a cable.

Scrobs, scrōbis, a ditch.

Serpens, -tis, a serpent.

Stirps, stirpis, the root of a tree.

Stirps, an offspring, always fem.

Animans, a living creature, is found in all the genders, but most frequently in the feminine or neuter.

Exc. 3. Polysyllables in *eps* change *e* into *i*; as, *hæc forceps, forcīpis*, a pair of tongs; *princeps, -īpis*, a prince or princess; *particeps, -cīpis*, a partaker; so likewise *cælebs, cælībis*, an unmarried man or woman. The compounds of *caput*, have *cipītis*; as, *præceps, præcipītis*, headlong; *anceps, ancipītis*, doubtful; *biceps, -cipītis*, two-headed. *Auceps*, a fowler, has *aucūpis*.

Exc. 4. The following feminines have *dis*:

Frons, frondis, the leaf of a tree.

Glans, glandis, an acorn.

Juglans, -dis, a walnut.

Lens, lendis, a nit.

So *librīpens, libripēdis*, m. a weigher, *nefrens, -dis*, m. or f. a grice, or pig; and the compounds of *cor*; as, *concors, concordis*, agreeing; *discors*, disagreeing; *vēcors*, mad, &c. But *frons*, the forehead, has *frontis*, fem. and *lens*, a kind of pulse, *lentis*, also fem.

Exc. 5. *Iens*, going, and *quiens*, being able, participles from the verbs *eo* and *quæo*, with their compounds, have *euntis*: thus, *iens, euntis*; *quiens, queuntis*; *rēdiens, redeuntis*; *nē-quiens, nequeuntis*; but *ambiens*, going round, has *ambientis*.

Exc. 6. *Tīryns*, a city in Greece, the birth-place of Hercules, has *Tyrinthis*.

T.

15. There is only one noun in *t*, namely, *cāput, capītis*, the head, neuter. In like manner, its compounds, *sincīput, sincīpītis*, the forehead; and *occīput, -ītis*, the hind-head.

X.

16. Nouns in *x* are feminine, and in the genitive change *x* into *cis* ; as,

vox, *vōcis*, the voice: *lux*, *lūcis*, light. So,

Appendix, -īcis, an addition; dim. -icūla.	Crux, crūcis, a cross.	Merx, -cis, merchandise.
Arx, arcis, a castle.	Fæx, -cis, dregs.	Nutrix, -īcis, a nurse.
Cēlox, -ōcis, a pinnacle.	Falx, -cis, a scythe.	Nux, nūcis, a nut.
Cervīx, -īcis, the neck.	Fax, -ācis, a torch.	Pax, -ācis, peace.
Cicātrix, -īcis, a scar.	Filix, -īcis, a fern.	Pix, pīcis, pitch.
Cornix, -īcis, a crow.	Lanx, -cis, a plate.	Rādix, -īcis, a root.
Cōturnix, -īcis, a quail.	Lōdix, -īcis, a sheet.	Sālix, -īcis, a willow.
Coxendix, -īcis, the hip.	Mēretrix, -īcis, a courtesan.	Vibix, or -ex, -īcis, the mark of a wound.

Exc. 1. Polysyllables in *ax* and *ex* are masculine ; as, *thorax*, -ācis, a breastplate ; *Cōrax*, -ācis, a raven. *Ex* in the genitive is changed into *īcis* ; as, *pollex*, -īcis, m. the thumb. So the following nouns, also masculine :

Apex, the tuft or tassel on the top of a priest's cap, the cap itself, or the top of any thing.	Cīmex, a bug.	Podex, the breech.
Artīfex, an artist.	Cōdex, a book.	Pontīfex, a chief priest.
Carnīfex, an executioner.	Cūlex, a gnat, a midge.	Pūlex, a flea.
Caudex, the trunk of a tree.	Frūtex, a shrub.	Rāmex, a rupture.
	Index, an informer.	Sōrex, a rat.
	Lātex, any liquor.	Vertex, the crown of the head.
	Mūrex, a shell-fish, purple.	Vortex, a whirlpool.

Vervex, a wether sheep, has *vervēcis* ; *fænisex*, a mower of hay, *fænisēcis* ; *rēsex*, m. -ēcis, a vine-branch cut off.

To these masculines add,

Cālix, -īcis, a cup.	Oryx, -ŷcis, a wild goat.
Cālyx, -ŷcis, the bud of a flower.	Phoenix, -īcis, a bird so called.
Coccyx, -ŷgis, vel ŷcis, a cuckoo.	Trādūx, -ūcis, a graft or offset of a vine ; also fem.
Fornix, -īcis, a vault.	

But the following polysyllables in *ax* and *ex* are feminine :

Fornax, -ācis, a furnace.	Smīlax, -ācis, the herb rope-weed.
Pānax, -ācis, the herb all-heal.	Cērex, -īcis, a sedge.
Climax, -ācis, a ladder.	Sūpellex, supellectilis, household furniture.
Forfex, -īcis, a pair of scissors.	
Hālex, -ēcis, a herring.	

Exc. 2. A great many nouns in *x* are either masculine or feminine ; as,

Calx, -cis, the heel, or the end of any thing, the goal ; but <i>calx</i> , lime, is always fem.	Līmax, -ācis, a snail.
Cortex, -īcis, the bark of a tree.	Obex, -īcis, a bolt or bar.
Hystrix, -īcis, a porcupine.	Perdix, -īcis, a partridge.
Imbrex, -īcis, a gutter or roof tile.	Rūmex, -īcis, a pumice-stone.
Lynx, -cis, an ounce, a beast of a very quick sight.	Rūmex, -īcis, sorrel, an herb.
	Sandix, -īcis, a purple color.
	Sīlex, -īcis, a flint.
	Vārix, -īcis, a swollen vein.

Exc. 3. The following nouns depart from the general rule in forming the genitive :

Aquīlex, -ēgis, a well-maker.	Frux, (not used,) frūgis, f. corn.
Conjunx, or -ux, -ūgis, a husband or wife.	Grexx, grōgis, m. or f. a flock.
	Lex, lēgis, f. a law.

Phālanx, -angis, f. a *phalanx*.
 Rēmex, -īgis, a *rower*.
 Rex, rēgis, a *king*.

Nix, nīvis, f. *snow*.
 Nox, noctis, f. *night*.
 Sēnex, sēnis, (an adj.) *old*.

Exc. 4. Greek nouns in *x*, both with respect to gender and declension, are as various as Latin nouns; thus, *bombyx*, *bombycis*, a silk-worm, masc. but when it signifies silk, or the yarn spun by the worm, it is feminine; *ōnyx*, masc. or fem. *onýchis*, a precious stone; and so *sardōnyx*; *lārynx*, *laryngis*, fem. the top of the wind-pipe: *Phryx*, *Phrygis*, a Phrygian; *sphinx*, -ngis, a fabulous hag; *strix*, -īgis, f., a screech-owl; *Styx*, -ygis, f. a river in hell; *Hylax*, -ctis, the name of a dog; *Bibrax*, *Bibractis*, the name of a town, &c.

DATIVE SINGULAR.

The dative singular anciently ended also in *e*; as, *Esuriente leoni ex ore exculpere prædam*, To pull the prey out of the mouth of a hungry lion, Lucil. *Hæret pede pes*, Foot sticks to foot, *Æn.* x. 361. for *esurienti* and *pedi*.

EXCEPTIONS IN THE ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

Exc. 1. The following nouns have the accusative in *im*:

Amussis, f. a *mason's rule*.
 Būris, f. the *beam of a plow*.
 Gummis, f. *gum*.
 Mēphītis, f. a *damp or strong smell*.
 Rāvis, f. *hoarseness*.
 Sīnāpis, f. *mustard*.

Cannābis, f. *hemp*.
 Cūcūmis, m. a *cucumber*.
 Sītis, f. *thirst*.
 Tussis, f. the *cough*.
 Vis, f. *strength*.

To these add proper names, 1. of cities, and other places; as, *Hispālis*, Seville, a city in Spain; *Syrtis*, a dangerous quicksand on the coast of Libya;—2. of rivers; as, *Tibēris*, the Tiber, which runs past Rome; *Bætis*, the Guadalquivir, in Spain: So *Athēsis*, *Arāris*, *Athis*, *Liris*, &c.—3. of gods; as, *Anūbis*, *Apis*, *Osiris*, *Serāpis*, deities of the Egyptians. But these sometimes make the accusative also in *in*; thus, *Syrtim* or *Syrtin*, *Tiberim* or *-in*, &c.

Exc. 2. Several nouns in *is* have either *em* or *im*; as,

Clāvis, f. a *key*.
 Cūtis, f. the *skin*.
 Febris, f. a *fever*.
 Nāvis, f. a *ship*.

Pelvis, f. a *bason*.
 Puppis, f. the *stern of a ship*.
 Restis, f. a *rope*.

Sēcūris, f. an *ax*.
 Sēmentis, f. a *sowing*.
 Strīgillis, f, a *horse-comb*.
 Turris, f. a *tower*.

Thus *navem*, or *navim*; *puppem*, or *puppim*, &c. The ancients said *avim*, *aurim*, *ovim*, *pestim*, *vallim*, *vitim*, &c.; which are not to be imitated.

Exc. 2. GREEK NOUNS form their accusative variously:

1. Greek nouns, whose genitive increases in *is* or *os* impure, that is, with a consonant going before, have the accusative in *em* or *a*, as *lampas*, *lampādis*, or *lampādos*, *lampādem*, or *lampāda*. In like manner, these three, which have *is* pure in the genitive, or *is* with a vowel before it: *Tros*, *Trois*, *Troem*, and *Trou*, a Trojan; *hēros*, a hero; *Mīnos*, a king of Crete. The three following have almost always *a*; *Pan*, the god of shepherds; *æther*, the sky; *delphin*, a dolphin; thus, *Pāna*, *æthēra*, *delphīna*.

2. Masculine Greek nouns in *is*, which have their genitive in *is* or *os* impure, form the accusative in *im* or *in*; sometimes in *idem*, never *ida*; as, *Pāris*, *Parīdis* or *Parīdos*; *Parim* or *Parin*, sometimes *Parīdem*, never *Parīda*.—So *Daphnis*.

3. Feminines in *is*, increasing impurely in the genitive, have commonly *idem* or *ida*, but rarely *im* or *in*; as, *Elis*, *Elidis* or *Elidos*, *Elidem* or *Elida*; seldom *Elim* or *Elin*, a city in Greece. In like manner feminines in *ys*, *ȳdos*, have *ȳdem* or *ȳda*, not *ȳm* or *ȳn* in the accusative; as, *chlāmys*, *-ȳdem*, or *-ȳda*, not *chlāmyñ*, a soldier's cloak.

4. But all Greek nouns in *is* or *ys*, whether masculine or feminine, having *is* or *os* pure in the genitive, form the accusative by changing *s* of the nominative into *m* or *n*; as, *metāmorphōsis*, *-eos*, or *-ios*, *metamorphōsim* or *in*, a change; *Tēthys*, *-yos* or *-yis*, *Tethym* or *-yn*; the name of a goddess.

5. Nouns ending in the diphthong *eus*, have the accusative in *ea*; as *Thēseus*, *Thesea*; *Tydeus*, *Tydea*.

EXCEPTIONS IN THE ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

Exc. 1. Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, have *i* in the ablative; as, *sēdile*, *sedili*; *anīmal*, *animāli*; *calcar*, *calcāri*. Except proper names; as, *Præneste*, abl. *Præneste*, the name of a town: and the following neuters in *ar*:

Far, *farre*, *corn*.

Hēpar, *-āte*, *the liver*.

Jūbar, *-āre*, *a sunbeam*.

Nectar, *-āre*, *drink of the gods*.

Par, *pāre*, *a match, a pair*.

Sal, *sāle*, *salt*.

Exc. 2. Nouns which have *im* or *in* in the accusative, have *i* in the ablative; as, *vis*, *vim*, *vi*: but *canābis*, *Bætis*, and *tigris*, have *e* or *i*.

Nouns which have *em* or *im* in the accusative, make their ablative in *e* or *i*; as, *turris*, *turre* or *turri*; but *restis*, a rope, and *cūtis*, the skin, have *e* only.

Several nouns which have only *em* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the ablative; as, *fīnis*, *supellex*, *vectis*, *pūgil*, a champion; *mūgil* or *mugilis*; so, *rus*, *ocēput*: also names of towns, when the question is made by *ubi*; as, *habitat Carthagine* or *Carthagini*, he lives at Carthage. So *civis*, *classis*, *sors*, *imber*, *anguis*, *avis*, *postis*, *fustis*, *amnis*, and *ignis*; but these have oftener *e*. *Canalis* has only *i*. The most ancient writers made the ablative of many other nouns in *i*; as, *æstati*, *cani*, *lapadi*, *ovi*, &c.

Exc. 3. Adjectives used as substantives have commonly the same ablative with the adjectives; as, *bīpennis*, *-i*, a halberd; *mōlaris*, *-i*, a millstone; *quadrirēmis*, *-i*, a ship with four banks of oars. So, the names of months, *Aprīlis*, *-i*; *Dēcember*, *-bri*, &c. But *rūdis*, f. a rod given to gladiators when discharged; *jūvēnis*, a young man, have only *e*; and likewise nouns ending in *il*, *x*, *ceps*, or *ns*; as,

Adōlescens, *a young man*. *Princeps*, *a prince*.

Infans, *an infant*.

Sēnex, *an old man*.

Torrens, *a brook*.

Vīgil, *a watchman*.

Thus, *adolescente*, *infante*, *sene*, &c.

Exc. 4. Nouns in *ys* which have *ym* in the accusative, make their ablative in *ye* or *y*; as, *Atys*, *Atye* or *Aty*, the name of a man.

NOMINATIVE PLURAL.

1. The nominative plural ends in *es*, when the noun is either masculine or feminine; as, *sermones*, *rupes*.

Nouns in *is* and *es* have sometimes in the nominative plural also *eis* or *is*; as, *puppēs, puppeis, or puppis*.

2. Neuters which have *e* in the ablative singular, have *a* in the nominative plural; as, *capita, itinēra*: but those which have *i* in the ablative make *ia*; as, *sedilia, calcāria*.

GENITIVE PLURAL.

Nouns which in the ablative singular have *i* only, or *e* and *i* together, make the genitive plural in *ium*; but if the ablative be in *e*, the genitive plural has *um*; as, *sedile, sedili, sedilium*; *turris, turre or turri, turrium*; *caput, capite, capitum*.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables in *as* have *ium*, though their ablative end in *e*; as, *mas, a male, māre, marium*; *vas, a surety, vādium*: but polysyllables have rather *um*; as, *civitas, a state or city, civitatum*, and sometimes *civitatum*.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *es* and *is*, which do not increase in the genitive singular, have also *ium*; as, *hostis, an enemy, hostium*. So likewise nouns ending in two consonants; as, *gens, a nation, gentium*; *urbs, a city, urbium*.

But the following have *um*; *parens, vātes, pānis, jūvēnis*, and *cānis*.

Exc. 3. The following nouns form the genitive plural in *ium*, though they have *e* only in the ablative singular:

Caro, carnis, f. *flesh*.

Cohors, -tis, f. *a company*.

Cor, cordis, n. *the heart*.

Cos, cotis, f. *a hone or whetstone*.

Dos, dōtis, f. *a dowry*.

Faux, faucis, f. *the jaws*.

Glis, gliris, m. *a rat*.

Lar, laris, m. *a household god*.

Lintes, -tris, m. or f. *a little boat*.

Lis, litis, f. *strife*.

Mus, mūris, m. *a mouse*.

Nix, nivis, f. *snow*.

Nox, noctis, f. *the night*.

Os, ossis, n. *a bone*.

Quiris, -itis, a *Roman*.

Samnis, -itis, m. or f. *a Samnite*.

Uter, utris, m. *a bottle*.

Thus *Samnitium, lintrium, litium, &c.* Also the compounds of *uncia* and *as*; as, *septunx, seven ounces, septuncium*; *bes, eight ounces, bessium*; *bōs, an ox or cow, has bōum, not bovum*; and in the dative and ablative, *bōbus or būbus, not bovis*; thus,

Sing.		Plur.	
N. bōs,	A. bōvem,	N. bōvēs,	A. bōvēs,
G. bōvis,	V. bōs,	G. bōum,	V. bōves,
D. bōvi,	A. bōvē:	D. bōbus or būbus,	A. bōbus or būbus.

Greek nouns have generally *um*; as, *Mācēdo, a Macedonian*; *Arabs, an Arabian*; *Æthiops, an Ethiopian*; *Mōnōcēros, an unicorn*; *Lynx, a beast so called*; *Thrax, a Thracian*; *Macedōnum, Arābum, Æthiōpum, Monocerōtum, Lyncum, Thrācum*. But those which have *a* or *is* in the nominative singular sometimes form the genitive plural in *on*; as, *Epigramma, epigrammātum, or epigrammatōn, an epigram*; *metamorphosis, -ium, or -eōn*.

OBS. 1. Nouns which want the singular, form the genitive plural as if they were complete; thus, *mānes, m. souls departed, manium*; *cēlites, m. inhabitants of heaven, cēlitum*; because they would have had in the sing. *manis* or *manes*, and *cēles*. But names of feasts often vary their declension; as, *Saturnālia, the feasts of Saturn, Saturnalium and Saturnaliorum*. So *Bacchanalia, Compitalia, Terminalia, &c.*

Obs. 2. Nouns which have *ium*, in the genitive plural, are, by the poets, often contracted into *um*; as, *nocentūm* for *nocentium*: and sometimes, to increase the number of syllables, a letter is inserted; as, *celitūm* for *celitum*. The former of these is said to be done by the figure *Syncōpe*; and the latter by *Epenthēsis*.

EXCEPTIONS IN THE DATIVE PLURAL.

Exc. 1. Greek nouns in *a* have commonly *tis* instead of *tibus*, as, *poēma*, a poem, *poematis*, rather than *poematibus*, from the old nominative *poemātum* of the second declension.

Exc. 2. The poets sometimes form the dative plural of Greek nouns in *si*, or when the next word begins with a vowel, in *sin*; as, *Troāsi* or *Troāsin*, for *Troādibus*, from *Troas*, *Troadis*, a Trojan woman.

EXCEPTIONS IN THE ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

Exc. 1. Nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural, make their accusative plural in *es*, *eis*, or *is*; as, *partes*, *partium*, acc. *partes*, *parteis*, or *partis*.

Exc. 2. If the accusative singular end in *a*, the accusative plural also ends in *as*; as, *lampas*, *lampādem*, or *lampāda*, *lampādes*, or *lampādas*. So *Tros*, *Troas*; *heros*, *heroas*; *Æthiops*, *Æthiopas*, &c.

GREEK NOUNS through all the cases.

Lampas, a lamp, f. *lampādis* or *-ādos*; *-ādi*; *-ādem*, or *-āda*; *-as*; *-āde*: Plur. *ādes*; *-ādum*; *-ādibus*; *-ādes*, or *-ādas*; *-ādes*; *-adibus*.

Troas, f. *Troādis*, or *-ādos*; *-i*; *-em* or *-a*; *-as*; *-e*:

Pl. *Troades*; *-um*; *-ibus*, *-si* or *-sin*; *-es* or *-as*; *-es*; *-ibus*.

Tros, m. *Trois*; *Troi*; *Troem* or *-a*; *Tros*; *Troe*, &c.

Phillis, f. *Phillidis*, or *-dos*; *-di*; *-dem*, or *-da*; *-i* or *-is*; *-de*.

Pāris, m. *Parīdis* or *-dos*; *-di*; *-dem*, *Parim* or *-in*; *-i*; *-de*.

Chlāmys, f. *Chlamydis* or *-ydos*; *-ydi*; *-ydem* or *-yda*; *-ys*; *-yde*, &c.

Cāpys, m. *Capyis*, or *-yos*; *-yi*; *-ym* or *-yn*; *-y*; *-ye* or *-y*.

Orpheus, m. *-eos*, *-ēi* or *-ei*, *-ea*, *-eu*, abl. *-eo*, of the second decl.

Hærēsis, fem.

Sing.	Plur.
Nom. hærēsis,	Nom. hærēsēs or hærēsis,
Gen. hærēsis or hærēsiōs or hærēseōs,	Gen. hærēsium or hærēsiōn or hærēseōn,
Dat. hærēsī,	Dat. hærēsibūs,
Acc. hærēsīm, or hærēsīn,	Acc. hærēsēās or hærēsīs,
Voc. hærēsī,	Voc. hærēsēs or -is,
Abl. hærēsī,	Abl. hærēsibūs.

Arābs, an Arabian, *masc.**Sing.**Plur.**Nom.* arābs,*Nom.* arābēs,*Gen.* arābis,*Gen.* arābūm and arabōn,*Dat.* arabi,*Dat.* arābibūs,*Acc.* arabem, and arābā,*Acc.* arābās,*Voc.* arābs,*Voc.* arābēs,*Abl.* arābe.*Abl.* arabībūs.So decline *mētāmorphōsis*, *fem.* and the like.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Nouns in the fourth declension end in *us* and *u*.Nouns in *us* are masculine; nouns in *u* are neuter, and indeclinable in the singular number.The terminations of the cases are; *nom. sing. us*; *gen. ūs*; *dat. uī*; *acc. um*; *voc. like the nom.*; *nom. acc. voc. plur. us* or *ua*; *gen. uum*; *dat. and abl. ibus*; *as*,Fructus, *fruit, masc.*Cornua, *a horn, neut.**Sing.**Plur.**Sing.**Plur.**N.* fructūs,*N.* fructūs,*N.* cōrnū,*N.* cornūā,*G.* fructūs,*G.* fructuum,*G.* cornu,*G.* cornuum,*D.* fructui,*D.* fructībūs,*D.* cornu,*D.* cornībūs,*A.* fructum,*A.* fructūs,*A.* cornu,*A.* cornu,*V.* fructus,*V.* fructūs,*V.* cornu,*V.* cornua,*A.* fructu.*A.* fructibus.*A.* cornu.*A.* cornibus.

In like manner decline,

Anfractus, *a winding.*Gustus, *the taste.*Princīpātus, *pre-eminence.*Cæstus, *a gauntlet.*Hālītus, *breath.*Prōcessus, *a progress.*Cætus, *an assembly.*Ictus, *a stroke.*Quæstus, *gain.*Dēcessus, *a departure.*Luxus, *luxury, riot.*Rictus, *a grinning.*Exītus, *an issue.*Missus, *a throw; a turn or*Ructus, *a belching.*Flātus, *a blast.**heat in races.*Sīnus, *a bosom.*Fœtus, *an offspring.*Nūrus, *a daughter-in-law.*Tōnitru, *thunder.*Gēlu, *ice.*Obtūtus, *a look.*Victus, *food, &c.*

Exc. 1. The following nouns are feminine.

Acus, *a needle.*Fīcus, *a fig.*Portīcus, *a gallery.*Anus, *an old woman.*Mānus, *the hand.*Spēcus, *a den.*Dōmus, *a house.*Pēnus, *a store-house.*Tribus, *a tribe.**Penus* and *specus*, are sometimes *masc.* *Ficus*, *penus*, and *demus*, with several others, are also of the second declension. *Capricornus*, *m.* the sign Capricorn, although from *cornu*, is always of the second decl. and so are the compounds of *manus*; *unīmānus*, having one hand; *centīmānus*, &c. *adj.* *Domus* is but partly of the second declension; thus,Dōmus, *a house, fem.**Sing.**Plur.**Nom.* dōmūs,*Nom.* dōmūs,*Gen.* domūs, or -mī,*Gen.* domōrūm, or -uum,*Dat.* domui, or -mo,*Dat.* domibūs,*Acc.* domum,*Acc.* domōs, or -ūs,*Voc.* domus,*Voc.* domūs,*Abl.* domō.*Abl.* domibūs.*Note.* *Domūs*, in the *genit.* signifies, of a house; and *domi*, at home, or of home; as, *memineris domi.* Terent. iv. 7. 45.

Exc. 2. The following nouns have *ŭbus*, in the dative and ablative plural.

Acus, a needle.

Arcus, a bow.

Artus, a joint.

Gēnu, the knee.

Lăcus, a lake.

Partus, a birth.

Portus, a harbor.

Spēcus, a den.

Trībus, a tribe.

Vēru, a spit.

Portus, *genu*, and *veru*, have likewise *ŭbus*; as, *portŭbus*, or *portŭbus*.

Exc. 3. *Jesus*, the venerable name of our Savior, has *um* in the accusative, and *u* in all the other cases.

Singular.

Nom. *jesŭs*,

Gen. *jesŭ*,

Dat. *jesŭ*,

Acc. *jesŭm*,

Voc. *jesŭ*,

Abl. *jesŭ*.

Nouns of this declension anciently belonged to the third, and were declined like *grus*, *gruis*, a crane; thus *fructus*, *fructuis*, *fructui*, *fructuem*, *fructue*; *fructues*, *fructuum*, *fructuibus*, *fructues*, *fructuibus*. So that all the cases are contracted except the dative singular, and genitive plural. In some writers, we still find the genitive singular in *uis*; as, *Ejus annuis causâ*, for *anŭs*. Terent. Heaut. ii. 3. 46, and in others, the dative in *u*; as, *Resistere impetu*, for *impetui*, Cic. Fam. x. 24. *Esse usu*, *sibi*, for *usu*, lb. xiii. 71. The gen. plur. is sometimes contracted; as, *currŭm* for *curruum*.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fifth declension end in *es*, and are of the feminine gender; as,

Res, a thing, fem.

Sing.

Nom. *rēs*,

Gen. *rēi*,

Dat. *rēi*,

Acc. *rem*,

Voc. *rēs*,

Abl. *rē*.

Plur.

Nom. *rēs*,

Gen. *rērum*,

Dat. *rēbŭs*,

Acc. *res*,

Voc. *res*,

Abl. *rēbŭs*.

Terminations.

es,

ēi,

ēi,

em,

es,

e.

es,

erum,

ebus,

es,

es,

ebus.

In like manner *Făcies*, a face, fem. thus,

Sing.

N. *făcies*,

G. *făciēi*,

D. *făciēi*,

A. *făciem*,

V. *făciēs*,

A. *făciē*.

Plur.

N. *făciēs*,

G. *făciērum*,

D. *făciēbus*,

A. *făciēs*,

V. *făciēs*,

A. *făciēbŭs*.

Obs. In the gen. and dat. sing. of this declension, the *e* next to the final vowel is short when preceded by a consonant, as *rēi*, but long when preceded by a vowel, as *făciēi*, *diēi*.

Also decline

Acies, the edge of a thing, *Inglŭvies*, gluttony.

or an army in order of *Măcies*, leanness.

battle. *Mătēries*, matter.

Căries, rottenness. *Pernīcies*, destruction.

Căsăries, the hair. *Prolŭvies*, a looseness.

Glăcies, ice. *Răbies*, madness.

Sănies, gore.

Scăbies, the scab or itch.

Sěries, an order.

Spēcies, an appearance.

Sŭperfīcies, the surface.

Tempēries, temperateness.

Except *dies*, a day, masc. or fem. in the singular, and always masc. in the plural; and *měrīdies*, the mid-day, or noon, masc.

The poets sometimes make the genitive, and more rarely the dative, in *e*.*

The nouns of this declension are few in number, not exceeding fifty, and seem anciently to have been comprehended under the third declension. Most of them want the genitive, dative, and ablative plural, and many the plural altogether.

* Also the genitive singular very seldom ends in *ii* or *es*.

All nouns of the fifth declension end in *ies*, except three, *fides*, faith; *spes*, hope; *res*, a thing; and all nouns in *ies* are of the fifth, except these four, *abies*, a fir-tree; *aries*, a ram; *pāries*, a wall; and *quies*, rest; which are of the third declension.

COUPLED COMPOUND NOUNS.

These nouns are formed by joining two regular nouns of different declensions; as *senatus-consultum*, a decree of the senate; compounded of the genitive *senātūs* of the fourth, and the nominative *consultum* of the second declension.

1. If the noun be composed of two, each in the nominative case, it is declined as both would be if taken separately; as, *Rēspública*, fem. a commonwealth, is made of *rēs* of the fifth, and *pública* the first declension, each in the nominative; thus,

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> rēspūblicā,	<i>Nom.</i> rēspūblicā,
<i>Gen.</i> rēipublicæ,	<i>Gen.</i> rerūmpublicārum,
<i>Dat.</i> reipublicæ,	<i>Dat.</i> rebūspublicīs,
<i>Acc.</i> rēmpūblicām,	<i>Acc.</i> rēspūblicās,
<i>Voc.</i> rēspūblicā,	<i>Voc.</i> rēspūblicæ,
<i>Abl.</i> rēpūblicā.	<i>Abl.</i> rēbūspublicīs.

Also of this class is *jūsjurandum*, an oath, made of *jūs* the third, and *jurandum* the second declension, gen. *jūrisjurandi*, dat. *jurijurandō*, &c. throughout; except the gen. dat. and abl. plural, which are not found, (because *jus* is rarely found in these cases). But *jūsjurandum* has also *jūsjurandi* in the gen.; as *Nova religio jūsjurandi*, Cæs.

2. But if one of the nouns coupled together be in any oblique case, that noun is not varied; while the nominative noun is; as *jūriscōsultūs*, mas. a counsellor at law, made up of *jūris* in the gen. and *cōsultūs* nom. case; thus,

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> jūris cōsultūs,	<i>Nom.</i> jūris cōsultī,
<i>Gen.</i> juris consultī,	<i>Gen.</i> juris cōsultōrūm,
<i>Dat.</i> juris consultō,	<i>Dat.</i> juris consultis,
<i>Acc.</i> jūris cōsultum,	<i>Acc.</i> jūris cōsultōs,
<i>Voc.</i> juris consultē,	<i>Voc.</i> juris consultī,
<i>Abl.</i> jūris cōsultō.	<i>Abl.</i> juris cōsultīs.

Of this kind is *tribūnūs-plēbis*, tribunc of the people; gen. *tribuni-plēbis*; dat. *tribunō-plēbis*, &c.

Decline *pāterfāmiliās*, a master of a family, like *māterfāmiliās*, under the first declension.

IRREGULAR NOUNS.

Irregular nouns may be reduced to three classes, *Variable*, *Defective*, and *Redundant*.

I. VARIABLE NOUNS.

Nouns are variable either in gender, or declension, or in both.

I. Those which vary in gender are called *heterogeneous*, and may be reduced to the following classes :

1. *Masculine in the singular, and neuter in the plural.*

Avernus, a lake in Campania, *hell*.

Dindymus, a hill in Phrygia.

Ismarus, a hill in Thrace.

Massicus, a hill in Campania, famous for excellent wines.

Mænalus, a hill in Arcadia.

Pangæus, a promontory in Thrace.

Tenarus, a promontory in Laconia.

Tartarus, *hell*.

Täygētus, a hill in Laconia.

Thus, *Averna*, *Avernorum*; *Dindyma*, -orum, &c. These are thought by some to be properly adjectives, having *mons* understood in the singular, and *jūga* or *cacumina*, or the like in the plural.

2. *Masc. in the sing. and in the plur. masc. and neuter.*

Jocus, a jest, pl. *joci* and *joca*; *locus*, a place, pl. *loci* and *loca*. When we speak of passages in a book, or topics in discourse, *loci* only is used.

3. *Feminine in the singular, and neuter in the plural.*

Carbāsus, a sail, pl. *carbāsa*; *Pergāmus*, the citadel of Troy, pl. *Pergama*.

4. *Neuter in the singular, and masculine in the plural.*

Cælum, pl. *cæli*, heaven: *Elÿsium*, pl. *Elysii*, the Elysian fields; *Argos*, pl. *Argi*, a city in Greece.

5. *Neuter in the singular, in the plural masc. or neut.*

Rastrum, a rake, pl. *rastri*, and *rastra*; *frænum*, a bridle, pl. *fræni* and *fræna*.

6. *Neuter in the singular, and feminine in the plural.*

Delicium, a delight, pl. *deliciæ*; *Epulum*, a banquet, pl. *ëpulæ*; *Balneum*, a bath, pl. *balneæ*, and *balnea*.

II. Nouns which vary in declension are called *heteroclites*; as, *vas*, *vāsis*, a vessel, plur. *vāsa*, *vasorum*; *jūgërum*, *jugëri*, an acre, plur. *jūgëra*, *jūgërum*, *jugeribus*, which has likewise sometimes *jugëris*, and *jugëre*, in the singular, from the obsolete *jugus* or *juger*.

II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

Nouns are defective, either in case or in number.

Nouns are defective in cases different ways.

1. Some nouns are altogether indeclinable; as, *pondo*, a pound or pounds; *fas*, right; *nēfas*, wrong; *sināpi*, mustard; *māne*, the morning; as, *Clārum māne*, Pers. *A mane ad vesperam*. Plaut. *Multo mane*, &c.; *cēpe*, an onion; *gāusāpe*, a rough coat, &c.; all of them neuter. We may rank among indeclinable nouns, any word put for a noun; as *velle suum* for *sua voluntas*, his own incli-

nation, *Pers. Istud cras*, for *iste crastinus dies*, that to-morrow, *Mart. O Magnum Græcorum*, the *Omëga*, or the large O of the Greeks. *Infidus est compositum ex in et fidus*; *infidus* is compounded of *in* and *fidus*. To these add foreign or barbarous names; that is, names which are neither Greek nor Latin, as, *Job, Elisabet, Jerusalem, &c.*

2. Some are used only in one case, and therefore called *mōnoptōta*; as, *inquies*, want of rest, in the nominative singular; *dīcis*, and *nauci*, in the genit. sing.: thus,

Dicis gratiā, for form's sake; *res nauci*, a thing of no value; *infīcias*, and *incīta* or *incītas*, in the acc. plur.; thus, *ire infīcias*, to deny; *ad incītas redactus*, reduced to a strait, or non-plus; *ingrātīs*, in the abl. plur. in spite of one; and these ablatives singular, *noctu*, in the night-time; *diu interdiu*, in the day-time; *promptu*, in readiness; *nātu*, by birth; *injussu*, without command or leave; *ergō*, for the sake, as, *ergo illius*, *Virg. Ambāge*, f. with a winding or a tedious story; *compēde*, m. with a fetter; *casse*, m. with a net; *veprem*, m. a brier: Plur. *ambāges*, -*ibus*, *compedes*, -*ibus*; *casses*, -*ium*; *vepres*, -*ium*, &c.

3. Some are used in two cases only, and therefore called *diptōta*; as, *nēcesse*, or -*um*, necessity; *vōlūpe*, or *volup*, pleasure; *instar*, likeness, bigness; *astu*, a town; *hir*, the palm of the hand; in the nom. and acc. singular:

Vesper, m. abl. *vespēre*, or *vespēri*, the evening; *siremps*, the same, all alike, abl. *sirempse*; *spontis*, f. in the genitive, and *sponte* in the ablative, of its own accord: so *impētis*, m. and *impēte*, force; *verbēris*, n. genit. and *verbēre*, abl. a stripe; in the plural entire; *verbēra*, *verberum*, *verberibus*, &c. *repētundarum*, abl. *repetundis*, sc. *pecuniis*, money unjustly taken in the time of one's office, extortion; *suppētīæ*, nom. plur. *suppētias*, in the acc. help; *infēriæ*, *inferias*, sacrifices to the dead.

4. Several nouns are only used in three cases, and therefore called *triptōta*; as, *prēcī*, *precem*, *prece*, f. a prayer, from *prex*, which is not used: in the plural it is entire, *preces*, *precum*, *precibus*, &c. *Fēmīnis*, gen. from the obsolete *femen*, the thigh; in the dat. and abl. sing.; in the nom. acc. and voc. plur. *femina*. *Dīca*,

a process, acc. sing. *dicam*, pl. *dicas*; *tantundem*, nom. and acc. *tantidem*, genit. even as much. Several nouns in the plural want the genitive, dative, and ablative; as, *hiems*, *rus*, *thus*, *mētus*, *mel*, *far*, and most nouns of the fifth declension.

To this class of defective nouns may be added these neuters, *mēlos*, a song; *mēle*, songs: *ēpos*, an heroic poem; *cācoēthes*, an evil custom; *cēte*, whales; *Tempe*, plur. a beautiful vale in Thessaly, &c. used only in the nom. acc. and voc.; also *grātes*, f. thanks.

5. The following nouns want the nominative, and of consequence the vocative, and therefore are called *tetraptōta*; *vīcis*, f. of the place or stead of another; *pēcūdis*, f. of a beast;

Sordis, f. of filth; *dītīōnis*, f. of dominion, power; *ōpis*, f. of help. Of these, *pēcūdis* and *sordis* have the plural entire; *dītīōnis* wants it altogether; *vīcis* is not used in the genitive plural; *ōpis*, in the plural, generally signifies wealth or power, seldom help. To these add *nex*, slaughter; *daps*, a dish of meat; and *frux*, corn; hardly used in the nominative singular, but in the plural mostly entire.

6. Some nouns only want one case, and are called *pentaptōta*: thus, *os*, the mouth; *lux*, light; *fax*, a torch, together with some others, want the genitive plural. *Chaos*, n. a confused mass, wants the genit. sing. and the plural entirely; dat. sing. *chao*. So *sātias*, i. e. *satietas*, a glut or fill of any thing. *Sītus*, a situation, nastiness, of the fourth decl. wants the gen. and perhaps the dat. sing. also the gen. dat. and abl. plur.

Of nouns defective in number there are various sorts.

1. Several nouns want the plural, from the nature of the things which they express. Such are the names of virtues and vices, of arts, herbs, metals, liquors, different kinds of corn, most abstract nouns, &c. as,

Iustitia, justice; *ambītus*, ambition; *astus*, cunning; *mūsica*, music; *āpium*, parsley; *argentum*, silver; *aurum*, gold; *lac*, milk; *trītīcum*, wheat; *hordeum*, barley; *āvēna*, oats; *jūventus*, youth, &c. But of these we find several sometimes used in the plural.

2. The following masculines are hardly ever found in the plural.

Aër, aëris, *the air*.
 Æther, -ëris, *the sky*.
 Fîmus, -i, *dung*.
 Hespërus, -i, *the evening star*.
 Lîmus, -i, *slime*.
 Mëridies, -iëi, *mid-day*.
 Mundus, *a woman's ornaments*.
 Muscus, -i, *moss*.

Nëmo, -înis, *nobody*.
 Pënus, -i, or -ûs, *all manner of provisions*.
 Pontus, -i, *the sea*.
 Pulvis, -ëris, *dust*.
 Sanguis, -inis, *blood*.
 Sôpor, -ôris, *sleep*.
 Viscus, -i, *bird-lime*.

3. The following feminines are scarcely used in the plural :

Argilla, -æ, *potter's earth*.
 Fâma, -æ, *fame*.
 Hûmus, -i, *the ground*.
 Lues, -is, *a plague*.
 Plebs, plëbis, *the common people*.
 Pûbes, -is, *the youth*.
 Quies, -ëtis, *rest*.

Sâlus, -ûtis, *safety*.
 Sîtis, -is, *thirst*.
 Sûpellex, -ctilis, *household furniture*.
 Tâbes, -is, *a consumption*.
 Tellus, -ûris, *the earth*.
 Vespëra, -æ, *the evening*.

4. These neuters are seldom used in the plural :

Album, -i, *a list of names*.
 Dîlûcûlum, -i, *the dawning of day*.
 Ebur, -ôris, *ivory*.
 Gëlu, *ind. frost*.
 Hîlum, -i, *the black speck of a bean, a trifle*.
 Justitium, -i, *a vacation, the time when courts do not sit*.
 Lëthum, *death*.

Lûtum, -i, *clay*.
 Nihil, nihîlum, or nil, *nothing*.
 Pëlagus, -i, *the sea*.
 Pënum, -i, and penus, -ôris, *all kinds of provisions*.
 Sal, sâlis, *salt*.
 Sënium, -ii, *old age*.
 Ver, vëris, *the spring*.
 Vîrus, -i, *poison*.

5. Many nouns want the singular ; as, the names of feasts, books, games, and several cities ; thus,

Apollînâres, -ium, *games in honor of Apollo*.
 Bacchânâlia, -ium, & -iorum, *the feasts of Bacchus*.
 Bûcôlica, -orum, *a book of pastorals*.

Olympia, -orum, *the Olympic games*.
 Syracûsæ, -arum, *Syracuse*.
 Hierosolyma, -orum, *Jerusalem ; or Hierosolyma, -æ, of the first declension*.

6. The following masculines are hardly used in the singular :

Cancelli, *lattices, or windows, made with cross-bars like a net ; a rail or balustrade round any place ; bounds or limits*.
 Câni, *gray hairs*.
 Casses, -ium, *a hunter's net*.
 Cëlëres, -um, *the light-horse*.
 Cödîcilli, *writings*.
 Druides, -um, *the Druids, priests of the ancient Britons and Gauls*.
 Fasces, -ium, *a bundle of rods carried before the chief magistrates of Rome*.
 Fasti, -orum, or fastus, -uum, *calendars, in which were marked festival days, the names of magistrates, &c.*
 Fînes, -ium, *the borders of a country, or a country*.

Fôri, *the gangways of a ship, seats in the circus, or the cells of a bee-hive*.
 Furfûres, -um, *scales in the head*.
 Infëri, *the gods below*.
 Lëmûres, -um, *hobgoblins, or spirits in the dark*.
 Lîbëri, *children*.
 Majôres, -um, *ancestors*.
 Minôres, -um, *successors*.
 Nâtâles, -ium, *parentage*.
 Postëri, *posterity*.
 Prôcëres, -um, *the nobles*.
 Pûgillâres, -ium, *writing-tables*.
 Sentes, -ium, *thorns*.
 Sûpëri, *the gods above*.
 Vepres, -ium, *briers*.

7. The following feminines want the singular number :

Alpes, -ium, <i>the Alps.</i>	Fēriæ, <i>holidays.</i>	Opēræ, <i>workmen.</i>
Angustię, <i>difficulties.</i>	Gādes, -ium, <i>Cadiz.</i>	Pāriētīnæ, <i>ruinous walls.</i>
Apīnæ, <i>geugaws.</i>	Gerræ, <i>trifles.</i>	Partes, -ium, <i>a party.</i>
Argūtīæ, <i>quarks, witticisms.</i>	Hyādes, -ium, <i>the seven stars.</i>	Phālēræ, <i>trappings.</i>
Bigæ, <i>a chariot drawn by two horses.</i>	Indūciæ, <i>a truce.</i>	Plāgæ, <i>nets.</i>
Trīgæ, — <i>by three.</i>	Indūviæ, <i>clothes to put on.</i>	Pleiādes, -ium, <i>the seven stars.</i>
Quadrīgæ, — <i>by four.</i>	Ineptiæ, <i>silly stories.</i>	Prestīgīæ, <i>enchantments.</i>
Braccæ, <i>breeches.</i>	Insīdiæ, <i>shares.</i>	Primītiæ, <i>first-fruits.</i>
Branchiæ, <i>the gills of a fish.</i>	Kālendæ, Nōnæ, Idus, -uum, <i>names which the Romans gave to certain days in each month.</i>	Quisquiliæ, <i>sweepings.</i>
Charites, -um, <i>the three graces.</i>	Lāpicīdinæ, <i>stone quarries.</i>	Relīquiæ, <i>a remainder.</i>
Cūnæ, <i>a cradle.</i>	Lītēræ, <i>an epistle.</i>	Sūlebræ, <i>rugged places.</i>
Dēcīmæ, <i>tithe.</i>	Lactes, -ium, <i>the small guts.</i>	Sālīnæ, <i>salt-pits.</i>
Dīræ, <i>imprecations, the furies.</i>	Manūbiæ, <i>spoils taken in war.</i>	Scālæ, <i>a ladder.</i>
Dīvitiæ, <i>riches.</i>	Mīnæ, <i>threats.</i>	Scātebræ, <i>a spring.</i>
Dryādes, -um, <i>the nymphs of the woods.</i>	Minūtīæ, <i>little niceties.</i>	Scōpæ, <i>a bosom.</i>
Excūbiæ, <i>watches.</i>	Nūgæ, <i>trifles.</i>	Tēnebræ, <i>darkness.</i>
Exsēquiæ, <i>funerals.</i>	Nundīnæ, <i>a market.</i>	Thermæ, <i>hot baths.</i>
Exūviæ, <i>spoils.</i>	Nuptiæ, <i>a marriage.</i>	Thermōpylæ, <i>straits of mount Ceta.</i>
Fācētiæ, <i>pleasant sayings.</i>	Offīciæ, <i>cheats.</i>	Tricæ, <i>toys.</i>
Fācultates, -ium, <i>one's goods and chattels.</i>		Valvæ, <i>folding doors.</i>
		Vergīliæ, <i>the seven stars.</i>
		Vindicīæ, <i>a claim of liberty, a defence.</i>

8. The following neuter nouns want the singular :

Acta, <i>public acts or records.</i>	Mœnia, -ium, <i>the walls of a city.</i>
Æstīva, sc. castra, <i>summer quarters.</i>	Mūnia, -iorum, <i>offices.</i>
Arma, <i>arms.</i>	Orgia, <i>the sacred rites of Bacchus.</i>
Bellāria, -orum, <i>sweetmeats.</i>	Ovilia, -ium, <i>an inclosure where the people went to give their votes.</i>
Bona, <i>goods.</i>	Pālæāria, -ium, <i>the dewlap of a beast.</i>
Brēvia, -ium, <i>shelves.</i>	Pārāpherna, <i>all things the wife brings her husband except her dowry.</i>
Castra, <i>a camp.</i>	Pārentālia, -ium, <i>solemnities at the funeral of parents.</i>
Chāristia, -orum, <i>a peace-feast.</i>	Philtia, <i>love potions.</i>
Cībāria, <i>victuals.</i>	Præcordia, <i>the bowels.</i>
Cōmītia, <i>an assembly of the people, to make laws, elect magistrates, or hold trials.</i>	Prīncīpia, <i>the place in the camp where the general's tent stood.</i>
Crēpundia, <i>children's baubles.</i>	Pŷthia, <i>games in honor of Apollo.</i>
Cūnābŭla, <i>a cradle, an origin.</i>	Rostra, <i>a place in Rome made of the beaks of ships, from which orators used to make orations to the people.</i>
Dictēria, <i>scoffs, witticisms.</i>	Scrŭta, <i>old clothes.</i>
Extā, <i>the entrails.</i>	Sponsālia, -ium, <i>espousals.</i>
Februa, -orum, <i>purifying sacrifices.</i>	Stātīva, sc. castra, <i>a standing camp.</i>
Flabra, <i>blasts of wind.</i>	Suōvētaurilia, -ium, <i>a sacrifice of a swine, a sheep, and an ox.</i>
Frāga, <i>strawberries.</i>	Tālāria, -ium, <i>winged shoes.</i>
Hŷbernā, sc. castra, <i>winter-quarters.</i>	Tesqua, <i>rough places.</i>
Ilia, -ium, <i>the entrails.</i>	Transtra, <i>the seats where the rowers sit in ships.</i>
Incūnābŭla, <i>a cradle.</i>	Utensīlia, -ium, <i>utensils.</i>
Insecta, <i>insects.</i>	
Iusta, <i>funeral rites.</i>	
Lāmenta, <i>lamentations.</i>	
Lautia, <i>provisions for the entertainment of foreign ambassadors.</i>	
Lustra, <i>dens of wild beasts.</i>	
Māgālia, -ium, <i>cottages.</i>	

Several nouns in each of the above lists are found also in the singular, but in a different sense; thus, *castrum*, a castle; *lītera*, a letter of the alphabet, &c.

III. REDUNDANT NOUNS.

Nouns are redundant in different ways: 1. In termination only; as, *arboſ* and *arbor*, a tree. 2. In declension only; as, *laurus*, genit. *lauri* and *laurûs*, a laurel-tree; *sēqueſter*, -*tri*, or -*tris*, a mediator. 3. Only in gender; as, *hic* or *hoc vulgus*, the rabble. 4. Both in termination and declension; as, *māteria*, -*æ*, or *materies*, -*iēi*, matter; *plebs*, -*is*, the common people, or *plebes*, -*is*, -*ēi*, or contracted *plebi*. 5. In termination and gender; as, *tōnitrus* -*ûs*, masc. *tonitru*, neut. thunder. 6. In declension and gender; as, *pēnus*, -*i*, and -*ûs*, m. or f. or *penus*, -*ōris*, neut. all kinds of provisions. 7. In termination, gender, and declension; as, *æther*, -*ēris*, masc. and *æthra*, -*æ*, fem. the sky. 8. Several nouns in the same declension are differently varied; as, *tigris*, -*is*, or -*īdis*, a tiger; to which may be added, nouns which have the same signification in different numbers; as, *Fidēna*, -*æ*, or *Fidenæ*, -*arum*, the name of a city.

The most numerous class of redundant nouns consists of those which express the same meaning by different terminations; as, *menda*, -*æ*; and *mendum*, -*i*, a fault; *cassis*, -*īdis*; and *cassida*, -*dæ*, a helmet. So,

Acīnus, & -*um*, a grape-stone.
Alvear, & -*e*, & -*ium*, a bee-hive.
Amārācus, & -*um*, sweet marjorum.
Anile, & -*ium*, an oval shield.
Angīportus, -*ûs*, & -*i*, & -*um*, a narrow lane.
Aphractus, & -*um*, an open ship.
Aplustre, & -*um*, the flag, colors.
Bācūlus, & -*um*, a staff.
Balteus, & -*um*, a belt.
Bātillus, & -*um*, a fire-shovel.
Cāpūlus, & -*um*, a hilt.
Cāpus, & -*o*, a capon.
Cēpus, & -*e*, indec. an onion.
Clypeus, & -*um*, a shield.
Collūvies, & -*io*, filth, dirt.
Compāges, & -*go*, a joining.
Conger, & -*grus*, a large eel.
Crōcus, & -*um*, saffron.
Cūbītus, & -*um*, a cubit.
Dilūvium, & -*es*, a deluge.
Elēphantus & *Elephas*, -*antis*, an elephant.
Elēgus, & -*ēia*, an elegy.
Esseda, & -*um*, a chariot.
Eventus, & -*um*, an event.
Fulgetra, & -*um*, lightning.
Gālērus, & -*um*, a hat.
Gibbus, & -*a*; & -*er*, -*ēris*, or -*ēri*, a bunch, or swelling.
Glūtīnum, & -*en*, glue.

Hēbdōmas, & -*āda*, a week.
Intrita, & -*um*, fine mortar, minced meat.
Librārium, & -*a*, a book-case.
Mācēria, & -*es*, -*iēi*, a wall.
Milliāre, & -*ium*, a mile.
Mōnium, & -*us*, -*ûs*, an admonition.
Muria, & -*es*, -*iēi*, brine or pickle.
Nāsus, & -*um*, the nose.
Obsīdeo, & -*um*, a siege.
Oestrus, & -*um*, a gad-bee.
Ostrea, & -*um*, an oyster.
Peplus, & -*um*, a veil, a robe.
Pistrīna, & -*um*, a bake-house.
Prætextus, -*us*, & -*um*, a pretext.
Rāpa, & -*um*, a turnip.
Rūma, & -*men*, the cud.
Ruscus, & -*um*, a brush.
Seps & *sēpes*, f. a hedge.
Segmen, & -*mentum*, a piece or parting.
Sībīlus, & -*um*, a hissing.
Sīnus, & -*um*, a milk-pail.
Spurcītia, & -*es*, nastiness.
Strāmen, & -*tum*, straw.
Suffīmen, & -*tum*, a perfume.
Tignus, & -*um*, a plank.
Tōral, & -*āle*, a bed-covering.
Torcular, & -*āre*, a wine-press.
Viscus, & -*um*, birdlime.
Vēternus, & -*um*, a lethargy.

Note. The nouns which are called variable and defective, seem originally to have been redundant; *vāsa-orum*, properly comes from *vasum*, and not from *vas*; but custom, which gives laws to all languages, has dropped the singular and retained the plural; and so of others.

Division of Nouns according to their signification and derivation.

1. A substantive which signifies many in the singular number, is called a *Collective* noun; as, *pōpūlus*, a people; *exercītus*, an army.

2. A substantive derived from another substantive proper, signifying one's extraction, is called a *Patronymic* noun; as, *Priāmīdes*, the son of Priamus; *Æētias*, the daughter of Æetes; *Nērīne*, the daughter of Nereus.

Patronymics are generally derived from the name of the father: but the poets, by whom they are chiefly used, derive them also from the grandfather, or from some other remarkable person of the family; sometimes likewise from the founder of a nation or people; as, *Æācīdes*, the son, grandson, great-grandson, or one of the posterity of Æācus; *Rōmūlīdæ*, the Romans, from their first king, Romulus.

Patronymic names of men end in *des*; of women in *is*, *as*, or *ne*. Those in *des* and *ne* are of the first declension, and those in *is* and *as*, of the third; as, *Priamīdes*, -*dæ*, &c. pl. *dæ*, -*darum*, &c.; *Nērīne*, -*es*; *Tyndāris*, -*īdis* or -*īdos*; *Æētias*, -*ādis*, &c.*

3. A noun derived from a substantive proper, signifying one's country, is called a *Patrial* or *Gentile* noun; as, *Tros*, *Trois*, a man born at Troy; *Troas*, -*ādis*, a woman born at Troy:

Sicūlus, -*i*, a Sicilian man; *Sicēlis*, -*īdis*, a Sicilian woman; so, *Mācēdo*, -*ōnis*; *Arpinas*, -*ātis*, a man born in Macedonia, Arpinum; from *Troja*, *Sicilia*, *Macedonia*, *Arpinum*. But patrials for the most part are to be considered as adjectives, having a substantive understood; as, *Romānus*, *Athēniensis*, &c.

4. A substantive derived from an adjective, expressing simply the quality of the adjective, without regard to the thing in which the quality exists, is called an *Abstract*; as, *jūstītia*, justice; *bōnītas*, goodness; *dulcēdo*, sweetness; from *justus*, just; *bonus*, good; *dulcis*, sweet.

The adjectives from which these abstracts come, are called *Concretes*; because, besides the quality, they also suppose something to which it belongs. Abstracts commonly end

* Decline all patronymics in *des*, like *Anchīsēs*; and those in *ne*, decline like *Pēnēlope*.

in *a*, *as*, or *do*, and are very numerous, being derived from most adjectives in the Latin tongue.

5. A substantive derived from another substantive, signifying a diminution or lessening of its signification, is called a *Diminutive*; as, *libellus*, a little book; *chartŭla*, a little paper; *opusculum*, a little work; *corcŭlum*, a little heart;

rētĭculum a small net; *scăbellum*, a small form; *lăpillus*, a little stone; *cultellus*, a little knife; *păgella*, a little page; from *lĭber*, *charta*, *opus*, *cor*, *rĕte*, *scamnum*, *lăpis*, *culter*, *păgina*. Several diminutives are sometimes formed from the same primitive; as, from *puer*, *puerŭlus*, *puellus*, *puellŭlus*; from *cista*, *cistŭla*, *cistella*, *cistellŭla*; from *hōmo*, *hōmuncio*, *hōmunculus*. Diminutives for the most part end in *lus*, *la*, *lum*, and are generally of the same gender with their primitives. When the signification of the primitive is increased, it is called an *Amplificative*, and ends in *o*; as, *Căpĭto*, *-onis*, having a large head: so, *năso*, *lăbeo*, *bucco*, having a large nose, lips, cheeks.

6. A substantive derived from a verb is called a *Verbal noun*; as, *ămor*, love; *doctrĭna*, learning; from *ămo*, and *dōceo*.

Verbal nouns are very numerous, and commonly end in *io*, *or*, *us*, and *ura*; as, *lectio*, a lesson; *ămător*, a lover; *luctus*, grief; *creătŭra*, a creature.

ADJECTIVE.

An adjective is a word *added* to a substantive, to express its quality; as, *hard*, *soft*.

We know things by their qualities only. Every quality must belong to some subject. An adjective, therefore, always implies a substantive expressed or understood, and cannot make full sense without it.

An adjective may be thus distinguished from a substantive: If the word *thing* be joined to an adjective, it will make sense; but if it be joined to a substantive it will make nonsense; thus we can say, "a good thing;" but we cannot say "a book thing."

Adjectives in English admit of no variation, except that of the degrees of comparison.

LATIN ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives in Latin are varied by gender, number, and case, to agree with substantives in all these accidents.

An adjective properly hath neither genders, numbers, nor cases; but certain terminations answering to the gender, number, and case, of the substantive with which it is joined.

Adjectives are varied like three substantives of the same termination and declension.

All adjectives are either of the first and second declension, or of the third only.

Adjectives of three terminations are of the first and second declension; but adjectives of one or two terminations are of the third.

Exc. The following adjectives, though they have three terminations, are of the third declension.

Acer, <i>sharp.</i>	Cēler, <i>swift.</i>	Pēdester, <i>on foot.</i>
Alācer, <i>cheerful.</i>	Equester, <i>belonging to a horse.</i>	Sālūber, <i>wholesome.</i>
Campester, <i>belonging to a plain.</i>	Pāluster, <i>marshy.</i>	Sylvester, <i>woody.</i>
Cēlēber, <i>famous.</i>		Vōlūcer, <i>swift.</i>

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

Adjectives of the first and second declension have their masculine in *us* or *er*, their feminine always in *a*, and their neuter always in *um*; as, *bōnus*, for the masc. *bona*, for the fem. *bonum*, for the neut., good; thus,

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. bōn-ūs,	-ā,	-ūm,	N. bōn-ī,	-æ,	-ā,
G. bon-i,	-æ,	-i,	G. bon-ōrum,	-ārum,	-ōrum,
D. bon-ō,	-æ,	-ō,	D. bon-īs,	-īs,	-īs,
A. bon-ūm,	-ām,	-ūm,	A. bon-ōs,	-ās,	-ā,
V. bon-ē,	-ā,	-ūm,	V. bon-i,	-æ,	-ā,
A. bonō,	-ā,	-ō.	A. bon-īs,	-īs,	-īs.

In like manner decline,

Acīdus, <i>sour, tart.</i>	Hirsūtus, <i>hirtus, rough.</i>	Pætus, <i>pink-eyed.</i>
Ægrōtus, <i>sick.</i>	Hornus, <i>of this year.</i>	Parcus, <i>sparing.</i>
Balbus, <i>stammering.</i>	Idōneus, <i>fit.</i>	Quadrīmus, <i>four years old</i>
Bardus, <i>dull, slow.</i>	Jejūnus, <i>fasting.</i>	Quōtīdiānus, <i>daily.</i>
Cādūcus, <i>fading.</i>	Inclŷtus, <i>renowned.</i>	Rancīdus, <i>rank, stale.</i>
Cassus, <i>void.</i>	Jūcundus, <i>pleasant.</i>	Reus, <i>impeached.</i>
Dædālus, <i>poet. curiously made.</i>	Lascīvus, <i>wanton.</i>	Sāgus, <i>knowing.</i>
Dīsertus, <i>eloquent.</i>	Lēpidus, <i>pretty, witty.</i>	Scambus, <i>bow-legged.</i>
Ebrius, <i>drunk.</i>	Mācilentus, <i>lean.</i>	Tācitus, <i>silent.</i>
Efficētus, <i>past having young.</i>	Mērācus, <i>without mixture.</i>	Tempestīvus, <i>seasonable.</i>
Fācētus, <i>witty.</i>	Nīmīus, <i>too much.</i>	Udus, <i>wet.</i>
Fātuus, <i>foolish.</i>	Nuntius, <i>bringing news.</i>	Uncus, <i>crooked.</i>
Garrūlus, <i>prattling.</i>	Obscēnus, <i>obscene, ominous.</i>	Vāgus, <i>wandering.</i>
Gībbus, <i>convex.</i>	Obtūsus, <i>blunt.</i>	Valgus, <i>bow-legged, &c.</i>

Tēner, tenēra, tenērum, *tender.*

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. tēn-ēr,	-ēra,	-ērūm,	N. ten-ērī,	-ēræ,	-ērā,
G. ten-ērī,	-ēræ,	-ērī,	G. ten-erōrum,	-erārum,	-erōrum,
D. ten-erō,	-eræ,	-erō,	D. ten-erīs,	-erīs,	-erīs,
A. ten-erum,	-eram,	-erum,	A. ten-erōs,	-erās,	-erā,
V. ten-er,	-era,	-erum,	V. ten-erī,	-eræ,	-era,
A. ten-erō,	-erā,	-erō.	A. tēn-ērīs,	-ērīs,	-ērīs.

In like manner decline,

Asper, rough.	Gibber, crook-backed.	Miser, wretched.
Cēter, (hardly used) the rest.	Lācer, torn.	Prosper, prosperous.
	Liber, free.	

Also the compounds of *gero* and *fero*; as, *laniger*, bearing wool; *opifer*, bringing help, &c. Likewise *satur*, *satūra*, *satūrum*, full. But most adjectives in *er* drop the *e*; as, *āter*, *atra*, *atrum*, black; gen. *atri*, *atræ*, *atri*; dat. *atro*, *atræ*, *atro*, &c. So,

Æger, sick.	Mācer, lean.	Sācer, sacred.
Crēber, frequent.	Nīger, black.	Scāber, rough.
Glāber, smooth.	Pīger, slow.	Tēter, ugly.
Intēger, entire.	Pulcher, fair.	Vāser, crafty.
Lūdicer, ludicrous.	Rūber, red.	

Dexter, right, has -tra, -trum, or -tēra, -tērum.

All adjectives in *us* and *er* decline like *bonus* and *tener*.

OBS. 1. The following adjectives have their genitive singular in *ius*, and the dative in *i*, through all their genders: in the other cases like *bonus* and *tener*.

M. F. N.

Unus, -a, -um; gen. unius, dat. uni, one.	Alter, altērīus, one of two, the other.
Alius, -īus, one of many, another.	Neuter, -trius, neither.
Nullus, nullius, none.	Uter, utrius, whether of the two.
Sōlus, -ius, alone.	Uterque, utriusque, both.
Tōtus, -ius, whole.	Uterlibet, -triuslibet, } which of the two
Ullus, -ius, any.	Utervus, -triusvis, } you please.

Alterūter, the one or the other, alterutrius, alterutri, and sometimes alterīus utrius, alteri utri, &c.

These adjectives, except *totus*, are called *Partitives*; and seem to resemble, in their signification as well as declension, what are called pronominal adjectives. In ancient writers we find them declined like *bonus*.

OBS. 2. To decline an adjective properly, it should always be joined with a substantive in the different genders; as, *bonus liber*, a good book; *bona penna*, a good pen; *bonum sedile*, a good seat. But as the adjective in Latin is often found without its substantive joined with it, we therefore, in declining *bonus*, commonly say *bonus*, a good man, understanding *vir* or *homo*; *bona*, a good woman, understanding *femina*; and *bonum*, a good thing, understanding *negotium*.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

1. Adjectives of one termination; as, *fēlix*, for the masc. *felix*, for the fem. *felix* for the neut. happy; thus,

Sing.

Plur.

M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. fēlix,	-ix,	-ix,	N. fēl-īcēs,	-īcēs,	-īciā,
G. fēl-īcis,	-īcis,	-īcis,	G. fēl-īciūm,	-iciūm,	-iciūm,
D. fēl-īcī,	-īcī,	-īcī,	D. fēl-īcībūs,	-icibus,	-icibus,
A. fēl-īcēm,	-īcem,	-īx,	A. fēl-īces,	-ices,	-īcia,
V. fēl-ix,	-ix,	-ix,	V. fēl-īces,	-ices,	-īcia,
A. fēl-īcē, or -īcī, &c.			A. fēl-īcībūs,	-icibus,	-icibus.

In like manner decline,

Atrox, -ōcis, cruel.	Dēmens, mad.	Pernix, -īcis, swift.
Audax, -ācis, & -ens, -tis, bold.	Elēgans, handsome.	Rēcens, fresh.
Bīlix, -īcis, woven with a double tread.	Fallax, deceitful.	Sālux, -ācis, lustful.
Cīcur, -ūris, tame.	Iners, -tis, sluggish.	Uber, -ēris, fertile.
	Mendax, lying.	Vōrax, devouring, &c.

2. Adjectives of two terminations ; as, *mītis*, for the masc. and fem. *mīte*, for the neut. meek ; so, *mitior*, *mitior*, *mitius*, meeker ; thus,

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>N. mītis,</i>	<i>mītis,</i>	<i>mīte,</i>	<i>N. mītēs,</i>	<i>mītēs,</i>	<i>mītīā,</i>
<i>G. mitis,</i>	<i>mitis,</i>	<i>mitis,</i>	<i>G. mitium,</i>	<i>mitium,</i>	<i>mitium,</i>
<i>D. miti,</i>	<i>miti,</i>	<i>miti,</i>	<i>D. mitibus,</i>	<i>mitibus,</i>	<i>mitibus,</i>
<i>A. mitem,</i>	<i>mitem,</i>	<i>mīte,</i>	<i>A. mites,</i>	<i>mites,</i>	<i>mitia,</i>
<i>V. mitis,</i>	<i>mitis,</i>	<i>mīte,</i>	<i>V. mites,</i>	<i>mites,</i>	<i>mitia,</i>
<i>A. mītī,</i>	<i>mītī,</i>	<i>mītī.</i>	<i>A. mītībūs,</i>	<i>mītībūs,</i>	<i>mītībūs.</i>

In like manner decline,

<i>Agilis, active.</i>	<i>Immānis, huge, cruel.</i>	<i>Quālis, of what kind.</i>
<i>Biennis, of two years.</i>	<i>Jūgis, perpetual.</i>	<i>Rūdis, raw.</i>
<i>Cūmis, mild, affable.</i>	<i>Lævis, smooth.</i>	<i>Sagax, shrewd.</i>
<i>Dōcīlis, teachable.</i>	<i>Mēdiocris, middling.</i>	<i>Tālis, such.</i>
<i>Exsanguis, bloodless.</i>	<i>Omnis, all.</i>	<i>Utilis, useful.</i>
<i>Grandis, great.</i>	<i>Putris, rotten.</i>	<i>Vilis, worthless, &c.</i>
<i>Hilāris, cheerful.</i>		

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>N. mītī-ōr,</i>	<i>-ōr,</i>	<i>-ūs,</i>	<i>N. mītī-ōrēs,</i>	<i>-ōrēs,</i>	<i>-ōrā,</i>
<i>G. miti-ōrīs,</i>	<i>-ōrīs,</i>	<i>-ōrīs,</i>	<i>G. miti-ōrum,</i>	<i>-ōrum,</i>	<i>-ōrum,</i>
<i>D. miti-ori,</i>	<i>-ori,</i>	<i>-ori,</i>	<i>D. miti-ōrībūs,</i>	<i>-ōrībūs,</i>	<i>-ōrībūs,</i>
<i>A. miti-ōrēm,</i>	<i>-ōrem,</i>	<i>-ūs,</i>	<i>A. miti-ores,</i>	<i>-ores,</i>	<i>-ora.</i>
<i>V. miti-or,</i>	<i>-ōr,</i>	<i>-us,</i>	<i>V. miti-ores,</i>	<i>-ores,</i>	<i>-ora,</i>
<i>A. miti-ōrē, or -ōrī, &c.</i>			<i>A. miti-oribus,</i>	<i>-oribus,</i>	<i>-oribus.</i>

In this manner all comparatives are declined.

3. Adjectives of three terminations ; as, *ācer* or *acris*, for the masc. ; *acris* for the fem. *acre*, for the neut. sharp ; thus,

<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>N. ā-cer or ācrīs,</i>	<i>-ācrīs,</i>	<i>-ācrē,</i>	<i>N. ā-crēs</i>	<i>-crēs,</i>	<i>-crīā,</i>
<i>G. a-cris,</i>	<i>-cris,</i>	<i>-cris,</i>	<i>G. a-crīūm,</i>	<i>-crium,</i>	<i>-crium,</i>
<i>D. a-crī,</i>	<i>-crī,</i>	<i>-crī,</i>	<i>D. a-crībūs,</i>	<i>-cribūs,</i>	<i>-cribūs,</i>
<i>A. a-crēm,</i>	<i>-crēm,</i>	<i>-crē,</i>	<i>A. a-cres,</i>	<i>-cres,</i>	<i>-cria,</i>
<i>V. a-cer or acris,</i>	<i>-cris,</i>	<i>-cre,</i>	<i>V. a-cres,</i>	<i>-cres,</i>	<i>-cria,</i>
<i>A. a-crī,</i>	<i>-crī,</i>	<i>-crī.</i>	<i>A. a-cribus,</i>	<i>-cribus,</i>	<i>-cribus.</i>

In like manner *ālācer* or *alacris*, *cēler* or *celēris*, *cēlēber* or *celebris*, *sālūber* or *salūbris*, *volūcer* or *volucris*, &c. ; but *celer* retains *e* before *r*.

RULES.

1. Adjectives of the third declension have *e* or *i* in the ablative singular ; but if the neuter be in *e*, the ablative has *i* only.

2. The genitive plural ends in *ium*, and the neuter of the

nominative, accusative, and vocative, in *ia*; except comparatives, which have *um* and *a*.

EXCEPTIONS.

Exc. 1. *Dives*, *hospes*, *sospes*, *sūperstes*, *jūvenis*, *sēnex*, and *pauper*, have *e* only in the ablative singular, and consequently *um* in the genitive plural.

Exc. 2. The following have also *e*, in the abl. sing., and *um*, not *ium*, in the genit. plur. *Compos*, -ōtis, master of, that hath obtained his desire; *impos*, -otis, unable; *inops*, -ōpis, poor; *supplex*, -īcis, suppliant, humble; *uber*, -ēris, fertile; *consors*, -tis, sharing, a partner; *dēgēner*, -ēris, degenerate, or degenerating; *vīgīl*, watchful; *pūber*, -ēris, of age, marriageable; and *celer*. Also compounds in *ceps*, *sex*, *pes*, and *corpor*; as, *particeps*, partaking of; *artifex*, -īcis, cunning, an artist; *bipes*, -pēdis, two-footed; *bicorpor*, -ōris, two-bodied, &c. All these have seldom the neut. sing. and almost never the neut. plur. in the nominative and accusative. To which add *mēmōr*, mindful, which has *mēmōri* and *mēmōrum*: also, *dēses*, *rēses*, *hēbes*, *perpes*, *præpes*, *tēres*, *concōlor*, *versicōlor*, which likewise for the most part want the genitive plural.

Exc. 3. *Par*, equal, has only *pāri*; but its compounds have either *e* or *i*; as, *compāre*, or -ri. *Vetus*, old, has *vetēra*, and *veterum*; *plus*, more, which is only used in the neut. sing. has *plure*; and in the plural, *plūres*, *plura*, or *pluria*, *plurium*, and is thus declined:

Sing.			Plur.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. —	—	plūs,	N. plūrēs,	plūrēs,	plūrā & plūriā,
G. —	—	plūrēs,	G. plūrium,	-ūm,	-ium,
D. —	—	—	D. plūribūs,	-ribūs,	-ribūs,
A. —	—	plūs,	A. plūrēs,	-urēs,	plūrā & plūriā,
V. —	—	—	V. —	—	—
A. —	—	plūrē & sometimes plūri.	A. plūribūs,	-ribūs,	-ribūs.

So its compounds, *cōmplūrēs*, *cōmplūrā* & -ūriā, which has no singular. *Plūs* is often a real substantive neuter.

Exc. 4. *Expes*, hopeless; and *pōtis*, -e, are only used in the nominative. *Potis* has also sometimes *potis* in the neuter.

REMARKS.

1. Comparatives, and adjectives in *ns*, have *e* more frequently than *i*; and participles in the ablative called absolute have generally *e*; as, *Tiberio regnante*, not *regnanti*, in the reign of Tiberius.

2. Adjectives joined with substantives neuter for the most part have *i*; as, *victrici ferro*, not *victrice*.

3. Different words are sometimes used to express the different genders; as, *victor*, victorious, for the masc. *victrix*, for the fem. *Victrix*, in the plur. has likewise the neuter gender; thus *victrices*, *victricia*: so *ultor*, and *ultrix*, revengeful. *Victrix* is also neuter in the singular.

4. Several adjectives compounded of *clivus*, *frenum*, *bacillum*, *arma*, *jūgum*, *limus*, *somnus*, and *animus*, end in *is* or *us*; and therefore are either of the first and second declension, or of the third; as, *declivis*, -is, -e; and *declivus*, -a, -um, steep; *imbēcillis*, and *imbecillus*, weak; *semisomnis*, and *semisomnus*, half asleep; *exanimis*, and *exanimus*, lifeless. But several of them do not admit of this variation; thus we say, *magnānimus*, *flexanimus*, *effrēnus*, *levisomnus*; not *magnanimis*, &c. On the contrary, we say, *pusillanimis*, *injūgis*, *illimis*, *insomnis*, *exsomnis*; not *pusillanimus*, &c. So *semianimis*, *inermis*, *sublimis*, *acclivis*, *declivis*, *proclivis*; rarely *semianimus*, &c.

5. Adjectives derived from nouns are called *Denominatives*; as, *cordātus*, *mōrātus*, *coelestis*, *ādāmāntinus*, *corpōrēus*, *agrestis*, *æstivus*, &c. from *cor*, *mos*, *cælum*, *adamas*, &c. Those which diminish the signification of their primitives are called *Diminutives*; as, *misellus*, *parvulus*, *dūriuscūlus*, &c. Those which signify a great deal of a thing are called *Amplificatives*, and end in *osus*, or *entus*; as, *vinōsus*, *vinolentus*, given to much wine; *opērōsus*, laborious; *plum-*

bōsus, full of lead; *nōdōsus*, knotty, full of knots; *corpūlentus*, corpulent, &c. Some end in *tus*; as, *aurītus*, having long or large ears; *nasūtus*, having a large nose; *līteratus*, learned, &c.

6. An adjective derived from a substantive or from another adjective, signifying possession or property, is called a *Possessive Adjective*; as, *Scotīcus*, *pāternus*, *herīlis*, *aliēnus*, of or belonging to Scotland, a father, a master, another: from *Scotia*, *pater*, *herus*, and *alius*.

7. Adjectives derived from verbs are called *Verbals*; as, *amābilis*, amiable; *capax*, capable; *docilis*, teachable: from *amo*, *capio*, *doceo*.

8. When participles become adjectives, they are called *Participials*; as, *sapiens*, wise; *acutus*, sharp; *disertus*, eloquent. Of these many also become substantives; as, *adolescens*, *animans*, *rudens*, *serpens*, *advocatus*, *sponsus*, *natus*, *legatus*; *sponsa*, *nata*, *serta*, sc. *corona*, a garland; *prætexta*, sc. *vestis*; *debitum*, *decretum*, *præceptum*, *satum*, *tectum*, *votum*, &c.

9. Adjectives derived from adverbs, are called *Adverbials*; as, *hodiernus*, from *hodie*; *crastīnus*, from *cras*; *binus* from *bis*, &c. There are also adjectives derived from prepositions; as, *contrarius*, from *contra*; *antīcus*, from *ante*; *postīcus*, from *post*.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives which signify number, are divided into four classes, *Cardinal*, *Ordinal*, *Distributive*, and *Multiplicative*.

1. The *Cardinal* or *Principal* numbers are :

Unus, ¹	one 1	Trīginta,	thirty 30
Duo,	two 2	Quadrāginta,	forty 40
Tres,	three 3	Quinquāginta,	fifty 50
Quātuor,	four 4	Sexāginta,	sixty 60
Quīque,	five 5	Septuāginta,	seventy 70
Sex,	six 6	Octōginta,	eighty 80
Septem,	seven 7	Nōnaginta,	ninety 90
Octo,	eight 8	Centum,	a hundred 100
Nōvem,	nine 9	Dūcenti,	two hundred 200
Dēcem,	ten 10	Trēcenti,	three hundred 300
Undēcim,	eleven 11	Quadrīngenti,	four hundred 400
Duōdēcim,	twelve 12	Quīngenti,	five hundred 500
Trēdēcim,	thirteen 13	Sexcenti,	six hundred 600
Quatuordecim,	fourteen 14	Septīngenti,	seven hundred 700
Quīndecim,	fifteen 15	Octīngenti,	eight hundred 800
Sexdecim,	sixteen 16	Nongenti,	nine hundred 900
Septendecim,	seventeen 17	Mille,	a thousand 1000
Octōdēcim,*	eighteen 18	Duo millia, or	} two thousand 2000
Nōvemdecim,	nineteen 19	bis mille,	
Vīginti,	twenty 20	Decem millia, or	} ten thousand 10,000
Vīginti unus, or	} twenty-one 21	dēcies mille,	
Unus & vīginti,		Vīginti millia, or	} twenty thousand
Vīginti duo, or	} twenty-two 22	Vīcies mille,	
Duo & vīginti,			20,000

The cardinal numbers, except *unus* and *mille*, want the singular.

Unus is not used in the plural, unless when joined with a substantive which wants the singular; as, *in unīs ædibus*, in one house, *Terent. Eun. ii. 3. 75. Una nuptiæ*. *Id. And iv. 1. 51. In una mænia convenère*, *Sallust. Cat. 6.* or when several particulars are considered as one whole; as, *una vestimenta*, one suit of clothes, *Cic. Flacc. 29.*

* Instead of *octodēcim*, we frequently find the subtractive term *duodevīginti*, meaning two from twenty, equal 18. And so *duodetrīginta*, 28; *undetrīginta*, 29; *undevīginti*, 19; *undequadrīginta* stands for 39, and so on.

Duo and *tres* are thus declined:

Sing.

Plur.

M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>duo</i> ,	<i>duæ</i> ,	<i>duo</i> ,	N. <i>trēs</i> ,	<i>trēs</i> ,	<i>triā</i> ,
G. <i>duōrum</i> ,	<i>duārum</i> ,	<i>duōrum</i> ,	G. <i>triūm</i> ,	<i>triūm</i> ,	<i>triūm</i> ,
D. <i>duōbus</i> ,	<i>duābus</i> ,	<i>duōbus</i> ,	D. <i>tribūs</i> ,	<i>tribūs</i> ,	<i>tribūs</i> ,
A. <i>duōs</i> or <i>duo</i> ,	<i>duās</i> ,	<i>duō</i> ,	A. <i>trēs</i> ,	<i>trēs</i> ,	<i>triā</i> ,
V. <i>duo</i>	<i>duæ</i> ,	<i>duo</i> ,	V. <i>tres</i> ,	<i>tres</i> ,	<i>tria</i> ,
A. <i>duōbūs</i> ,	<i>duābūs</i> ,	<i>duōbūs</i> .	A. <i>tribūs</i> ,	<i>tribus</i> ,	<i>tribus</i> ,

In the same manner with *duo*, decline *ambo*, both.

All the cardinal numbers from *quatuor* to *centum*, including them both, are indeclinable; and from *centum* to *mille*, are declined like the plural of *bonus*; thus, *ducenti*, -*tæ*, -*ta*; *ducentorum*, -*tarum*, -*torum*, &c.

Mille is used either as a substantive or adjective; when taken substantively it is indeclinable in the singular number; and in the plural has *millia*, *millium*, *millibus*, &c.*

Mille, an adjective, is commonly indeclinable, and to express more than one thousand, has the numeral adverbs joined with it; thus, *mille homines*, a thousand men; *mille hominum*, of a thousand men, &c. *Bis mille homines*, two thousand men; *ter mille homines*, &c. But with *mille*, a substantive, we say, *mille hominum*, a thousand men; *duo millia hominum*, *tria millia*, *quatuor millia*, *centum*, or *centena millia hominum*; *decies centena millia*, a million; *vicies centena millia*, two millions, &c.

The Romans also expressed numbers by seven capitals, called Numeral Letters: as I. one; V. five; X. ten; L. fifty; C. a hundred; D. five hundred; M. a thousand; which combined are read by the following rules:

1. A letter of less value put before one of greater, takes its own value from the greater; thus, IV. is four; IX. nine, &c.: but if it follow, the less adds its value to the greater; thus, VI. equals six; XI. eleven; LX. sixty, &c.

2. A numeral letter repeated, repeats its value; thus, II. signify two; XX. twenty, &c. V. and L. are never repeated: thus,

I. one.	XV. fifteen.	LXXX. eighty.
II. two.	XVI. sixteen.	XC. ninety.
III. three.	XVII. seventeen.	C. one hundred.
IV. four.	XVIII. eighteen.	CC. two hundred.
V. five.	XIX. nineteen.	CCC. three hundred.
VI. six.	XX. twenty.	CCCC. four hundred.
VII. seven.	XXI. twenty-one.	D. five hundred.
VIII. eight.	XXII. twenty-two.	DC. six hundred.
IX. nine.	XXX. thirty.	DCC. seven hundred.
X. ten.	XL. forty.	DCCC. eight hundred.
XI. eleven.	L. fifty.	DCCCC. nine hundred.
XII. twelve.	LX. sixty.	M.† one thousand.
XIII. thirteen.	LXX. seventy.	MM. two thousand.
XIV. fourteen.		

M. makes one thousand, because it begins *mille*, 1000. D., the first letter of *demidium* (a half), is five hundred, half 1000. C. marks one hundred, as it begins *centum*, 100. This C was anciently written LL, so its half, L., stands for fifty. V. marks five, because the Roman measure of 5 ounces was of that shape. X. stands for ten, as it is formed of two Vs, one inverted under the other, thus, *X*. And I. stands for one, as it is a unit shown by lifting one finger, or as it is made by one stroke of the pen.

2. The Ordinal numbers are, *primus*, first; *secundus*, second, &c. declined like *bonus*.

* *Mille* has sometimes *milli* in the abl. singular.

† See Appendix.

3. The distributive are, *singŭli*, one by one; *bini*, two by two, &c. declined like the plural of *bonus*.

The following Table contains a list of the Ordinal and Distributive Numbers, together with the Numeral Adverbs, which are often joined with the Numeral Adjectives.

Ordinal.	Distributive.	Numeral Adverbs.
1 <i>Prĭmus</i> , a, um, <i>first</i> .	<i>Singŭli</i> , æ, a, <i>one by one</i> .	<i>Semel</i> , <i>once</i> .
2 <i>secundus</i> , <i>second</i> .	<i>bini</i> , <i>two by two</i> .	<i>bis</i> , <i>twice</i> .
3 <i>tertius</i> , <i>third</i> .	<i>terni</i> , <i>three by three</i> .	<i>ter</i> , <i>thrice</i> .
4 <i>quartus</i> , <i>fourth</i> .	<i>quaterni</i> , <i>four by four</i> .	<i>quāter</i> , <i>four times</i> .
5 <i>quintus</i> , <i>fifth</i> .	<i>quīni</i> , <i>five by five</i> .	<i>quinquies</i> , <i>five times</i> .
6 <i>sextus</i> , <i>sixth</i> .	<i>sēni</i> , <i>six by six</i> .	<i>sexies</i> , <i>six times</i> .
7 <i>septĭmus</i> , <i>seventh</i> .	<i>septēni</i> , <i>seven by seven</i> .	<i>septies</i> , <i>seven times</i> .
8 <i>octāvus</i> , <i>eighth</i> .	<i>octōni</i> , <i>eight by eight</i> .	<i>octies</i> , <i>eight times</i> .
9 <i>nōnus</i> , <i>ninth</i> .	<i>nōvēni</i> , <i>nine by nine</i> .	<i>nōvies</i> , <i>nine times</i> .
10 <i>decĭmus</i> , <i>tenth</i> .	<i>dēni</i> , <i>ten by ten</i> .	<i>decies</i> , <i>ten times</i> .
11 <i>undecĭmus</i> , <i>eleventh</i> .	<i>undēni</i> , <i>eleven by eleven</i> .	<i>undecies</i> , <i>eleven times</i> .
12 <i>duodecĭmus</i> , &c.	<i>duodēni</i> , &c.	<i>duodecies</i> , <i>twelve times</i> .
13 <i>decĭmus tertius</i> .	<i>tredēni</i> , <i>terni deni</i> .	<i>tredecies</i> , <i>thirteen times</i> .
14 <i>decĭmus quartus</i> .	<i>quaterni deni</i> .	<i>quatuordecies</i> , <i>fourteen times</i> .
15 <i>decĭmus quintus</i> .	<i>quindēni</i> .	<i>quindecies</i> , <i>fifteen times</i> .
16 <i>decĭmus sextus</i> .	<i>seni deni</i> .	<i>sexdecies</i> , <i>sixteen times</i> .
17 <i>decĭmus septĭmus</i> .	<i>septēni deni</i> .	<i>decies ac septies</i> , <i>seventeen times</i> .
18 <i>decĭmus octāvus</i> .	<i>octōni deni</i> .	<i>decies ac octies</i> , <i>eighteen times</i> .
19 <i>decĭmus nonus</i> .	<i>novēni deni</i> .	<i>decies et novies</i> , <i>nineteen times</i> .
20 <i>vĭgesĭmus vicesĭmus</i> .	<i>vĭcēni</i> .	<i>vĭcies</i> , <i>twenty times</i> .
21 <i>vĭgesĭmus primus</i> .	<i>vĭcēni singulī</i> .	<i>vicies semel</i> .
30 <i>trigesĭmus tricesĭmus</i> .	<i>tricēni</i> .	<i>trĭcies</i> , <i>thirty times</i> .
40 <i>quadragesĭmus</i> .	<i>quadrāgēni</i> .	<i>quadrāgies</i> .
50 <i>quingagesĭmus</i> .	<i>quinqŭāgēni</i> .	<i>quinqŭagies</i> .
60 <i>sexagesĭmus</i> .	<i>sexāgēni</i> .	<i>sexagies</i> .
70 <i>septuagesĭmus</i> .	<i>septuāgēni</i> .	<i>septuagies</i> .
80 <i>octogesĭmus</i> .	<i>octogēni</i> .	<i>octōgies</i> .
90 <i>nonagesĭmus</i> .	<i>nonagēni</i> .	<i>nonagies</i> .
100 <i>centĭsimus</i> .	<i>centēni</i> .	<i>centies</i> .
200 <i>dŭcentĭsimus</i> .	<i>dŭcēni</i> .	<i>dŭcenties</i> .
300 <i>trecentĭsimus</i> .	<i>trecentēni</i> .	<i>trecenties</i> .
400 <i>quadrĭngentesĭmus</i> .	<i>quāter centēni</i> .	<i>quadrĭngenties</i> .
500 <i>quingentesĭmus</i> .	<i>quinquies centēni</i> .	<i>quingenties</i> .
600 <i>sexcentĭsimus</i> .	<i>sexies centēni</i> .	<i>sexcenties</i> .
700 <i>septĭngentesĭmus</i> .	<i>septies centēni</i> .	<i>septĭngenties</i> .
800 <i>octĭngentesĭmus</i> .	<i>octies centēni</i> .	<i>octĭngenties</i> .
900 <i>nongentesĭmus</i> .	<i>novies centēni</i> .	<i>nōningenties</i> .
1000 <i>millesĭmus</i> .	<i>millēni</i> ,	<i>millies</i> .
2000 <i>bis millesĭmus</i> .	<i>bis millēni</i> .	<i>bis millies</i> .

Subtractives sometimes occur in the ordinals; as, *duodetricesĭmus*, twenty-eighth, instead of *vicesĭmus-octāvus*; also *duodequadragesĭmus*, thirty-eighth; *undevigesĭmus* for nineteenth; *undetricesĭmus*, twenty-ninth; *undequingagesĭmus*, forty-ninth; *undecentesĭmus*, ninety-ninth, &c. the *duo* and *un* (for *unus*), not declined in these words.

So in the numeral adverbs, *undequadrages*, thirty-nine times; *duodetrices*, twenty-eight times, &c.

4. The multiplicative numbers are, *simplex*, simple; *duplex*, double or two-fold; *triplex*, triple or three-fold; *quadruplex*, four-fold, &c.; all of them declined like *felix*; thus, *simplex*, *-icis*, &c.

The interrogative words to which the above numerals answer, are *quot*, *quōtus*, *quōtēni*, *quōties*, and *quōtūplex*.

Quot, how many? is indeclinable: So *tot*, so many; *tōtīdem*, just so many; *quotquot quotcunque*, how many soever; *aliquot*, some.

To these numeral adjectives may be added such as express division, proportion, time, weight, &c. as, *bīpartītus*, *tripartītus*, &c. *duplus*, *triplus*, &c. *bīmus*, *trīmus*, &c. *biennis*, *triennis*, &c. *bīmestris*, *trimetris*, &c. *bīlibris*, *trilibris*, &c. *bīnārius*, *ternārius*, &c. which last are applied to the number of any kind of things whatever, as, *versus sēnārius*, a verse of six feet; *dēnārius nummus*, a coin of ten asses: *octogenarius senex*, an old man eighty years old; *grex centenarius*, a flock of a hundred, &c.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

The comparison of adjectives expresses the quality in different degrees; as, *hard*, *harder*, *hardest*.

Those adjectives only are compared, whose signification admits the distinction of *more* or *less*.

The degrees of comparison are three, the *Positive*, *Comparative*, and *Superlative*.

The *Positive* seems improperly to be called a degree. It simply signifies the quality; as, *durus*, hard; and serves only as a foundation for the other degrees. By it we express the relation of equality; *he is as tall as I*.

The *Comparative* expresses a greater degree of the quality, and has always a reference to a less degree of the same; as, *stronger*, *wiser*.

The *Superlative* expresses the quality carried to the greatest degree: as, *strongest*, *wisest*.

Comparison of ENGLISH Adjectives.

In English the comparative is formed from the positive, by adding to the end of the word *r* or *er*; and the superlative by adding *st* or *est*; as, *wise*, *wiser*, *wisest*; *cold*, *colder*, *coldest*. The adverbs *more* and *most* put before the adjective, have the same effect; as, *brave*, *more brave*, *most brave*.

Monosyllables for the most part are compared by *er* and *est*; as, *fair*, *fairer*, *fairest*; and Polysyllables by *more* and *most*; as *beautiful*, *more beautiful*, *most beautiful*.

In some few adjectives, the superlative is formed by adding *most*; as, *undermost*, *uttermost*, or *utmost*, *uppermost*, *nethermost*, *foremost*.

Comparison of LATIN Adjectives.

The comparative degree is formed from the first case of the positive in *i*, by adding the syllable *or*, for the masculine and feminine, and *us* for the neuter. The superlative is formed from the same case, by adding *ssim*us; as, *altus*, high, genit. *alti*: comparative, *altior*, for the masc.; *altior*, for the fem.; *altius*, for the neut. higher: superlative, *altissim*us, -a, -um, highest. So *mitis*, meek; dative *miti*; *mitior*, -or, -us, meeker; *mitissim*us, -a, -um, meekest.

If the positive end in *er*, the superlative is formed by adding *rim*us; as, *pauper*, poor; *pauperrim*us, poorest.

The comparative is always of the third declension: the superlative of the first and second: as, *altus*, *altior*, *altissim*us;

alta, altior, altissima; altum, altius, altissimum; gen. alti, altiōris, altissimi, &c.

Irregular and Defective Comparison.

1. Bonus,	melior,	optĭmus,	good,	better,	best.
Mālus,	pejor,	pessĭmus,	bad,	worse,	worst.
Magnus,	major,	maxĭmus,	great,	greater,	greatest.
Parvus,	mīnor,	mīnĭmus,	small,	less,	least.
Multus,	—	plūrĭmus,	much,	more,	most.

Fem. Multa plurima; *neut.* multum, plus, plurimum; *plur.* multi, plures, plurimi; *multæ, plures, plurimæ, &c.*

In several of these, both in English and Latin, the comparative and superlative seem to be formed from some other adjective, which, in the positive, has fallen into disuse; in others, the regular form is contracted, as, *maximus* for *magnissimus*; *most* for *morest*; *least* for *lessest*; *worst* for *worrest*.

2. These five have their superlative in *lĭmus*:

Fācilis, facilior, facillĭmus, <i>easy.</i>	Imbēcillis, imbecillior, imbecillĭmus, <i>weak.</i>
Grācilis, gracilior, gracillĭmus, <i>lean.</i>	Sĭmilis, similior, simillĭmus, <i>like.</i>
Hūmilis, humilior, humillĭmus, <i>low.</i>	

3. The following adjectives have regular comparatives, but form the superlative differently:

Cĭter, cĭterior, citĭmus, <i>near.</i>	Mātūrus, -ior, Maturrĭmus, or maturĭmus, <i>ripe.</i>
Dexter, dexterior, dextĭmus, <i>right.</i>	Posterus, posterior, postremus, <i>behind.</i>
Sĭnister, sinisterior, sinistĭmus, <i>left.</i>	Sūperus, -rior, suprĕmus, or summus, <i>high.</i>
Exter, -erior, extĭmus, or extrĕmus, <i>outward.</i>	Inferus, -ior, infĭmus, or imus, <i>below.</i>
Inferus, -ior, infĭmus, or imus, <i>below.</i>	Vetus, veterior, veterrĭmus, <i>old.</i>
Interus, interior, intĭmus, <i>inward.</i>	

4. Compounds in *dĭcus, lōquus, fĭcus*, and *volus*, have *entior*, and *entissĭmus*; as, *mālĕdĭcus*, railing; *mālĕdicentior*, *maledicentissĭmus*: So *magnĭlōquus*, one that boasteth; *bĕnĕfĭcus*, beneficent; *mālĕvōlus*, malevolent; *mĭrĭfĭcus*, wonderful; *-entior, -entissĭmus* or *mĭrĭfĭcissĭmus*. *Nĕquam*, indecl. worthless, vicious, has *nĕquior, nequissĭmus*.

There are a great many adjectives, which, though capable of having their signification increased; yet either want one of the degrees of comparison, or are not compared at all.

1. The following adjectives are not used in the positive:

Dĕterior, <i>worse, deterrĭmus.</i>	Prōpior, <i>nearer, proxĭmus, nearest or next.</i>
Ocior, <i>swifter, ocissĭmus.</i>	Uterior, <i>farther, ultĭmus.</i>
Prior, <i>former, prĭmus.</i>	

2. The following want the comparative:

Inclŷtus, inclytissĭmus, <i>renowned.</i>	Nūperus, nuperrĭmus, <i>late.</i>
Merĭtus, meritissĭmus, <i>deserving.</i>	Par, pārissĭmus, <i>equal.</i>
Nōvus, novissĭmus, <i>new.</i>	Sācer, sacerrĭmus, <i>sacred.</i>

3. The following want the superlative:

Adōlescens, adolescentior, <i>young.</i>	Opĭmus, opimior, <i>rich.</i>
Diūturnus, diuturnior, <i>lasting.</i>	Prōnus, pronior, <i>inclined downwards.</i>
Ingens, ingentior, <i>huge.</i>	Sātur, satŷrior, <i>full.</i>
Jŷvĕnis, junior, <i>young.</i>	Sĕnex, senior, <i>old.</i>

To supply the superlative of *jŷvĕnis*, or *ādōlescens*, we say, *minĭmus natu*, the youngest; and of *senex*, *maxĭmus natu*, the oldest.

Adjectives in *ĭlis, ālis*, and *bĭlis*, also want the superlative; as, *cĭvĭlis civi-*

līor, civil; *rēgālis*, *regalior*, regal; *flēbilis*, -ior, lamentable. So, *juvenīlis*, youthful; *exilis*, small, &c.

To these add several others of different terminations: Thus, *arcānus*, -ior, secret; *declivis*, -ior, bending downwards; *longinquus*, -ior, far off; *prōpinquus*, -ior, near,

Antērior, former; *sēquior*, worse; *sātior*, better, are only found in the comparative.

4. Many adjectives are not compared at all; such are those compounded with nouns or verbs; as, *versicōlor*, of divers colors; *pestifer* poisonous; also, adjectives in *us* pure, in *ivus*, *inus*, *orus*, or *imus*, and diminutives; as, *dūbius*, doubtful; *vācuus*, empty; *fūgītivus*, that flieth away; *mātūtīnus*, early; *cānōrus*, shrill; *lēgītīmus*, lawful; *tēnellus*, somewhat tender; *majusculus*, &c. together with a great many others of various terminations; as, *almus*, gracious; *præcox*, -ōcis, soon or early ripe; *mīrus*, *ēgēnus*, *lācer*, *mēmōr*, *sospes*, &c.

This defect of comparison is supplied by putting the adverb *magis* before the adjective for the comparative degree; and *valde* or *maxime* for the superlative; thus, *egēnus*, needy; *magis egenus*, more needy; *valde* or *maxime egenus*, very or most needy. Which form of comparison is also used in those adjectives which are regularly compared.

Particles frequently vary the import of the degrees of comparison. Thus the adverbs *longe*, far, and *multo*, by much, put before the comparative or superlative, strengthen the sense; as *multo severior*, much more severe. *Paululum*, *paulo* and some others, before the comparative, lessen the signification; as, *paulo ditior*, but a little more rich. *Quam*, before the superlative, heightens the sense very much; and in English is equivalent to "as much as possible;" thus, *quam occultissime*, as secret as possible. For more on these and other like particles, see Syntax.

PRONOUN.

A Pronoun is a word which stands *instead of a Noun*.

Thus *I* stands for the name of the person who speaks; *thou* for the name of the person addressed.

Pronouns serve to point out objects, whose names we either do not know, or do not want to mention. They also serve to shorten discourse, and prevent the too frequent repetition of the same word; thus, instead of saying, *When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, Cæsar turned Cæsar's arms against Cæsar's country*, we say, *When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, he turned his arms against his country*.

ENGLISH PRONOUNS.

In English there are five substantive pronouns, *I*, *thou*, *he*, *she*, and *it*.

The first is used when one speaks of himself; as, *I love*: the second, when the person spoken to is the subject of the discourse; as, *thou lovest*: and the last three, in speaking of any other person or thing; as, *he*, *she*, or *it falls*.

I is said to be of the first person; *thou*, of the second; and *he*, *she*, or *it*, together with all other words, of the third; and

so in the plural number, *we, ye, they*. Hence these are called *Personal Pronouns*.

The person speaking, and the person spoken to, do not need the distinction of gender; because they are supposed to be present, and therefore their sex is commonly known. But the third person, or thing spoken of, being frequently absent, and often unknown, requires to be distinguished by different genders; thus, *he, she, it*.

Substantive pronouns in English have three cases, the *nominative*, the *genitive* or *possessive*, and the *objective* or *accusative* case, which follows the verb active, or the preposition.

Substantive Pronouns, according to their Cases, Numbers, and Persons.

Cases.	Singular. Persons.			Plural. Persons.		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Nom.	I,	thou,	he, she, it;	we,	ye or you,	they.
Gen.	mine,	thine,	his, hers, its;	ours,	yours,	theirs.
Acc.	me,	thee,	him, her, it;	us,	you,	them.

All other pronouns are adjectives; as, *this, that, our, your, &c.* A pronominal adjective differs from a common adjective in this, that it does not express quality.

Several adjective pronouns do not admit the article before them, because they very much resemble it in their signification; as, *that man, &c.*

From the personal pronouns are formed these pronominal adjectives, *my, thy, his, her, our, your, their*. *Mine* and *thine* are often used as adjectives for *my* and *thy*, when the substantive following them begins with a vowel.

Some adjective pronouns are varied to mark number; as, *this, these; that, those*. To these add the adjectives *other, one*, which, when their substantive is not expressed, have in the plural, *others, ones*; as, *many others, great ones*; in which case they seem to be used as substantives.

Who, which, that, are called *Relatives*, because they refer to some substantive going before, which is therefore called the *Antecedent*. *Who* is varied by cases, thus, *who, whose, whom*. *His* and *whose* seem to be contractions for *him's* and *whom's*, the possessive case being formed from the objective; as, *hers* from *her*; *mine* from *me, &c.*

Who, which, what, whether, are called *Interrogatives*, when used in asking questions; when used otherwise, they are called *Indefinites*.

Own and *self*, in the plural *selves*, are joined to the possessives, *my, our, thy, your, his, her, their*; as, *my or mine own hand, myself, yourselves*. *Self* is likewise joined to the substantive pronoun *it*, as *itself*. *Himself, themselves*, seem to be used by corruption for *his self, their selves*.

LATIN PRONOUNS.

The simple pronouns in Latin are eighteen; *ego, tu, sui; ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, quis, qui; meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, nostras, vestras, and cujas*.

Three of them are substantives, *ego, tu, sui*; the other fifteen are adjectives.

Ego, I.

	Sing.
Nom.	ĕgo, I.*
Gen.	mei, of me,
Dat.	mihi, to me,
Acc.	me, me,
Voc.	_____
Abl.	me, with me.

Plur.

Nom.	nōs, we,
Gen.	nostrūm, or nostri, of us,
Dat.	nōbis, to us,
Acc.	nos, us,
Voc.	_____
Abl.	nobis, with us.

Tu, thou.

Sing.

N.	tū, thou,	} or you or yourself.
G.	tui, of thee,	
D.	tibi, to thee,	
A.	tē, thee,	
V.	tū, O thou,	
A.	tē, with thee,	

Plur.

N.	vōs, ye or you, or yourselves.
G.	vestrūm, or vestri, of you,
D.	vōbis, to you,
A.	vōs, you,
V.	vōs, O ye or you,
A.	vōbis, with you.

Sui, of himself, of herself, of itself.

Sing.

N.	_____
G.	sui, of himself, of herself, of itself,
D.	sibi, to himself, to herself, &c.
A.	sē, himself, &c.
V.	_____
A.	sē, with himself, &c.

Plur.

N.	_____
G.	sui, of themselves,
D.	sibi, to themselves,
A.	sē, themselves,
V.	_____
A.	sē, with themselves.

OBS. 1. *Ego* wants the vocative, because one cannot call upon himself, except as a second person; thus, we cannot say, *O ego*, *O I*; *O nos*, *O we*.

OBS. 2. *Mihi* in the dative is sometimes by the poets contracted into *mī*.

OBS. 3. The genitive plural of *ego* was anciently *nostrorum* and *nostrarum*; of *tu*, *vestrorum* and *vestrarum*, which were afterwards contracted into *nostrūm* and *vestrūm*.

We commonly used *nostrūm* and *vestrūm*, after partitives, numerals, comparatives, or superlatives; and *nostri* and *vestri* after other words.

The English substantive pronouns *he*, *she*, *it*, are expressed in Latin by these pronominal adjectives, *ille*, *iste*, *hic*, or *is*; as,

Ille, for the masc. *illa*, for the fem. *illud*, for the neut. that: or *ille*, he; *illa*, she; *illud*, it, or that; thus,

Singular.

M.	F.	N.
N. illē, he,	illā, she,	illūd, it or that,
G. illius, of him,	illius, of her,	illius, of it or that,
D. illi, to him,	illi, to her,	illi, to it or that,
A. illūm, him,	illām, her,	illūd, it or that,
V. illē,	illā,	illūd,
A. illō, with him,	illā, with her,	illō, with it or that.

* *Ego*, means also myself; *G.* of myself; *D.* to myself; *Acc.* myself; *Abl.* with myself; *Plur.* ourselves.

Plural.

M.	F.	N.
N. illi,	illæ,	illă, <i>those,</i>
G. illōrum,	illārum,	illōrum, <i>of those,</i>
D. illis,	illis,	illis, <i>to those,</i>
A. illōs,	illās,	illă, <i>those,</i>
V. illi,	illæ,	illă, <i>O those,</i>
A. illis,	illis,	illis, <i>with those.</i>

Observe of these Pronouns : *Hic* refers to that nearest the speaker ; *iste* to the next ; and *ille* to that farthest off. *Is* generally denotes one absent.

Also *ille* implies respect or honor ; *iste*, contempt ; as, *Alexander ille magnus*, Alexander the Great ; *Tarquinius iste superbus*, Tarquin the Proud.

Ipse, he himself ; *ipsa*, she herself ; *ipsum*, itself ; and *iste*, *ista*, *istud*, that, are declined like *ille* ; only *ipse* has *ipsum* in the nom. acc. and voc. sing. neut.

Ipse is often joined to *ego*, *tu*, *sui* ; and has in Latin the same force with *self* in English, when joined with a possessive pronoun ; as, *ego ipse*, I myself.

Hic, hæc, hoc, *this.*

Singular.

M.	F.	N.
N. hīc,	hæc,	hoc, <i>this,</i>
G. hūjūs,	hūjūs,	hūjūs, <i>of this,</i>
D. huic,	huic,	huic, <i>to this,</i>
A. hunc,	hanc,	hoc, <i>this,</i>
V. hic,	hæc,	hoc, <i>O this,</i>
A. hōc,	hāc,	hōc, <i>with this.</i>

Plural.

M.	F.	N.
N. hi,	hæ,	hæc, <i>these,</i>
G. hōrum,	hārum,	hōrum, <i>of these,</i>
D. his,	his,	his, <i>to these,</i>
A. hos,	has,	hæc, <i>these,</i>
V. hi,	hæ,	hæc, <i>O these,</i>
A. hīs,	hīs,	hīs, <i>with these.</i>

Is, ea, id ; *he*, *she*, *it* ; or *that.*

Singular.

M.	F.	N.
N. īs, <i>he,</i>	ea, <i>she,</i>	id, <i>that or it,</i>
G. ējus, <i>of him,</i>	ējus, <i>of her,</i>	ējus, <i>of that or it,</i>
D. ēī, <i>to him,</i>	ēī, <i>to her,</i>	ēī, <i>to that or it,</i>
A. ēum, <i>him,</i>	ēam, <i>her,</i>	īd, <i>that or it,</i>
V. —	—	—
A. eō, <i>with him,</i>	eā, <i>with her,</i>	eō, <i>with it or that.</i>

Plural.

M.	F.	N.
N. ii,	eæ,	ea, <i>they, those,</i>
G. eorum,	earum,	eorum, <i>of them,</i>
D. iis, or	eis, &c.	<i>to them, those,</i>
A. eôs,	eâs,	eă, <i>them, those,</i>
V. —	—	—
A. iis, or	eis, &c.	<i>with them.</i>

Quis, quæ, quod, or quid? which, what? Or *quis?* who? or what man? *quæ?* who? or what woman? *quod* or *quid?* what? which thing? or what thing? thus,

*Sing.**Plur.*

M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. quīs,	quæ,	quod-or quid,	N. quī,	quæ,	quæ,
G. cūjus,	cūjus,	cūjus,	G. quōrum,	quārum,	quōrum,
D. cuī,	cuī,	cuī,	D. queīs or quībus, &c.		
A. quēm,	quām,	quōd or quid,	A. quōs,	quās,	quæ,
V. —	—	—	V. —	—	—
A. quō,	quā,	quō.	A. queīs or quībus, &c.		

Qui, quæ, quod, who, which, that; Or *vir qui,* the man *who* or *that*; *ſcēmina quæ,* the woman *who* or *that*; *negotium quod,* the thing *which* or *that*; *genit. vir cūjus,* the man *whose, or of whom*; *mulier cūjus,* the woman *whose* or *of whom*; *negotium cūjus,* the thing *of which, seldom whose, &c.* thus,

Singular.

M.	F.	N.
N. quī,	quæ,	quōd, <i>who, which, that,</i>
G. cūjus,	cūjus,	cūjus, <i>whose, of whom, of which, of that,</i>
D. cuī,	cuī,	cuī, <i>to whom, to which, to that,</i>
A. quēm,	quām,	quōd, <i>whom, which, that,</i>
V. —	—	—
A. quō,	quā,	quō, <i>with or from whom, which, that.</i>

Plural.

M.	F.	N.
N. qui,	quæ,	quæ, <i>who, which, that,</i>
G. quōrum,	quarum,	quorum, <i>of whose, of whom, of which, &c.</i>
D. queīs or quībus, &c.		<i>to whom, to which,</i>
A. quōs,	quās,	quæ, <i>whom, which,</i>
V. —	—	—
A. queīs or quībus, &c.		<i>with, whom, which.</i>

The other pronouns are derivatives, coming from *ego, tu,* and *sui*. *Meus,* my or mine; *tuus,* thy or thine; *suus,* his

own, her own, its own, their own, are declined like *bonus*, -a, -um; and *noster*, our; *vester*, your, like *pulcher*, -chra, -chrum, of the first and second declension.

Nostras, of our country; *vestras*, of your country; *cujas*, of what or which country, are declined like *felix*, of the third declension: gen. *nostrātis*, dat. *nostrāti*, &c.

Pronouns as well as nouns, that signify things which cannot be addressed or called upon, want the vocative.

Meus hath *mi*, and sometimes *meus*, in the vocative sing. masc.

The relative *qui* has frequently *quī* in the ablative, and that, which is remarkable, in all genders and numbers.

Qui is sometimes used for *quis*: and instead of *cujus*, the gen. of *quis*, we find an adjective pronoun, *cujus*, -a, -um.

Simple pronouns, with respect to their signification, are divided into the following classes:

1. *Demonstratives*, which point out any person or thing present, or as if present. *Ego*, *tu*, *hic*, *iste*, and sometimes *ille*, *is*, *ipse*.
2. *Relatives*, which refer to something going before: *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *qui*.
3. *Possessives*, which signify possession: *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*.
4. *Patrials* or *Gentiles*, which signify one's country: *nostras*, *vestras*, *cujas*.
5. *Interrogatives*, by which we ask a question: *quis*? *cujas*? When they do not ask a question, they are called *Indefinites*, like other words of the same nature.
6. *Reciprocals*, which again call back or represent the same object to the mind: *sui* and *suus*.

COMPOUND LATIN PRONOUNS.

Pronouns are compounded variously:

1. With other pronouns; as, *isthic*, *isthæc*, *isthoc*, *isthuc*, or *istuc*. Acc. *Isthunc*, *isthanc*, *isthoc*, or *isthuc*. Abl. *isthoc*, *isthac*, *isthoc*. Nom. and acc. plur. neut. *isthæc*, of *iste* and *hic*. So *illic*, of *ille* and *hic*.

2. With some other parts of speech; as, *hujusmodi*, *cujusmodi*, &c. *mēcum*, *tēcum*, *sēcum*, *nobiscum*, *vobiscum*, *quocum* or *quicum* and *quibuscum*: *eccum*, *eccam*; *eccos*, *eccas*, and sometimes *ecca*, in the nom. sing. of *ecce* and *is*. So *ellum*, of *ecce* and *ille*.

3. With some syllable added; as *tute* of *tu* and *te*, used only in the nom. *egōmet*, *tūtēmet*, *sūmet*, through all the cases; thus, *meimet*, *tuimet*, &c. of *ego*, *tu*, *sui*, and *met*. Instead of *tumet* in the nom. we say, *tūtēmet*: *hiccine*, *hæccine*, &c. in all the cases that end in *c*; of *hic* and *cine*: *Meapte*, *tuapte*, *suapte*, *nostrapte*, *vestrapte*, in the ablat. fem. and sometimes *meople*, *tuople*, &c. of *meus*, &c. and *pte*: *hicce*, *hæcce*, *hocce*: *hujusce*, *hicce*, *hisce*; of *hic* and *ce*; whence *hujuscēmodi*, of this sort; *ejuscēmodi*, of that sort; *cujuscēmodi*, of which or what sort; or without *ce* in the middle, as, *istuismodi*, of that sort; *cujusmodi*, &c.; all genitive monoptotes compounded of *modus*, a manner, and *hic*, *is*, *quis*, and *iste*. So *IDEM*, the same, compounded of *is* and *dem*, which is thus declined:

Sing.			Plur.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>īdem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,	<i>īdem</i> ,	N. <i>īdem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,
G. <i>ejusdem</i> ,	<i>ejusdem</i> ,	<i>ejusdem</i> ,	G. <i>eorundem</i> ,	<i>earundem</i> ,	<i>eorundem</i> ,
D. <i>eīdem</i> ,	<i>eīdem</i> ,	<i>eīdem</i> ,	D. <i>eīdem</i> , or	<i>iīdem</i> , &c.	
A. <i>eundem</i> ,	<i>eandem</i> ,	<i>īdem</i> ,	A. <i>eōdem</i> ,	<i>easdem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,
V. <i>īdem</i> ,	<i>eadem</i> ,	<i>īdem</i> ,	V. <i>īdem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> .
A. <i>eōdem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,	<i>eōdem</i> .	A. <i>eīdem</i> , or	<i>iīdem</i> , &c.	

Also *egomet*, I myself, made up of *ego* and the syllabic adjection *met*, is thus declined :

Sing.	
N.	egōmēt, I myself,
G.	meimet, of myself,
D.	mihimet, to myself,
A.	mēmēt, myself,
V.	wanting.
A.	mēmēt, with myself.

Plur.	
N.	nōsmēt, we ourselves,
G.	nōstrūmmet vel } of ourselves,
	nōstrimet,
D.	nūbīsmēt, to ourselves,
A.	nōsmēt, ourselves,
V.	_____
A.	nobīsmēt, with ourselves.

The pronouns which we find most frequently compounded, are *quis* and *qui*. *Quis* in composition is sometimes the first, sometimes the last, and sometimes likewise the middle part of the word compounded ; but *qui* is always the first.

1. The compounds of *quis*, in which it is put first, are, *quisnam*, who? *quispiam*, *quisquam*, any one ; *quisque*, every one ; *quisquis*, whosoever ; which are thus declined :

Nom.		Gen.		Dat.	
M.	F.	N.			
Quisnam,	quænam,	quodnam or quidnam ;	cujusnam,	cuinam,	
Quispiam,	quæpiam,	quodpiam or quidpiam ;	cujuspiam,	cuipiam,	
Quisquam,	quæquam,	quodquam or quidquam ;	cujusquam,	cuiquam,	
Quisque,	quæque,	quodque or quidque ;	cujusque,	cuique,	
Quisquis,	_____	quidquid or quicquid ;	cujuscujus,	cuicui.	

And so in the other cases, according to the simple *quis*. But *anisquis* has not the fem. at all, and the neuter only in the nominative and accusative. *Quisquam* has also *quicquam* for *quidquam*. Accusative *quenquam*, without the feminine. The plural is scarcely used.

Singular.

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quīsquīs,	_____	quīdquīd or quīcquīd,
Gen.	cūjūscūjus,	_____	_____
Dat.	cuīcui,	_____	_____
Acc.	quēmquēm,	_____	quīdquīd or quīcquīd,
Voc.	_____	_____	_____
Abl.	quōquō,	quāquā,	quōquō.

And besides *quāquā* abl. sing. fem., authors use other parts ; as, nom. & acc. plur. neut. *quæquæ* ; dat. and abl. plur. *quibūsqūibūsqū*.

2. The compounds of *quis*, in which *quis* is put last, have *qua* in the nom. sing. fem. and in the nominative and accusative plur. neut., as, *aliquis*, some ; *ecquis*, who? of *et* and *quis* ; also, *nequis*, *siquis*, *numquis*, which for the most part are read separately ; thus, *ne quis*, *si quis*, *num quis*. They are thus declined :

Nom.		Gen.		Dat.	
M.	F.	N.			
Alīquis, aliqua,		aliquod or aliquid,	alicujus,	alicui,	
Ecquis, ecqua or ecquæ,		ecquod or ecquid,	eccujus,	eccui,	
Si quis, si qua,		si quod or si quid,	si cujus,	si cui,	
Ne quis, ne qua,		ne quod or ne quid,	ne cujus,	ne cui.	
Num quis, num qua,		num quod or num quid,	num cujus,	num cui.	

3. The compounds which have *quis* in the middle, are, *ecquisnam*, who? *unusquisque*, gen. *uniuscujusque*, every one. The former is used only in the nom. sing. and the latter wants the plural. Thus,

Singular.

M.	F.	N.
N.	unūsqūisqūe,	unūmqūōdque,
G.	uniuscujusque,	uniuscujusque.
D.	unicuique,	unicuique,

And so on like *unus* and *quis* ; to which add *quōtūsqūisqūe*, what one among many.

Singular.

M.	F.	N.
N. quōtusquisque,	quōtaquæque,	quōtumquodque, <i>vel</i> -umquidque,
G. quōticujusque,	quōtæcujusque,	quōticujusque,
D. quōtocuique,	quōtæcuique,	quōtocuique, &c. like <i>quōtus</i> and <i>quis</i> .

4. The compounds of *qui* are *quicunque*, whosoever; *quidam*, some; *quilibet*, *quivis*, any one whom you please; which are thus declined:

Nom.			Gen.	Dat.
M.	F.	N.		
Quicunque,	quæcunque,	quodcunque,	cujuscunque,	cuicunque,
Quidam,	quædam,	quoddam or quiddam,	cujusdam,	cuidam,
Quilibet,	quælibet,	quodlibet or quidlibet,	cujuslibet,	cuilibet,
Quivis,	quævis,	quodvis or quidvis,	cujusvis,	cuivis.

Obs. 1. All these compounds have seldom or never *queis*, but *quibus*, in their dat. and abl. plur.; thus *aliquibus*, &c.

Obs. 2. *Quis*, and its compounds in comic writers, have sometimes *quis* in the feminine gender.

Obs. 3. *Quidam* has *quendam*, *quandam*, *quoddam*, or *quiddam*, in the acc. sing. and *quorundam*, *quarundam*, *quorundam*, in the gen. plur., *n.* being put instead of *m.* for the better sound. Also *quidam*, some, differs in import from *aliquis*, some. *Aliquis* denotes a person or thing indefinitely; *quidam* determines the person or thing meant.

Obs. 4. *Quod*, with its compounds, *aliquod*, *quodvis*, *quoddam*, &c. are used when they agree with a substantive in the same case: *quid*, with its compounds, *aliquid*, *quidvis*, &c. for the most part have either no substantive expressed, or govern one in the genitive. For this reason, they are by some reckoned substantives.

VERB.

A verb is a word which expresses what is affirmed of things; as, The boy *reads*. The sun *shines*. The man *loves*.

Or, A verb is that part of speech which signifies to be, to do, or to suffer.

It is called *Verb* or *Word*, by way of eminence, because it is the most essential word in a sentence, without which the other parts of speech can form no complete sense. Thus, *the diligent boy reads his lesson with care*, is a perfect sentence; but if we take away the affirmation, or the word *reads*, it is rendered imperfect, or rather becomes no sentence at all; thus, *the diligent boy his lesson with care*.

A verb therefore may be thus distinguished from any other part of speech: Whatever word expresses an affirmation, or assertion, is a verb; or thus, Whatever word, with a substantive noun or pronoun before or after it, makes full sense, is a verb; as, *stones fall*, *I walk*, *walk thou*. Here *fall* and *walk* are verbs, because they contain an affirmation; but when we say, *a long walk*, *a dangerous fall*, there is no affirmation expressed; and the same words *walk* and *fall* become substantives or nouns. We often find likewise in Latin the same word used as a verb, and also as some other part of speech; thus, *amor*, -*ōris*, love, a substantive; and *amor*, I am loved, a verb.

Verbs, with respect to their signification, are divided into three different classes, *Active*, *Passive*, and *Neuter*; because we consider things either as acting, or being acted upon; or as neither acting, nor being acted upon; but simply existing, or existing in a certain state or condition; as in a state of motion or rest, &c.

1. An *Active* verb expresses an action, and necessarily supposes an agent, and an object acted upon; as, *amāre*, to love; *amo te*, I love thee.

2. A verb *Passive* expresses a passion or suffering, or the receiving of an action; and necessarily implies an object acted upon, and an agent, by which it is acted upon; as, *amāri*, to be loved; *tu amāris a me*, thou art loved by me. :

3. A *Neuter* verb properly expresses neither action nor passion, but simply the being, state, or condition of things; as, *dormio*, I sleep; *sedeo*, I sit.

The verb *Active* is also called *Transitive*, when the action *passeth over* to the object, or hath an effect on some other thing; as, *scribo litēras*, I write letters; but when the action is confined within the agent, and *passeth not over* to an object, it is called *Intransitive*; as, *ambūlo*, I walk; *curro*, I run, which are likewise called *Neuter* verbs. Many verbs in Latin and English are used both in a transitive and in an intransitive or neuter sense; as, *sistēre*, to stop; *incipēre*, to begin; *durāre*, to endure, or to harden, &c.

Verbs which simply signify *being*, are likewise called *Substantive* verbs; as *esse* or *existere*, to be or to exist. The notion of existence is implied in the signification of every verb; thus, *I love*, may be resolved into *I am loving*.

When the meaning of a verb is expressed without any affirmation, or in such a form as to be joined to a substantive noun, partaking thereby of the nature of an adjective, it is called a *Participle*; as, *amans*, loving; *amatus*, loved. But when it has the form of a substantive, it is called a *Gerund*, or a *Supine*; as, *amandum*, loving; *amatum*, to love; *amatu*, to love, or to be loved.

A verb is varied or declined by *Voices*, *Modes*, *Tenses*, *Numbers*, and *Persons*.

There are two voices; the *Active* and *Passive*.

The modes are four; *Indicative*, *Subjunctive*, *Imperative*, and *Infinitive*.

The tenses are five; the *Present*, the *Preter-imperfect*, the *Preter-perfect*, the *Preter-pluperfect*, and the *Future*.

The numbers are two; *Singular* and *Plural*.

The persons are three; *First*, *Second*, *Third*.

1. *Voice* expresses the different circumstances in which we consider an object, whether as acting or being acted upon. The *Active Voice* signifies action; as, *āmo*, I love; the *Passive*, suffering, or being the object of an action; as, *amor*, I am loved.

2. *Modes* or *moods* are the various manners of expressing the signification of the verb.

The *Indicative* declares or affirms positively; as, *amo*, I love; *amābo*, I shall love; or asks a question; as, *an tu, amas?* dost thou love?

The *Subjunctive* is usually joined to some other verbs, and cannot make a full meaning by itself; as, *si me obsæcret redibo*, if he entreat me, I will return. *Ter.*

The *Imperative* commands, exhorts, or entreats; as, *ama*, love thou.

The *Infinitive* simply expresses the signification of the verb, without limiting it to any person or number; as, *amâre*, to love.

3. *Tenses* or *Times* express the time when any thing is supposed to be, to act, or to suffer.

Time in general is divided into three parts, the present, past, and future.

Past time is expressed three different ways. When we speak of a thing, which was doing, but not finished, at some former time, we use the *Preter-imperfect*, or past time not completed; as, *scribebam*, I was writing.

When we speak of a thing now finished, we use the *Preter-perfect*, or past time completed; as, *scripsi*, I wrote, or have written.

When we speak of a thing finished at or before some past time, we use the *Preter-pluperfect*, or past time more than completed; as, *scripsëram*, I had written.

Future time is expressed two different ways. A thing may be considered either as simply about to be done, or as actually finished, at some future time; as, *scribam*, I shall write, or I shall [then] be writing; *scripsëro*, I shall have written.

4. *Number* marks how many we suppose to be, to act, or to suffer.

5. *Person* shows to what the meaning of the verb is appliëd, whether to the person speaking, to the person addressed, or to some other person or thing.

Obs. The first person speaks; the second person is spoken to; and the third person is spoken of; thus,

Ego is the first person singular.

Tu is the second.

Ille is the third person singular, and all other nouns of the singular are the third person.

Nos is the first person plural.

Vos the second.

Ille is the third person plural; and so are all other nouns and pronouns of the plural number.

But all nouns in the *vocative*, and all *addressed*, are of the *second person*.

Verbs have two numbers and three persons, to agree with substantive nouns and pronouns in these respects: for a verb, properly, hath neither numbers nor persons, but certain terminations answering in the person and number of its nominative.

A verb is properly said to be *conjugated*, when all its parts are properly classed, or, as it were, yoked together, according to Voice, Mode, Tense, Number, and Person.

ENGLISH VERBS.

English verbs change their termination to express only the present and the past time of the Active voice; and in regular verbs, the perfect participle is always the same with the perfect or past time, both of them ending in *ed* or *'d*. The present participle always ends in *ing*. The English has no future participle, which defect is supplied by a circumlocution; as, *about to love*.

An English verb is thus varied:

To LOVE.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

	Present Time.		Past Time.	
	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
Person.	1. I love,	We love,	1. I loved,	We loved,
	2. Thou lovest,	Ye or you love,	2. Thou lovedst,	Ye or you loved,
	3. He loveth or loves;	They love.	3. He loved;	They loved.

Subjunctive Mode.		Imperative Mode.	
Present Time.		Sing.	Plur.
Sing.	Plur.	2. Love thou ; Love ye or love you.	
1. I love,	We love,	Infinitive Mode. Present. To love.	
2. Thou love,	Ye or you love,		
3. He love ;	They love.		

Participle Present, Loving ; Perfect, Loved.

The several remaining parts of the English verb are formed by the assistance of other verbs, called therefore *Auxiliaries* or *Helpers*. The chief of these are *have*, *be*, *shall*, and *will*, which are thus varied.

TO HAVE.

Indicative Mode.			
Present Time.		Past Time.	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
1. I have,	We have,	1. I had,	We had,
2. Thou hast,	Ye have,	2. Thou hadst,	Ye had,
3. He hath or has ;	They have.	3. He had ;	They had.

Subjunctive Mode.		Imperative Mode.	
Present.		Sing.	Plur.
Sing.	Plur.	2. Have thou ; Have ye.	
1. I have,	We have,	Infinitive Mode. Present, To have.	
2. Thou have,	Ye have,		
3. He have ;	They have.		

Participle Present, Having ; Perfect, Had.

TO BE.

Indicative Mode.			
Present Time.		Past Time.	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
1. I am,	We are,	1. I was,	We were,
2. Thou art,	Ye are,	2. Thou wast,	Ye were,
3. He is ;	They are.	3. He was ;	They were.

Subjunctive Mode.			
Present.		Past.	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
1. I be,	We be,	1. I were,	We were,
2. Thou be,	Ye be,	2. Thou wert,	Ye were,
3. He be ;	They be.	3. He were ;	They were.

Imperative Mode.		Infinitive Mode.	
		Present, To be.	
Sing.	Plur.		
2. Be thou ;	Be ye.		

Participle.
Present, Being. Perfect, Been.

SHALL.		WILL.	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
1. I shall,	We shall,	1. I will,	We will,
2. Thou shalt,	Ye shall,	2. Thou wilt,	Ye will,
3. He shall ;	They shall.	3. He will ;	They will.

The terminations of these auxiliary verbs seem to be irregular. Most of them, however, are only contractions of the regular form. Thus, *hast* is contracted for *havest* ; *hath* for *haveth* ; *has* for *haves* ; and *wilt* for *willest* ; which last is likewise used from the irregular verb, *to will* ; thus, *I will, thou wilt, he willeth or wills*.

The tenses of the subjunctive mode are expressed by *may* or *can* ; *might*, *could*, *would*, and *should*, together with other auxiliary verbs.

Would, wouldst, comes from *will* ; and *should, shouldst*, from *shall*. *Might* and *could* seem to be the past time of *may* and *can*.

To express with greater force the present and past time of the Indicative Mode, we use the auxiliary verb *do* ; as, *I do love ; I did love*. And so in the

Imperative, *do thou love, do ye love*. In the third person of the Imperative we always use *let*, which being an active verb has always an accusative after it; as, *let him love; let them love*.

When we speak of present time indeterminately, we use the simple form; as, *I love, I loved*; but when we speak of it with some particular limitation, we use an auxiliary; as, *I am loving* just now; *I was* (then) *loving*. The termination *th*, in the third person of the present of the Indicative, properly belongs to solemn discourse; as, *he hath, he doth, &c.*

The whole of the passive voice in English is formed by the auxiliary verb *to be*, and the participle imperfect; as, *I am loved, I was loved, &c.* In many verbs the present participle also is used in a passive sense; as, *These things are doing, were doing, &c.* *The house is building, was building, &c.*

When an auxiliary is joined to a verb, the auxiliary is varied according to number and person, and the verb itself always continues the same. When there are two or more auxiliaries joined to the verb, the first of them only is varied according to person and number. The auxiliary *must* admits of no variation.

Shall and *will* are always employed to express future time. *Will*, in the first person singular and plural, promises or threatens; in the second and third person, only foretells; *shall*, on the contrary, in the first person, simply foretells; in the second and third persons, promises, commands, or threatens. But the contrary of this holds, when we ask a question; thus, "*I shall go*," "*you will go*," express event only; but "*will you go*?" imports intention; and "*shall I go*," refers to the will of another.

The neuter verb is varied like the active; but sometimes it assumes the passive form; as, *I had fallen, or I was fallen*.

IRREGULAR ENGLISH VERBS.

The English language abounds in irregular verbs.

A verb in English is said to be irregular, which has not the Past Time and the Participle Perfect in *ed*.

Most English verbs are liable to some irregularity from contraction.

To this we are led by the nature of the language, and the manner of pronouncing it. Thus, instead of *loved, lovedest*, we say, *lov'd, lovedst*. Hence, in many verbs, *ed* is changed into *t*; as, *snacht, checkt, snapt, mixt, dwelt, past, meant, felt, left, bereft, &c.* for *snatched, checked, &c.* In such words, however, the entire form is also used, and in general to be preferred. They are not, therefore, commonly ranked among irregular verbs.

Irregular verbs in English, properly so called, are all monosyllables, unless compounded, and may be reduced to the three following classes, in which those marked thus,* are likewise used in the regular form.

1. Irregulars by contraction.

These commonly end in *d* or *t*, and have the Present, the Past Time, and the Participle Perfect, all alike, without any variation; as, *beat, burst, cast, cost, cut, hit, hurt, knit, left, lift,* light,* put, quit,* read, rent, rid, set, shed, shred, shut, slit, split, spread, thrust, wet,** all of which are contracted for *beated, bursted, casted, &c.*

The following in the Past Time, and Participle Perfect, vary a little from the Present; as, *lead, led; sweat, swet,* meet, met; breed, bred; feed, fed; speed, sped; bend, bent,* lend, lent; rend, rent; send, sent; spend, spent, build, built,* geld, gelt,* gild, gilt,* gird, girt,* lose, lost.*

*Sold, told, had, made, fled, shod, clad,** from *sell, tell, have, make, flee, shoe, clothe*, are contracted for *selled, telled, &c.* *Stand* has *stood; smell, smelt; dare, durst*, in the participle *dared*.

2. Irregulars in ght.

These are few in number, and have the Past Time and Participle in *ght*; as, *bring, brought; buy, bought; catch, caught; fight, fought; teach, taught; think, thought; seek, sought; work, wrought.*

3. *Irregulars in en.*

This is by far the most numerous class of irregular verbs. They have commonly the Participle Perfect in *en*, and form the Past Time by changing the vowel or diphthong of the Present. Some form the Past Time regularly.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
Fall,	fell,	fallen.	Stride,	strode,	stridden.
Awake,	awoke,*	(awaked.)	Shrive,	shrove,	shriven.
Forsake,	forsook,	forsaken.	Thrive,	throve,	thriven.
Shake,	shook,	shaken.	Write,	wrote,	written.
Take,	took,	taken.	Strike,	struck,	stricken or strucken.
Draw,	drew,	drawn.	Bid,	bade,	bidden.
Slay,	slew,	slain.	Give,	gave,	given.
Get,	got or got,	gotten.	Sit,	sat,	sitten.
Help,	(helped)	holpen.*	Spit,	spat,	spitten.
Melt,	melted,	molten.*	Dig,	dug,*	digged.
Swell,	swelled,	swollen.*	Lie,	lay,	lain or lien.
Eat,	ate,	eaten.	Choose,	chose,	chosen.
Bear,	bare or bore,	borne.	Hold,	held,	holden.
Break,	brake or broke,	broken.	Do,	did,	done.
Cleave,	clave or clove,*	cloven.	Blow,	blew,	blown.
Speak,	spake or spoke,	spoken.	Crow,	crew,	(crown.)
Swear,	sware or swore,	sworn.	Grow,	grew,	grown.
Tear,	tare or tore,	torn.	Know,	knew,	known.
Wear,	ware or wore,	worn.	Throw,	threw,	thrown.
Heave,	hove,*	hoven.*	Fly,	flew,	flown.
Shear,	shore,	shorn.	Bake,	(baked,)	baken.*
Steal,	stole,	stolen.	Grave,	(graved,)	graven.*
Tread,	trod,	trodden.	Hew,	(hewed,)	hewen or hewn.
Weave,	wove,	woven.	Lade,	(laded,)	laden.
Creep,	crope,*	crept.*	Load,	(loaded,)	loaden.*
Freeze,	froze,	frozen.	Mow,	(mowed,)	mown.
Seethe,	sod,	sodden.	Rive,	(rived,)	riven.
See,	saw,	seen.	Saw,	(sawed,)	sawn.*
Bite,	bit,	bitten.	Shave,	(shaved,)	shaven.*
Chide,	chid,	chidden.	Shew,	(shewed,)	shewn.*
Hide,	hid,	hidden.	Show,	(showed,)	shown.
Slide,	slid,	slidden.	Sow,	(sowed,)	sown.*
Abide,	abode,	abode.	Straw, strew or strow,	(strawed, &c.)	strown.*
Climb,	clomb,	(climbed)	Wash,	(washed,)	washen.*
Drive,	drove,	driven.	Wax,	(waxed,)	waxen.*
Ride,	rode,	ridden.	Wreath,	(wreathed,)	wreathen.
Rise,	rose,	risen.	Writhe,	(writhed,)	writhen.
Shine,	shone,*	shined.			
Strive,	strove,*	striven.*			
Smite,	smote,	smitten.			

Several verbs seem to have dropt the termination *en* in the participle; as,

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
Begin,	began,	begun.	Spring,	sprang or sprung,	sprung.
Cling,	clang or clung,	clung.	Sting,	stung,	stung.
Drink,	drank,	drunk or drunken.	Stink,	stank or stunk,	stunk.
Fling,	flung,	flung.	String,	strung,	strung.
Ring,	rang or rung,	rung.	Swim,	swam or swum,	swum.
Shrink,	shrank or shrunk,	shrunk.	Swing,	swung,	swung.
Sing,	sang or sung,	sung.	Wring,	wrung,	wrung.
Sink,	sank or sunk,	sunk.	Bind,	bound,	bound or bouden.
Sling,	slang or slung,	slung.	Find,	found,	found.
Slink,	slunk,	slunk.	Ground,	ground,	ground.
Spin,	span or spun,	spun.	Wound,	wound,	wound.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
Hang,	hung,*	hung.*	Come,	came,	come.
Shoot,	shot,	shot.	Run,	ran,	run.
Stick,	stuck,	stuck.	Win,	won,	won.

Frequent mistakes are committed with regard to those verbs which make the Participle Perfect different from the Past Time ; thus it is said, *he begun* for *he began* ; *he run* for *he ran* ; the Participle being used instead of the Past Time ; and much more frequently the Past Time instead of the Participle ; as, *I had wrote*, for *I had written* ; *it was wrote*, for *it was written* ; so, *bore* for *borne* ; *chose* for *chosen* ; *bid* for *bidden* ; *drove* for *driven* ; *brake* for *broken* ; *rode* for *ridden* ; &c.

Several verbs are either defective, or made up of parts derived from different verbs of the same signification ; as, *go*, *went*, *gone* ; *weel*, *wit* or *wot*, *wot* ; *wis*, *wist* ; *ought*, *quoth*, *must*, together with most of the auxiliary verbs.

LATIN VERBS.

The Latins have four different ways of varying verbs, called the *First*, the *Second*, the *Third*, and the *Fourth Conjugation*.

The Conjugations are thus distinguished :

The First has *ā* long before *re* of the Infinitive ; the Second has *ē* long, the Third has *ē* short, and the Fourth has *i* long, before *re* of the Infinitive.

Except *dāre*, to give, which has *ā* short, and also its compounds ; thus, *Circundāre*, to surround ; *circundāmus*, -*dātis*, -*dābam*, -*dābo*, &c.

The different conjugations are likewise distinguished from one another by the different terminations of the following tenses :

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

Present Tense.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	Persons.			Persons.		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Conjugation.	1. -o,	-as,	-at ;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
	2. -eo,	-es,	-et ;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
	3. -o,	-is,	-it ;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-unt.
	4. -io,	-is,	-it ;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-iunt.

Imperfect.

1. -ābam,	-ābas,	-ābat ;	-ābāmus,	-ābātis,	-ābant.
2. -ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat ;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
3. -ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat ;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
4. -iēbam,	-iēbas,	-iēbat ;	-iēbāmus,	-iēbātis,	-iēbant.

Future.

1. -ābo,	-ābis,	-ābit;	-ābīmus,	-ābītis,	-ābunt.
2. -ēbo,	-ēbis,	-ēbit;	-ēbīmus,	-ēbītis,	-ēbunt.
3. -am,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
4. -iam,	-ies,	-iet;	-iēmus,	-iētis,	-ient.

Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense.

1. -em,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
2. -eām,	-eas,	-eat;	-eāmus,	-eātis,	-eant.
3. -am,	-as,	-at;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
4. -iam,	-ias,	-iat;	-iāmus,	-iātis,	-iant.

Imperfect.

1. -ārem,	-āres,	-āret;	-ārēmus,	-ārētis,	-ārent.
2. -ērem,	-ēres,	-ēret;	-ērēmus,	-ērētis,	-ērent.
3. -ěrem,	-ěres,	-ěret;	-ěrēmus,	-ěrētis,	-ěrent.
4. -īrem,	-īres,	-īret;	-irēmus,	-irētis,	-īrent.

Imperative Mode.

2.	3.	2.	3.
1. -a or -āto,	-āto;	-āte or -ātōte,	-anto.
2. -e or -ēto,	-ēto;	-ēte or -ētōte,	-ento.
3. -e or -īto,	-īto;	-īte or -ītōte,	-unto.
4. -i or -īto,	-īto;	-īte or -ītōte,	-iunto.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

Present Tense.

1. -or,	-āris or -āre,	-ātur;	-āmur,	-āmīni,	-antur.
2. -eor,	-ēris or -ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-ēmīni,	-entur.
3. -or,	-ēris or -ēre,	-ītur;	-īmur,	-īmīni,	-untur.
4. -ior,	-īris or -īre,	-ītur;	-īmur,	-īmīni,	-iuntur.

Imperfect.

1. -ābar,	-ābāris or -ābāre,	-ābātur;	-ābāmur,	-ābāmīni,	-ābantur.
2. -ēbar,	-ēbāris or -ēbāre,	-ēbātur;	-ēbāmur,	-ēbāmīni,	-ēbantur.
3. -ēbar,	-ēbāris or -ēbāre,	-ēbātur;	-ēbāmur,	-ēbāmīni,	-ēbantur.
4. -iēbar,	-iēbāris or -iēbāre,	-iēbātur;	-iēbāmur,	-iēbāmīni,	-iēbantur.

Future.

1. -ābor,	-ābēris or -ābēre,	-ābītur;	-ābīmur,	-ābīmīni,	-ābuntur.
2. -ēbor,	-ēbēris or -ēbēre,	-ēbītur;	-ēbīmur,	-ēbīmīni,	-ēbuntur.
3. -ar,	-ēris or -ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-ēmīni,	-entur.
4. -iar,	-iēris or -iēre,	-iētur;	-iēmur,	-iēmīni,	-ientur.

Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense.

1. -er,	-ēris or -ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-ēmīni,	-entur.
2. -ear,	-eāris or -eāre,	-eātur;	-eāmur,	-eāmīni,	-eantur.
3. -ar,	-āris or -āre,	-ātur;	-āmur,	-āmīni,	-antur.
4. -iar,	-iāris or -iāre,	-iātur;	-iāmur,	-iāmīni,	-iantur.

Imperfect.

1. -ārer,	-ārēris or -ārēre,	-ārētur;	-ārēmur	-ārēmīni,	-ārentur.
2. -ērer,	-ērēris or -ērēre,	-ērētur;	-ērēmur,	-ērēmīni,	-ērentur.
3. -ērer,	-ērēris or -ērēre,	-ērētur;	-ērēmur,	-ērēmīni,	-ērentur.
4. -īrer,	-īrēris or -īrēre,	-īrētur;	-īrēmur,	-īrēmīni,	-īrentur.

Imperative Mode.

	2.	3.	2.	3.
1. -āre or -ātor,	-ātor;	-āmīni,	-āntor.	
2. -ēre or -ētor,	-ētor;	-ēmīni,	-ēntor.	
3. -ēre or -ītor,	-ītor;	-īmīni,	-untor.	
4. -īre or -ītor,	-ītor;	-īmīni,	-iuntor.	

Obs. Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation have *iunt* in the third person plur. of the present indic. active, and *iuntur* in the passive; and so in the imperative, *iunto* and *iuntor*. In the imperfect and future of the indicative they have always the terminations of the fourth conjugation, *iēbam* and *iam*; *iēbar* and *iar*, &c.

The terminations of the other tenses are the same through all the conjugations. Thus,

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

	Sing.			Plur.		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Perf.	-i,	-isti,	-it;	-īmus,	-istis	-ērunt or -ēre.
Plu.	-ēram,	-ēras,	-ērat;	-ērāmus,	-ērātis,	-ērant.

Subjunctive Mode.

Perf.	-ērim,	-ēris,	-ērit;	-ērīmus,	-ērītis,	-ērint.
Plu.	-issem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.
Fut.	-ēro,	-ēris,	-ērit;	-ērīmus,	-ērītis,	-ērint.

These Tenses, in the Passive Voice, are formed by the Participle Perfect, and the auxiliary verb *sum*, which is also used to express the Future of the infinitive Active.

SUM is an irregular verb, and thus conjugated;

Principal Parts.

Pres. Indic.	Perf. Indic.	Pres. Infin.	
Sum,	fui,	esse,	To be.

Indicative Mode.

Present Tense. *am.*

SING.	1. Ego sum,	I am.
Person.	2. Tu es,*	Thou art, or you are.
	3. Ille est,	He is.

* Where *e* follows *e*, *Sum* signifies also to eat; as, *tu es*, thou eatest, &c.

PLUR.	1. Nos sūmus,	<i>We are.</i>
	2. Vos estis,	<i>Ye or you are.</i>
	3. Illi sunt,	<i>They are.</i>

Imperfect. *was.*

SING.	1. Ego eram,	<i>I was.</i>
	2. Tu eras,	<i>Thou wast or you were.</i>
	3. Ille erat,	<i>He was.</i>
PLUR.	1. Nos erāmus,	<i>We were.</i>
	2. Vos erātis,	<i>Ye were.</i>
	3. Illi erant,	<i>They were.</i>

Perfect. *have been or was.*

SING.	1. Ego fui,	<i>I have been.</i>
	2. Tu fuisti,	<i>Thou hast been.</i>
	3. Ille fuit,	<i>He hath been.</i>
PLUR.	1. Nos fuīmus,	<i>We have been.</i>
	2. Vos fuistis,	<i>Ye have been.</i>
	3. Illi fuērunt or -ēre,	<i>They have been.</i>

Pluperfect. *had been.*

SING.	1. Ego fuēram,	<i>I had been.</i>
	2. Tu fueras,	<i>Thou hadst been.</i>
	3. Ille fuerat,	<i>He had been.</i>
PLUR.	1. Nos fuērāmus,	<i>We had been.</i>
	2. Vos fueratis,	<i>Ye had been.</i>
	3. Illi fuerant,	<i>They had been.</i>

Future. *shall or will.*

SING.	1. Ego ero,	<i>I shall be.</i>
	2. Tu eris,	<i>Thou shalt be.</i>
	3. Ille erit,	<i>He shall be.</i>
PLUR.	1. Nos erīmus,	<i>We shall be.</i>
	2. Vos erītis,	<i>Ye shall be.</i>
	3. Illi erunt,	<i>They shall be.</i>

Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense. *may, or can, or let.*

SING.	1. Ego sim,	<i>I may be.</i>
	2. Tu sis,	<i>Thou mayest be.</i>
	3. Ille sit,	<i>He may be.</i>
PLUR.	1. Nos sīmus,	<i>We may be.</i>
	2. Vos sītis,	<i>Ye may be.</i>
	3. Illi sint,	<i>They may be.</i>

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should.*

SING.	1. Ego essem,	<i>I might be.</i>
	2. Tu esses,	<i>Thou mightest be.</i>
	3. Ille esset,	<i>He might be.</i>
PLUR.	1. Nos essēmus,	<i>We might be.</i>
	2. Vos essetis,	<i>Ye might be.</i>
	3. Illi essent,	<i>They might be.</i>

Perfect. *may have.*

SING.	1. Ego fuërim,	<i>I may have been.</i>
	2. Tu fueris,	<i>Thou mayest have been.</i>
	3. Ille fuerit,	<i>He may have been.</i>
PLUR.	1. Nos fuëřimus,	<i>We may have been.</i>
	2. Vos fueritis,	<i>Ye may have been.</i>
	3. Illi fuerint,	<i>They may have been.</i>

Pluperfect. *might, could, would, or should have ; or had.*

SING.	1. Ego fuisset,	<i>I might have been.</i>
	2. Tu fuisses,	<i>Thou mightest have been.</i>
	3. Ille fuisset,	<i>He might have been.</i>
PLUR.	1. Nos fuissēmus,	<i>We might have been.</i>
	2. Vos fuissetis,	<i>Ye might have been.</i>
	3. Illi fuissent,	<i>They might have been.</i>

Future. *shall have.*

SING.	1. Ego fuëro,	<i>I shall have been.</i>
	2. Tu fueris,	<i>Thou shalt have been.</i>
	3. Ille fuerit,	<i>He shall have been.</i>
PLUR.	1. Nos fuëřimus,	<i>We shall have been.</i>
	2. Vos fueritis,	<i>Ye shall have been.</i>
	3. Illi fuerint,	<i>They shall have been.</i>

Imperative Mode.

SING.	2. Es <i>vel</i> esto tu,	<i>Be thou.</i>
	3. Ešto ille,	<i>Let him be.</i>
PLUR.	2. Este <i>vel</i> estôte vos,	<i>Be ye.</i>
	3. Sunt illi,	<i>Let them be.</i>

Infinitive Mode.

Pres.	Esse,	<i>To be.</i>
Perf.	Fuisse,	<i>To have been.</i>
Fut.	Esse futurus, -a, -um,	<i>To be about to be.</i>
	Fuisse futurus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been about to be.</i>

Participle.

Fut.	Füturus, -a, -um,	<i>About to be.</i>
------	-------------------	---------------------

OBS. 1. The personal pronouns, which in English are, for the most part added to the verb, in Latin are commonly understood; because the several

persons are sufficiently distinguished from one another by the different terminations of the verb, though the persons themselves be not expressed. Thus *sum* signifies I am, the *ego* being understood; *amo*, I love, &c. The learner, however, at first, ought to be accustomed to join them to the verb; as follows:

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Persons.</i>		
1. Ego sum,	<i>I am,</i>	1. Nos sumus, <i>We are,</i>
2. Tu es,	<i>Thou art or you are,</i>	2. Vos estis, <i>Ye or you are,</i>
3. Ille est,	<i>He is.</i>	3. Illi sunt, <i>They are.</i>

So *ego amo*, I love; *tu amas*, thou lovest or you love; *ille amat*, he loveth or loves; *nos amamus*, we love, &c.

Obs. 2. In the second person singular, in English, we commonly use the plural form, except in solemn discourse; as, *tu es*, thou art, or much oftener, you are; *tu eras*, thou wast or you were; *tu sis*, thou mayest be or you may be, &c. So *tu amas*, thou lovest or you love; *tu amabas*, thou lovedst or you loved, &c.

Verbs are thus varied in the different Conjugations.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Principal Parts.

<i>Present Indic.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Present Infin.</i>
<i>Amo,</i>	<i>āmāvi,</i>	<i>āmātum,</i>	<i>āmāre, To love.</i>

Indicative Mode.

Present Tense. *love, do love, or am loving.*

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Ego ām-o,	<i>I love,</i>
	2. Tu am-ās,	<i>Thou lovest or you love,</i>
	3. Ille am-āt,	<i>He loveth or he loves.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Nos am-āmūs,	<i>We love,</i>
	2. Vos am-atis,	<i>Ye or you love,</i>
	3. Illi am-ānt,	<i>They love.</i>

Imperfect. *loved, did love, or was loving.*

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Ego am-ābām,	<i>I loved,</i>
	2. Tu am-abās,	<i>Thou lovedst,</i>
	3. Ille am-abāt,	<i>He loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Nos am-abāmūs,	<i>We loved,</i>
	2. Vos am-abātīs,	<i>Ye or you loved,</i>
	3. Illi am-ābānt,	<i>They loved.</i>

Perfect. *loved, have loved, or did love.*

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Ego am-āvī,	<i>I have loved,</i>
	2. Tu am-avisti,	<i>Thou hast loved.</i>
	3. Ille am-avit,	<i>He hath loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Nos am-āvīmus,	<i>We have loved,</i>
	2. Vos am-avistis,	<i>Ye have loved,</i>
	3. Illi am-avērunt, v.-avēre,	<i>They have loved.</i>

Pluperfect. *had.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Ego am-āvēram,	<i>I had loved,</i>
2. Tu am-averas,	<i>Thou hadst loved,</i>
3. Ille am-averat,	<i>He had loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Nos am-averamus,	<i>We had loved,</i>
2. Vos am-averatis,	<i>Ye had loved,</i>
3. Illi am-averant,	<i>They had loved.</i>

Future. *shall or will.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Ego am-ābo,	<i>I shall love,</i>
2. Tu am-abis,	<i>Thou shalt love,</i>
3. Ille am-abit,	<i>He shall love.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Nos am-abīmus,	<i>We shall love,</i>
2. Vos am-abitis,	<i>Ye shall love,</i>
3. Illi am-abunt,	<i>They shall love.</i>

Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense. *may, or can, or let.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Ego am-ēm,	<i>I may love,</i>
2. Tu am-ēs,	<i>Thou mayest love,</i>
3. Ille am-ēt,	<i>He may love.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Nos am-ēmus,	<i>We may love,</i>
2. Vos am-etis,	<i>Ye may love,</i>
3. Illi am-ent,	<i>They may love.</i>

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Ego am-ārēm,	<i>I might love.</i>
2. Tu am-arēs,	<i>Thou mightest love,</i>
3. Ille am-arēt,	<i>He might love.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Nos am-arēmūs,	<i>We might love,</i>
2. Vos am-arētīs,	<i>Ye might love,</i>
3. Illi am-arent,	<i>They might love.</i>

Perfect. *may have.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Ego am-āvērīm,	<i>I may have loved,</i>
2. Tu am-averis,	<i>Thou mayest have loved,</i>
3. Ille am-averit,	<i>He may have loved.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Nos am-averīmus,	<i>We may have loved,</i>
2. Vos am-averitis,	<i>Ye may have loved,</i>
3. Illi am-averint,	<i>They may have loved.</i>

Pluperfect. *might, could, would, or should have ; or had.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Ego am-āvīsem,	<i>I might have loved,</i>
2. Tu am-avisses,	<i>Thou mightest have loved,</i>
3. Ille am-avissēt.	<i>He might have loved.</i>

Plur. 1. Nos am-avissēmūs,	<i>We might have loved,</i>
2. Vos am-avissetīs,	<i>Ye might have loved,</i>
3. Illi am-avissent.	<i>They might have loved.</i>

Future. *shall have.*

Sing. 1. Ego am-āvēro,	<i>I shall have loved,</i>
2. Tu am-āvēris,	<i>Thou shalt have loved,</i>
3. Ille am-averīt,	<i>He shall have loved.</i>

Plur. 1. Nos am-averīmūs,	<i>We shall have loved,</i>
2. Vos am-averitis,	<i>Ye shall have loved,</i>
3. Illi am-averīnt,	<i>They shall have loved.</i>

Imperative Mode.

Sing. 2. Am-ā <i>vel</i> am-āto tu,	<i>Love thou, or do thou love,</i>
3. Am-ato ille,	<i>Let him love.</i>

Plur. 2. Am-āte, <i>vel</i> am-atōte vos,	<i>Love ye, or do ye love,</i>
3. Am-anto illi,	<i>Let them love.</i>

Infinitive Mode.

Pres. Am-ārē,	<i>To love.</i>
Perf. Am-avisse,	<i>To have loved.</i>
Fut. Esse amatūrus, -a, -um,	<i>To be about to love.</i>
Fuisse amaturus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been about to love.</i>

‡ *Participle.*

Present, Am-āns,	<i>Loving,</i>
Future, Am-ātūrūs, -ā, -ūm,	<i>About to love.</i>

- *Gerunds.*

Nom. Am-āndūm,	<i>Loving,</i>
Gen. Am-andī,	<i>Of loving,</i>
Dat. Am-āndo,	<i>To loving,</i>
Acc. Am-andum,	<i>Loving,</i>
Abl. Am-ando,	<i>With loving.</i>

Supine.

Former, Am-ātum,	<i>To love,</i>
Latter, Am-atū,	<i>To love, or to be loved.</i>

PASSIVE VOICE.

Present Indicative.	Perfect Participle.	Infinitive.
Amōr,	amātūs,	amāri, <i>to be loved.</i>

Indicative Mode.

Present Tense. *am.*

Sing. 1. Ego am-or,	<i>I am loved,</i>
2. Tu am-āris, <i>vel</i> -āre,	<i>Thou art loved,</i>
3. Ille am-atur,	<i>He is loved.</i>

Plur. 1. Nos am-amur,	<i>We are loved,</i>
2. Vos am-amīni,	<i>Ye or you are loved,</i>
3. Illi am-antur,	<i>They are loved.</i>

Imperfect. *was.*

Sing. 1. Ego am-ābar,	<i>I was loved,</i>
2. Tu am-abāris, <i>vel</i> -abāre,	<i>Thou wast loved,</i>
3. Ille am-abātur,	<i>He was loved.</i>

Plur. 1. Nos am-abamur,	<i>We were loved,</i>
2. Vos am-abamīni,	<i>Ye were loved,</i>
3. Illi am-abantur,	<i>They were loved.</i>

Perfect. *am, have been, or was.*

Sing. 1. Ego amātus (-a, -um) sum, <i>vel</i> fui,	} <i>I have been loved,</i>	
2. Tu amatūs ēs, <i>v.</i> fuisti,		<i>Thou hast been loved,</i>
3. Ille amatus est, <i>v.</i> fuit,		<i>He hath been loved.</i>

Plur. 1. Nos amati (-æ, -a) sumus, <i>v.</i> fuimus,	}	<i>We have been loved,</i>
2. Vos amati estis, <i>v.</i> fuistis,		<i>Ye have been loved,</i>
3. Illi amati sunt, fuērunt, <i>v.</i> fuēre,	}	<i>They have been loved.</i>

Pluperfect. *had been or was.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Ego amatus (-a, -um) eram, <i>vel</i> fueram,	{ <i>I had been loved,</i>	
2. Tu amatus eras, <i>v.</i> fueras,		<i>Thou hadst been loved,</i>
3. Ille amatus erat, <i>v.</i> fuerat,		<i>He had been loved.</i>

Plur. 1. Nos amati (-æ, -a) eramus, <i>v.</i> fueramus,	{ <i>We had been loved,</i>	
2. Vos amati eratis, <i>v.</i> fueratis,		<i>Ye had been loved,</i>
3. Illi amati erant, <i>v.</i> fuerant,		<i>They had been loved.</i>

Future. *shall or will be.*

Sing. 1. Ego am-ābor,	<i>I shall be loved,</i>
2. Tu am-abēris, <i>vel</i> -abēre,	<i>Thou shalt be loved,</i>
3. Ille am-abitur,	<i>He shall be loved.</i>

Plur. 1. Nos am-ābimur,	<i>We shall be loved,</i>
2. Vos am-abimini,	<i>Ye shall be loved,</i>
3. Illi am-abuntur,	<i>They shall be loved,</i>

Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense. *may, or can be, or let.*

Sing. 1. Ego am-āer,	<i>I may be loved,</i>
2. Tu am-ēris, <i>vel</i> -ēre,	<i>Thou mayest be loved,</i>
3. Ille am-etur,	<i>He may be loved.</i>

<i>Plur.</i> 1. Nos amati (-æ, -a) fu- ērīmus,	} We shall have been loved, Ye shall have been loved, They shall have been loved.
2. Vos amati fueritis,	
3. Illi amati fuerint,	

Imperative Mode.

<i>Sing.</i> 2. Am-āre <i>vel</i> am-ātor tu,	Be thou loved,
3. Am-ātor ille,	Let him be loved.
<i>Plur.</i> 2. Am-amīni vos,	Be ye loved,
3. Am-antor illi,	Let them be loved.

Infinitive Mode.

<i>Pres.</i> Am-āri,	To be loved,
<i>Perf.</i> Esse v. fuisse amatus, -a, -um,	} To have been loved,
<i>Fut.</i> Am-ātum iri,	
	To be about to be loved.

Participle.

<i>Perf.</i> Am-atus, -a, -um,	Loved.
<i>Fut.</i> Am-andus, -a, -um,	To be loved.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>	<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Pres.</i>
Dōceo,	dōcui,	doctum,	dōcēre,	To teach.

Indicative Mode.

	<i>Sing.</i>			<i>Plur.</i>		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
<i>Pres.</i> Doc-eo,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.	
<i>Imp.</i> Doc-ēbam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebāmus,	-ebatis,	-ēbant,	
<i>Perf.</i> Doc-ui,	-uisti,	-uit;	-uīmus,	-uistis,	-uērunt,	v. -uēre.
<i>Plu.</i> Doc-uēram,	-ueras,	-uerat;	-uerāmus,	-ueratis,	-uerant.	
<i>Fut.</i> Doc-ēbo,	-ebis,	-ebit;	-ebīmus,	-ebitis,	-ebunt.	

Subjunctive Mode.

<i>Pres.</i> Doc-eam,	-eas,	-eat;	-eāmus,	-eatis,	-eant.
<i>Imp.</i> Doc-ērem,	-eres,	-eret;	-erēmus,	-eretis,	-erent.
<i>Perf.</i> Doc-uērim,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerīmus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
<i>Plu.</i> Doc-uissem,	-uisses,	-uisset;	-uissēmus,	-uissetis,	-uissent.
<i>Fut.</i> Doc-uēro,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerīmus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

Imperative Mode.

	2.	3.	2.	3.
<i>Pres.</i> Doc-e <i>vel</i> -ēto,	-ēto;	-ēte <i>vel</i> -etote,	-ento.	

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>	<i>Gerunds.</i>	<i>Supines.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Doc-ēre.	<i>Pr.</i> Doc-ens.	Doc-endum,	1. Doc-tum.
<i>Perf.</i> Doc-uisse.	<i>Fut.</i> Doc-tūrus.	Doc-endi,	2. Doc-tu.
<i>Fut.</i> Esse docturus, -a, -um,		Doc-endo, &c.	
Fuisse docturus, -a, -um.			

PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	
Dōceor,	doctus,	dōcēri,	<i>To be taught.</i>

Indicative Mode.

	<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	Doc-eor, -ēris <i>vel</i> -ēre,	-etur;	-emur, -emīni, -entur.
<i>Imp.</i>	Doc-ēbar, -ēbāris <i>vel</i> -ebare,	-ebatur;	-ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.
<i>Perf.</i>	Doctus sum <i>vel</i> fui, doctus es <i>vel</i> fuisti, doctus est <i>vel</i> fuit, &c.		
<i>Plu.</i>	Doctus eram <i>v.</i> fueram, doctus eras <i>v.</i> fueras, doctus erat <i>v.</i> fuerat, &c.		
<i>Fut.</i>	Doc-ebor, -ēbēris <i>vel</i> -ebere,	-ebitur,	-ebimur, -ebimini, -ebuntur.

Subjunctive Mode.

<i>Pres.</i>	Doc-ear, -eāris <i>vel</i> -eare,	-eatur;	-eamur, -eamīni, -eantur.
<i>Imp.</i>	Doc-ere, -erēris <i>vel</i> -erēre,	-eretur;	-eremur, -eremini, -erentur.
<i>Perf.</i>	Doctus sim <i>vel</i> fuerim, doctus sis <i>vel</i> fueris, doctus sit <i>vel</i> fuerit, &c.		
<i>Plu.</i>	Doctus essem <i>v.</i> fuisset, doctus esses <i>v.</i> fuisses, doctus esset <i>v.</i> fuisset, &c.		
<i>Fut.</i>	Doctus fuero, doctus fueris, doctus fuerit, docti fuerimus, &c.		

Imperative Mode.

	2.	3.	2.	3.
<i>Pres.</i>	Doc-ēre <i>vel</i> -ētor,	-etor;	-emīni,	-entor.

*Infinitive.**Participles.*

<i>Pres.</i>	Doc-eri.	<i>Perf.</i>	Doc-tus, -a, -um.
<i>Perf.</i>	Esse <i>vel</i> fuisse doctus, -a, -um.	<i>Fut.</i>	Doc-endus, -a, -um.
<i>Fut.</i>	Doctum iri.		

THIRD CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	
Lēgo,	lēgi,	lectum,	lēgēre,	<i>To read.</i>

Indicative Mode.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
<i>Pres.</i>	Leg-o,	-is,	-it;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-unt.
<i>Imp.</i>	Leg-ēbam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
<i>Perf.</i>	Lēg-i,	-isti,	-it;	-īmus,	-istis, -ērunt,	-ēre.
<i>Plu.</i>	Lēg-ēram,	-eras,	-erat;	-erāmus,	-eratis,	-erant.
<i>Fut.</i>	Lēg-am,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-etis,	-ent.

Subjunctive Mode.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
<i>Pres.</i> Lĕg-am,	-as,	-at;	-amus,	-atis,	-ant.
<i>Imp.</i> Lĕg-ĕrem,	-eres,	-eret;	-ĕrĕmus,	-eretis,	-erent.
<i>Perf.</i> Lĕg-ĕrim,	-eris,	-erit;	-erĭmus,	-eritis,	-erint.
<i>Plu.</i> Lĕg-issem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issemus,	-issetis,	-issent.
<i>Fut.</i> Lĕg-ĕro,	-eris,	-erit;	-erĭmus,	-eritis,	-erint.

Imperative Mode.

2.	3.	2.	3.
<i>Pres.</i> Lĕg-e, <i>vel</i> -ĭto,	-ĭto;	-ĭte, <i>vel</i> -ĭtōte,	-unto.
<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>	<i>Gerunds.</i>	<i>Supines.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Lĕg-ĕre.	<i>Pr.</i> Leg-ens.	Lĕg-endum,	1. Lec-tum.
<i>Perf.</i> Lĕg-isse.	<i>Fut.</i> Lec-tŭrus.	Leg-endi,	2. Lec-tu.
<i>Fut.</i> Esse lectŭrus,	-a, -um,	Leg-endo, &c.	
Fuisse lectŭrus,	-a, -um.		

PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	
Lĕgor,	lectus,	lĕgi,	<i>To be read.</i>

Indicative Mode.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Pres.</i> Leg-or,	-ĕris <i>vel</i> -ĕre,	-ĭtur;	-ĭmur,	-ĭmĭni,	-untur.
<i>Imp.</i> Leg-ĕbar,	-ebaris <i>vel</i> -ebare,	-ebatur;	-ebamur,	-ebamini,	-ebantur.
<i>Perf.</i> Lectus sum <i>vel</i> fui,	lectus es <i>vel</i> fuisti,	lectus est <i>vel</i> fuit, &c.			
<i>Plu.</i> Lectus eram <i>vel</i> fueram,	lectus eras <i>vel</i> fueras,	lectus erat <i>vel</i> fuerat, &c.			
<i>Fut.</i> Leg-ar,	-ĕris <i>vel</i> -ere,	-ĕtur,	-ĕmur,	-emini,	-entur.

Subjunctive Mode.

<i>Pres.</i> Lĕg-ar,	-āris <i>vel</i> -āre,	-atur;	-amur,	-amini,	-antur.
<i>Imp.</i> Leg-ĕrer,	-erĕris <i>vel</i> -erĕre,	-eretur;	-eremur,	-eremini,	-erentur.
<i>Perf.</i> Lectus sĭm <i>vel</i> fuerim,	lectus sis <i>vel</i> fueris,	lectus sit <i>vel</i> fuerit, &c.			
<i>Plu.</i> Lectus essem <i>v.</i> fuissem,	lectus esses <i>v.</i> fuisses,	lectus esset <i>v.</i> fuisset, &c.			
<i>Fut.</i> Lectus fuero,	lectus fueris,	lectus fuerit, &c.			

Imperative Mode.

2.	3.	2.	3.
<i>Pres.</i> Leg-ĕre, <i>vel</i> -itor,	-ĭtor;	-ĭmĭni,	-untor.
<i>Infinitive.</i>		<i>Participles.</i>	
<i>Pres.</i> Lĕg-i.		<i>Fut.</i> Leg-endus,	-a, -um.
<i>Perf.</i> Esse <i>v.</i> fuisse lectus,	-a, -um.	<i>Perf.</i> Lec-tus,	-a, -um.
<i>Fut.</i> Lectum iri.			

But verbs of the third conjugation in *io* differ in some parts from *lĕgo*, and retain *i* before *-ŭnt*, *-ŭnto*, *-ĕbam*, *-ĕbar*,

-ām, -ār, -ēns, -endūs, -endum; as, cūpio, fodio, quatio, &c.
Thus,

ACTIVE VOICE.

Pres. Indic. Perf. Indic. Supine. Pres. Infin.

Fodio, fodi, fōssum, fodere, *To stab.*

Indicative Mode.

Present Tense.

Singular.

1. Fodio,
2. Fodīs,
3. Fodīt.

Plural.

1. Fodīmus,
2. Fodītis,
3. Fodīunt.

Imperfect.

1. Fodiēbām,
2. Fodiebās,
3. Fodiebāt.

1. Fodiēbāmūs,
2. Fodiebātīs,
3. Fodiebānt.

Future.

1. Fodiām,
2. Fodiēs,
3. Fodiēt.

1. Fodiēmūs,
2. Fodiētīs,
3. Fodiēnt.

Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense.

1. Fodiām,
2. Fodiās,
3. Fodiāt.

1. Fodiāmūs,
2. Fodiātīs,
3. Fodiānt.

Imperative Mode.

Present Tense.

2. Fodē or fōdīto,
3. Fōdīto,

2. Fōdītē or fōdītōtē,
3. Fōdīunto.

Participles.

Pres. Fodiēns.

Fut. Fōssūrūs.

Gerunds.

Nom. Fodiēndū,

Dat. Fodiēndo,

Gen. Fodiēndi,

Acc. Fodiēndū.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Pres. Indic. Perf. Part. Pres. Infin.

Fodiōr, fōssūs, fōdī, *To be stabbed.*

Indicative Mode.

Present Tense.

Singular.

1. Fodiōr,
2. Fodērīs, *vel* -ēre,
3. Fōdītūr.

Plural.

1. Fodīmūr,
2. Fodīmīnī,
3. Fōdīuntūr.

Imperfect.

Singular.

1. Fōdiēbār,
2. Fōdiēbāris, *vel* -bāre,
3. Fōdiēbātūr.

Plural.

1. Fōdiēbāmūr,
2. Fōdiēbāmīni,
3. Fōdiēbāntūr.

Future.

1. Fōdiār,
2. Fōdiēris, *vel* -ēre,
3. Fōdiētūr.

1. Fōdiēmūr,
2. Fōdiēmīni,
3. Fōdiēntūr.

Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense.

1. Fōdiār,
2. Fōdiāris, *vel* -ārē,
3. Fōdiātūr.

1. Fōdiāmūr,
2. Fōdiāmīni,
3. Fōdiāntūr.

Imperative Mode.

Present Tense.

2. Fōdērē, *vel* fōdītōr,
3. Fōdītōr.

2. Fōdīmīni,
3. Fōdiūntōr.

Participles.

Fut. Fōdiēndūs, -ā, -ūm.

For the other parts of *fōdio*, see like parts of *lēgo*, active and passive voice.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	
Audio,	audivi,	audītum,	audire,	<i>To hear.</i>

*Indicative Mode.**Sing.*

1.

2.

3.

1.

2.

3.

<i>Pr.</i>	Aud-io,	-is,	-it;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-iunt.
<i>Imp.</i>	Aud-iēbam,	-iebas,	-iebat;	-iebamus,	-iebatis,	-iebant.
<i>Per.</i>	Aud-īvi,	-ivisti,	-ivit;	-ivīmus,	-ivistis,	-ivērunt.
					<i>vel</i> -ivēre.	
<i>Plu.</i>	Aud-ivēram,	-iveras,	-iverat;	-iveramus,	-iveratis,	-iverant.
<i>Fut.</i>	Aud-iam,	-ies,	-iet;	-iemus,	-ietis,	-ient.

*Plur.**Subjunctive Mode.*

<i>Pr.</i>	Aud-iam,	-ias,	-iat;	-iamus,	-iatis,	-iant.
<i>Imp.</i>	Aud-īrem,	-ires,	-iret;	-irēmus,	-iretis,	-irent.
<i>Per.</i>	Aud-iverim,	-iveris,	-iverit;	-iverīmus,	-iveritis,	-iverint.
<i>Plu.</i>	Aud-ivissem,	-ivisses,	-ivisset;	-ivissemus,	-ivissetis,	-ivissent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Aud-ivero,	-iveris,	-iverit;	-iverimus,	-iveritis,	-iverint.

Imperative Mode.

2.	3.	2.	3.
Aud-i, <i>vel</i> -īto	-īto;	-īte, <i>vel</i> -itōte,	-iunto.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>	<i>Gerunds.</i>	<i>Supines.</i>
<i>Pr.</i> Aud-īre.	<i>Pr.</i> Aud-iens.	Aud-iendum,	1. Auditum.
<i>Per.</i> Aud-ivisse.	<i>Fu.</i> Aud-iturus.	Aud-iendi,	2. Auditū.
<i>Fut.</i> Esse auditurus, -a, -um,		Aud-iendo, &c.	
Fuisse auditurus, -a, -um.			

PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Indicative.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	
Audior,	Auditus,	Audiri,	<i>To be heard.</i>

Indicative Mode.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Aud-ior, -īris <i>vel</i> -īre,	-ītur; -īmur, -īmini, -īuntur.
<i>Imp.</i> Aud-īēbar, -iebaris <i>vel</i> -iebare,	-iebatur; -iebamur, -iebamini, -iebantur.
<i>Perf.</i> Auditus sum <i>vel</i> fui, auditus es <i>v.</i> fuisti, auditus est <i>v.</i> fuit, &c.	
<i>Plu.</i> Auditus eram <i>v.</i> fueram, auditus eras <i>v.</i> fueras, auditus erat <i>v.</i> fuerat, &c.	
<i>Fut.</i> Aud-iar, -ieris <i>vel</i> -iere,	-ietur; -iemur, -iemini, -ientur.

Subjunctive Mode.

<i>Pres.</i> Aud-iar, -iaris <i>vel</i> -iare,	-iatur; -iamur, -iamini, -iantur.
<i>Imp.</i> Aud-īrer, -īreris <i>vel</i> -irere,	-iretur; -iremur, -iremini, -irentur.
<i>Perf.</i> Auditus sim <i>vel</i> fuerim, auditus sis <i>v.</i> fueris, auditus sit <i>v.</i> fuerit, &c.	
<i>Plu.</i> Auditus essem <i>v.</i> fuissem, auditus esses <i>v.</i> fuisses, auditus esset <i>v.</i> fuisset, &c.	
<i>Fut.</i> Auditus fuero, auditus fueris, auditus fuerit, &c.	

Imperative Mode.

2.	3.	2.	3.
<i>Pres.</i> Aud-īre, <i>vel</i> -ītor,	-ītor;	-īmini,	-iuntor.

Infinitive.

<i>Pr.</i> Aud-iri,	<i>Participles.</i>
<i>Per.</i> Esse <i>v.</i> fuisse auditus, -a, -um,	<i>Per.</i> Aud-ītus, -a, -um.
<i>Fut.</i> Audītum iri.	<i>Fut.</i> Aud-iendus, -a, -um.

FORMATION OF VERBS.

There are four principal parts of a verb, from which all the rest are formed; namely, *o* of the present, *i* of the perfect, *um* of the supine, and *re* of the infinitive; according to the following rhyme:

1. From *o* are formed *am* and *em*.
2. From *i*; *ram*, *rim*, *ro*, *sse*, and *ssem*.
3. *U*, *us*, and *rus*, are form'd from *um*.

4. All other parts from *re* do come; as, *bam*, *bo*, *rem*, *a*, *e*, and *i*; *ns* and *dus*; *dum*, *do*, and *dī*; as,

Am-o, -em; Am-avi, -eram, -erim, -issēm, -ero, -isse; Amat-um, -u, -urus, -us.
Am-are, -abam, -abo, -arem, -a, -ans, -andum, -dī, -do; -andus.

The passive voice is formed from the active, by adding *r* to *o*, or changing *m* into *r*.

But it is much more easy and natural to form all the parts of a verb from the present and perfect of the indicative, and from the supine in *um*; thus,

	Present.		Perfect Tense.		Supine.
From Amo,	amā or āto,	From Amāvī,		From Amātum,	
come amābām,	amāre,	come amāvērām,		come amātū,	
amābo,	amāns,	amāvērīm,		amātūs,	
amēm,	amāndūm,	amāvissem,		amātūrus.	
amārēm,	amāndus.	amāvēro,			
		amāvisse.			

So Dōcēo, -ēbām, -ēbo, -ēām, -ērēm, -ē or -ēto, -ēre, -ēns, -ēndūm, -ēndūs.

Docuī, -ēram, -erīm, -issem, -ēro, -issē.

Dōctūm, -ū, -ūs, -ūrūs.

Lēgo, -ēbam, -ām, -ām, -ērem, -ō or -ito, -ēre, -ēns, -ēndūm, -ēndūs.

Lēgi, -eram, -erim, -issem, -ero, -isse.

Lectum, -u, -us, -ūrūs.

Audīo, -iēbam, -iam, -iam, -īrem, -ī or -ito, -īre, -iēns, -iēndūm, -iēndus.

Audivi, -iverām, -iverim, -ivissem, -ivero, -ivisse.

Audītūm, -itū, -ītus, -itūrūs.

So Fōdio, a verb, in -io of the third conjugation.

Fōdio, -iēbam, -iam, -iam, -erem, -ē or -ito, -ēre, -iēns, -iēndūm, -iēndus.

Fodi, -eram, -erim, -issem, -ero, -isse.

Fōssum, -ū, -ūs, -ūrūs.

RULES

For forming the Verb according to this natural order.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

Present, from the Dictionary, as *amo*.

Imperfect is formed from the third person plural of the present, by changing *nt* into *bam*, in the first and second conjugation; as, *amant*, *amābam*; *docent*, *docēbam*; and *unt* into *ebam*, in the third and fourth; as, *leg-unt*, *leg-ebam*; *audiunt*, *audiēbam*.

Future is from the same, by changing *nt* into *bo*, in the first and second; as, *amant*, *amabo*; and *unt* into *am*, in the third and fourth; as, *legunt*, *legam*; *audi-unt*, *audi-am*.

Perfect, from the Dictionary, as *am-avi*.

Pluperfect comes from the first person singular of the perfect, by changing, in all conjugations, *i* into *eram*; as, *docu-i*, *docu-eram*; *leg-i*, *leg-eram*.

Imperative Mode.

Present Imperative comes from the second person singular of present indicative, by changing *is* into *e*, in the third; as, *legis*, *leg-e*; but casting off *s* in the other three conjugations; as, *am-as*, *am-a*, &c.

Subjunctive Mode.

The *Present* is formed from the first person singular of present indicative, by changing *o* into *em*, in the first, as, *am-o*, *am-em*; and into *am* in the other conjugations; as, *doce-o*, *doce-am*; *aud-io*, *audi-am*.

Imperfect is from the second person singular of the imperative, by adding *rem*; as, *am-a*, *ama-rem*; *leg-e*, *lege-rem*.

Perfect comes from the first person singular of perfect indicative, by changing *i* into *erim*; as, *am-avi*, *amav-erim*, &c.

Pluperfect Sub. from the same, by adding *ssem*: as, *docu-i*, *docu-issem*; *audiv-i*, *audiv-issem*,

Future Sub. from the same, by changing *i* into *ero*; as, *leg-i*, *leg-ero*, &c.

Supine, in *um*, from Dictionary.

The *Supine* in *u* is from that in *um*, by casting off *m*; as, *doc-tum*, *doc-tu*, &c.

Infinitive Mode.

The *Present* comes from the second person singular of the imperative, by adding *re*; as, *ama*, *amāre*; *doce*, *docere*.

Perfect Infinitive, from the first person singular of perfect indicative, by adding *sse*; as, *docui*, *docuisse*; *legi*, *legisse*.

Future Infinitive is from the supine in *u*, by adding *rus*, and also *esse* or *fuisse*: as, *doctu*, *docturus-esse* or *fuisse*.

The *Future Participle* is from the same, by adding *rus*; as, *ama-tu*, *amaturus*; *auditu*, *auditurus*.

The *Present Participle* comes from the first person singular of the imperfect indicative, by changing the last syllable into *ns*; as, *lege-bam*, *legens*; *doce-bam*, *docens*. So in *Dependent Verbs*, as, *loque-bar*, *loquens*.

The *Gerunds* come from the same, by changing the last syllable into *-ndum*, *-ndi*, *-ndo*; as, *ama-bam*, *amandum*, *-i*, *do*; *audiebam*, *audiendum*, *-di*, *-do*; *morie-bar*, *moriendum*, *-di*, *-do*.

PASSIVE VOICE.

The tenses of the *Indicative* and *Subjunctive Passive* are formed from the first person singular of like tenses in the active, by adding *r* to *o*, or changing *m* into *r*; except the *Preterites*, the *Future Subjunctive*, and *Perfect Infinitive*, which are formed from the perfect participle and the verb *sum*: thus, from the present active *amo*, comes present passive *amor*; from *amabam*, *amabar*; from *amem*, *amer*, &c.; and perfect indicative passive is *amatus*, *sum* or *fui*; future sub-

junctive passive, *amatus-fuero*; and perfect infinitive, *amatus esse* or *fuisse*.

Imperative Mode.

Imperative comes from the second person singular of the imperative active, by adding *re*; as, *ama, amare*; *doce, docere*.

Present Infinitive Passive comes from the same, by changing *e* into *i* in the third; as, *lege, legi*; and by adding *ri* in the other three conjugations; as, *doce, doceri*; *audi, audiri*.

Future Infinitive Passive is formed by adding the supine in *um* to *iri*, the infinitive passive of *eo*; as, *lectum iri, &c.*

Perfect Participle comes from the supine in *u*, by adding *s*; as, *amātu, amatus*; *lectu, lectus*.

Future Passive Participle is formed from the gerund in *dum*, by changing *m* into *s*; as, *amandum, amandus*; *cupiendum, cupiendus*.

A verb is commonly said to be conjugated, when only its principal parts are mentioned, because from them all the rest are derived.

The first person of the present of the indicative is called the *Theme* or the *Root* of the verb, because from it the other three principal parts are formed.

The letters of a verb which always remain the same, are called *Radical* letters; as, *am* in *am-o*. The rest are called the *Termination*; as, *abamus* in *am-abamus*.

All the letters which come before *-āre, -ēre, -ĕre, or -īre*, of the infinitive, are radical letters. By putting these before the terminations, all the parts of any regular verb may be readily formed, except the compound tenses.

Signification of the Tenses in the various Modes.

The tenses formed from the present of the indicative or infinitive signify in general the continuance of an action or passion, or represent them as present at some particular time; the other tenses express an action or passion completed; but not always so absolutely, as entirely to exclude the continuance of the same action or passion; thus, *Amo*, I love, do love, or am loving; *amabam*, I loved, did love, or was loving, &c.

Amavi, I loved, did love, or have loved, *that is*, have done with loving, &c.

In like manner, in the passive voice, *Amor*, I am loved, I-am in loving, or in being loved, &c.

Past time in the passive voice is expressed several different ways, by means of the auxiliary verb *sum*, and the participle perfect; thus,

Indicative Mode.

Perfect. *Amatus sum*, I am, or have been loved, or oftener, I was loved.

Amatus fui, I have been loved, or I was loved.

Pluperfect. *Amatus eram*, I was or had been loved.

Amatus fueram, I had been loved.

Subjunctive Mode.

Perfect. *Amatus sim*, I may be or may have been loved.

Amatus fuerim, I may have been loved.

Pluperfect. *Amatus essem*, I might, could, would, or should be or have been loved.

Amatus fuisset, I might, could, would, or should have been loved; or I had been loved.

Future. *Amatus fuero*, I shall have been loved.

The verb *sum* is also employed to express future time in the indicative mode, both active and passive; thus,

Amaturus sum, I am about to love, I am to love, I am going to love, or I will love.

We chiefly use this form when some purpose or intention is signified.

Amatus ero, I shall be loved.

OBS. 1. The participles *amatus* and *amaturus* are put before the auxiliary verb, because we commonly find them so placed in the classics.

OBS. 2. In these compound tenses the learner should be taught to vary the participle like an adjective noun, according to the gender and number of the different substantives to which it is applied; thus, *amatus est*, he is or was loved, when applied to a man; *amata est*, she was loved, when applied to a woman; *amatum est*, it was loved, when applied to a thing; *amati sunt*, they were loved, when applied to men, &c. The connecting of syntax, so far as is necessary, with the inflection of nouns and verbs, seems to be the most proper method of teaching both.

OBS. 3. The past time and participle perfect in English are taken in different meanings, according to the different tenses in Latin which they are used to express. Thus, "I loved," when put for *amabam*, is taken in a sense different from what it has when put for *amavi*: so *amor*, and *amatus sum*, I am loved; *amabar*, and *amatus eram*, I was loved; *amer*, and *amatus sim*, &c. In the one, *loved* is taken in a present, in the other, in a past sense. This ambiguity arises from the defective nature of the English verb.

OBS. 4. The tenses of the subjunctive mode may be variously rendered according to their connexion with the other parts of a sentence. They are often expressed in English as the same tenses of the indicative, and sometimes one tense apparently put for another.

Thus, *Quasi intelligent, qualis sit*. As if they understood, what kind of person he is, Cic. *In facinus jurâsse putes*, You would think, &c. Ov. *Eloquar an sileam?* Shall I speak out, or be silent? *Nec vos arguerim, Teueri*, for *arguam*, Virg. *Si quid te fugerit, ego perierim*, for *peribo*, Ter. *Hunc ego si potui tantum sperare dolorem; Et preferre, soror, potero*: for *potuissem*, and *possem*, Virg. *Singula quid referam?* Why should I mention every thing? Id. *Prædiceres mihi*, You should have told me beforehand, Ter. *At tu dictis, Albane, maneres*, Ought to have stood to your word, Virg. *Citius crediderim*, I should sooner believe, Juv. *Hauserit ensis*, The sword would have destroyed, Virg. *Fuerint irati*, Grant or suppose they were angry. *Si id fecisset*, If he did or should do that, Cic. The same promiscuous use of the tenses seems also to take place sometimes in the indicative and infinitive; and the indicative to be put for the subjunctive; as, *Animus meminisse horret, luctuque refûgit*, for *refûgit*, Virg. *Fuerat melius*, for *fuisset*, Id. *Invidia dilapsa erat*, for *fuisset*, Sall. *Quamdiu in portum venis?* for *venisti*, Plaut. *Quam mox navigo Ephesum*, for *navigabo*, Id. *Tu si hic sis, aliter sentias*, Ter. for *esses* and *sentires*. Cato affirmat, *se vivo, illum non triumphare, for triumphaturum esse*, Cic. *Persuadet Cæstico, ut occuparet for occupet*, Cæs.

The perfect indicative is also frequently Englished like the imperfect; as, *nunquam amavi hunc hominem*, I never loved the man, Juv.; and after *antequam*, *postquam*, *ubi* or *ut* for *postquam*, is often Englished by *had*; as, *postquam venit*, after he had come; *ut me salutavit*, after he had saluted me.

OBS. 5. The future of the subjunctive and also of the indicative, is often rendered by the present of the subjunctive in English; as, *nisi hoc faciet*, or *fecerit*, unless he do this, Ter.

Obs. 6. Instead of the imperative we often use the present of the subjunctive; as, *valeas*, farewell; *huc venias*, come hither, &c. And also the future both of the indicative and subjunctive; as, *non occides*, do not kill; *ne feceris*, do not do it; *valebis*, *meque*, *amabis*, farewell, and love me. Cic.

The present time and the preter-imperfect of the infinitive are both expressed under the same form. All the varieties of past and future time are expressed by the other two tenses. But in order properly to exemplify the tenses of the infinitive mode, we must put an accusative, and some other verb, before each of them; thus,

Dicit me scribere; he says that I write, do write, or am writing.

Dixit me scribere; he said that I wrote, did write, or was writing.

Dicit me scripsisse; he says that I wrote, did write, or have written.

Dixit me se ipsisse; he said that I had written.

Dicit me scripturum esse; he says that I will write.

Dixit nos scripturos esse; he said that we would write.

Dicit nos scripturos fuisse; he says that we would have written.

Dicit literas scribi; he says that letters are written, writing, a-writing, or in writing.

Dixit literas scribi; he said that letters were writing, or written.

Dicit literas scriptas esse; he says that letters are or were written.

Dicit literas scriptas fuisse; he says that letters have been written.

Dixit literas scriptas fuisse; he said that letters had been written.

Dicit literas scriptum iri; he says that letters will be written.

Dixit literas scriptum iri; he said that letters would be written.

The future, *scriptum iri*, is made up of the former supine, and the infinitive passive of the verb *eo*, and therefore never admits of any variation.

The future of the infinitive is sometimes expressed by a *periphrasis* or circumlocution; thus, *scio fore vel futurum esse ut scribant*,—*ut literæ scribantur*; I know that they will write,—that letters will be written. *Scivi fore vel futurum esse ut scriberent*,—*ut literæ scriberentur*; I knew that they would write, &c. *Scivi futurum fuisse, ut literæ scriberentur*; I knew that letters would have been written. This form is necessary in verbs which want the supine.

Obs. 7. The different tenses, when joined with any expediency or necessity, are thus expressed:

Scribendum est mihi, puero, nobis, &c. literas; I, the boy, we, &c. must write letters.

Scribendum fuit mihi, puero, nobis, &c. I must have written, &c.

Scribendum erit mihi; I shall be obliged to write.

Scio scribendum esse mihi literas; I know that I must write letters.

—*Scribendum fuisse mihi*;—that I must have written.

Dixit scribendum fore mihi; he said that I should be obliged to write.

Or with the participle in *du*:

Literæ sunt scribendæ mihi, puero, hominibus, &c. or *a me, puero, &c.*; letters are to be, or must be written by me, by the boy, by men, &c. So *literæ scribendæ erunt, fuerunt, erunt, &c.* So *literæ scribendæ sint, essent, forent, &c.* *Scio literas scribendas esse*; I know that letters are to be, or must be written. *Scivi literas scribendas fuisse*; I knew that letters ought to have been, or must have been written.

Note. Most of the simple tenses of a verb in Latin may be expressed as in English, by the participle and the auxiliary verb *Sum*; as, *Sum amans*, for *amo*, I am loving; for *eram amans*, for *amābam*, &c. *Fui te carens*, for *carui*, Plaut. *Ut sis sciens*, for *ut scias*, Ter. Only the tenses in the active which come from the preterite, and those in the passive which come from the present, cannot be properly expressed in this manner; because the Latins have no participle perfect active, nor participle present passive. This manner of expression, however, does not often occur.

FORMATION OF THE PRETERITE AND SUPINE.

GENERAL RULES.

1. Compound and simple verbs form the preterite and supine in the same manner; as,

Voco, vōcāvi, vōcātum, to call: so, *revoco, revōcāvi, revōcātum*, to recall.

Exc. 1. When the simple verb in the preterite doubles the first syllable of the present, the compounds lose the former syllable; as, *pello, pēpūli*, to beat; *repello, rēpūli*, never *repēpūli*, to beat back. But the compounds of *do*, *sto*, *disco*, and *posco*, follow the general rule; thus, *ēdisco, ēdīdīci*, to get by heart; *dēposco, depōposci*, to demand; so, *præcurro, præcūcurri*; *rēpungo, rēpūpūgi*.

Exc. 2. Compounds which change *a* of the simple verb into *i*, have *e* in the supine; as, *facio, fēcī, factum*, to make; *perficio, perfēcī, perfectum*, to perfect. But compound verbs ending in *do* and *go*; also the compounds of *habeo*, *plāceo*, *sāpio*, *sālio*, and *stātuo*, observe the general rule.

3. Verbs which want the preterite, want likewise the supine.

SPECIAL RULES.

First Conjugation.

Verbs of the first conjugation have *āvi* in the preterite, and *ātum* in the supine; as,

<i>Creo, creāvi, creātum</i> , to create;	<i>pāro, pārāvi, pārātum</i> , to prepare.—So,	
<i>Adumbro, to shade, to delineate.</i>	<i>Fōdico, to pierce or push.</i>	<i>Oscito, & -or, to yawn, to be listless.</i>
<i>Ædifico, to build.</i>	<i>Grāve, to weigh down.</i>	<i>Pāco, to subdue.</i>
<i>Bajūlo, to carry.</i>	<i>Gusto, to taste.</i>	<i>Pio, to expiate.</i>
<i>Bāsio, to kiss.</i>	<i>Hāsīto, to doubt.</i>	<i>Quadro, to square.</i>
<i>Cælo, to carve.</i>	<i>Halo, to breathe.</i>	<i>Refrigero, to cool.</i>
<i>Calceo, to put on shoes, to shoe.</i>	<i>Jacto, to boast, to brag.</i>	<i>Refrigero, to cool.</i>
<i>Dēcīmo, to take the tenth part, or punish every tenth man.</i>	<i>Jento, to breakfast.</i>	<i>Rēgelo, to thaw.</i>
<i>Dēcollo, to loose a thing from the neck, to behead.</i>	<i>Inchoo, to begin.</i>	<i>Sāgīno, to fatten.</i>
<i>Dēcūrio, to divide soldiers into files or small companies, or citizens into wards.</i>	<i>Indāgo, to trace out.</i>	<i>Screo, to hawk or retch in spitting.</i>
<i>Ejūlo, to wail, to weep.</i>	<i>Jūbilo, to shout for joy.</i>	<i>Sībilo, to hiss.</i>
<i>Emancipo, to free a son from the power of his father.</i>	<i>Jurgo, & -or, to chide or scold.</i>	<i>Sūsurreo, to whisper.</i>
<i>Fermento, to leaven with dough, to ferment with.</i>	<i>Lānio, to tear.</i>	<i>Taxo, to rate, reprove.</i>
	<i>Lēgo, to send as an ambassador, to bequeath.</i>	<i>Tēmēro, to defile.</i>
	<i>Macto, to slay, to sacrifice.</i>	<i>Ulūlo, to howl.</i>
	<i>Māno, to flow.</i>	<i>Umbro, to shade.</i>
	<i>Meo, to go or pass.</i>	<i>Vācillo, to waver.</i>
	<i>Nauseo, to be sea-sick.</i>	<i>Vellīco, to pluck, twitch or pinch; to taunt or rail at.</i>
	<i>Nāvo, to act vigorously.</i>	<i>Vōro, to devour.</i>
	<i>Occo, to harrow.</i>	<i>Vulgo, to spread abroad.</i>
	<i>Odōro, to perfume.</i>	<i>&c.</i>

Exc. 1. *Do, dēdi, dātum, dāre*, to give; so, *venundo*, to sell; *circundo*, to surround; *pessundo*, to overthrow; *satisdo*, to give

surety; *venundēdi*, *venundātum*, *venundāre*, &c. The other compounds of *do* are of the third conjugation.

Sto, *stēti*, *statum*, to stand. Its compounds have *stīti*, *stītum*, and oftener *stātum*; as, *præsto*, *præstīti*, *præstītum*, or *præstātum*, to excel, to perform. So *ad-*, *ante-*, *con-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-sto*.

Exc. 2. *Lāvo*, *lāvi*, *lōtum*, *lautum*, *lāvātum*, to wash.

Pōto, *pōtavi*, *pōtum*, or *pōtātum*, to drink.

Jūvo, *jūvi*, *jūtum*, to help; fut. part. *juraturus*. So *adjūvo*.

Exc. 3. *Cūbo*, *cūbui*, *cūbītum*, to lie. So *ac-*, *ex-*, *oc-*, *re-cūbo*. The other compounds insert an *m*, and are of the third conjugation.

Dōmo, *dōmui*, *dōmītum*, to sound. So *ē-*, *per-dōmo*.

Sōno, *sōnui*, *sōnītum*, to sound. So *as-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-sōno*.

Tōno, *tōnui*, *tōnītum*, to thunder. So *at-*, *circum-*, *in-*, *superin-*, *rē-tōno*. Horace has *intōnatus*.

Vēto, *vētui*, *vētītum*, to forbid.

Crēpo, *crēpui*, *crēpītum*, to make a noise. So *con-*, *in-*, *per-*, *rē-crēpo*; *discrēpo*, has rather *discrēpāvi*.

Exc. 4. *Frīco*, *frīcui*, *frictum*, to rub. So *af-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *per-*, *re-frīco*. But some of these have also *atum*.

Sēco, *sēcui*, *sectum*, to cut. So *circum-*, *con-*, *dē-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *rē-*, *sub-sēco*.

Nēco, *nēcui*, or *nēcavi*, *nēcātum*, to kill. So *inter-*, *ē-nēco*: but these have oftener *ectum*; *enectum*, *internectum*.

Mīco, *mīcui*, — to glitter, to shine. So *inter-*, *prō-mīco*. *Emīco* has *ēmīcui*, *ēmīcātum*: *dimīco*, *dimīcāvi*, *dimīcātum*, rarely *dimīcui*, to fight.

Exc. 5. These three want both preterite and supine; *labo*, to fall or faint; *nexo*, to bind; and *plīco*, to fold.

Plīco, compounded with a noun, or with the prepositions, *re-*, *sub-*, has *āvi*, *ātum*; as, *duplīco*, *duplīcavi*, *duplīcatum*, to double. So *multi-*, *sup-*, *re-plīco*.

The other compounds of *plico* have either *āvi* and *ātum*, or *ui* and *itum*; as, *applīco*, *applīcui*, *applīcītum*, or *-āvi*, *-ātum*, to apply. So *im-*, *complico*. *Explico*, to unfold, has commonly *explicui*, *explicītum*; but when it signifies to explain or interpret, *explicāvi*, *explicātum*.

Second Conjugation.

Verbs of the second conjugation have *ui* and *itum*; as, *hābeo*, *habui*, *habītum*, to have. So,

Adhībeo, to admit, to use.

Posthabeo, to value less.

Rēdhībeo, to return, or take back a thing that was sold for some fault.

Dēbeo, to owe.

Mēreo, to deserve: Com-, de-, e-, per-, pro-mēreo, or mereor.

Mōneo, to admonish: Ad-, com-, prae-mōneo.

Terreo, to terrify: Abs-, con-, de-, ex-, per-terreo.

Dirībeo, to count over, to distribute. &c.

Neuter verbs which have *ui* want the supine; as, *āreo*, *ārui*, to be dry. So,

Aceo, & -sco, to be sour.

Cāneo, to be hoary.

Emīneo, to stand above others.

Flacceo, to wither.

Hūmeo, to be wet.

Immīneo, to hang over.

Līqueo, licui, to melt, to be clear.

Mūceo, to be mouldy.

Nīteo, to shine.

Putreo, to rot.

Ranceo, to be mouldy.

Stūpeo, to be amazed.

Tēpeo, to be warm.

Vīgeo, to be strong, &c.

But the neuter verbs which follow, together with their compounds, have the supine, and are regularly conjugated: *Vāleo*, to be in health; and *æqui-*, *con-*, *e-*, *in-*, *præ-valeo*: *Plāceo*, to please; and *com-*, *per-placeo*: *Displīceo*, to displease: *Cāreo*, to want: *Pāreo*, to appear, to obey; and *ap-*, *com-pāreo*: *Jāceo*, to lie; and *ad-*, *circum-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *præ-*, *sub-*, *super-jāceo*: *Caleo*, to be warm; and *con-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *re-cāleo*: *Nōceo*, to hurt: *Dōleo*, to be grieved; and *con-*, *de-*, *in-*, *per-dōleo*: *Cōāleo*, to grow together: *Līceo*, which in the active signifies to be lawful, to be valued; and what is singular, in the passive, to bid a price: *Lāteo*, to lurk, the compounds of which want the supine, *delīteo*, *inter-*, *sub-lateo*, as likewise do those of *Tāceo*, *-cui*, *-cītum*, to be silent, *con-*, *ob-*, *rē-tīceo*.

These three active verbs likewise want the supine: *Tīmeo*, *-ui*, to fear: *Sīleo*, *-ui*, to conceal: *Arceo*, *-cui*, to drive away: but the compounds of *arceo* have the supine; as, *exerceo*, *exercui*, *exercītum*, to exercise. So *coerceo*, to restrain.

Exc. 1. The following verbs in *BEO* and *CEO*:

Jūbeo, *jussi*, *jussum*, to order. So *fidē-jūbeo*, to bail, or be surety for.

Sorbeo, *sorbui*, *sorptum*, to sup. So *ab-sorbeo*, to suck in; *ex-*, *rē-sorbeo*. We also find *absorpsi*, *exsorpsi*: *Exsorptum*, *rēsorptum*, are not in use.

Dōceo, *dōcui*, *doctum*, to teach. So *ad-*, *con-*, *de-*, *e-*, *per-*, *sub-dōceo*.

Misceo, *miscui*, *mistum*, or *mixtum*, to mix. So *ad-*, *com-*, *im-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *rē-misceo*.

Mulceo, *mulsi*, *mulsum*, to stroke, to soothe. So *ad-*, *circum-*, *com-*, *de-*, *per-*, *rē-mulceo*.

Lūceo, *luxi*, — to shine. So *al-*, *circum-*, *col-*, *di-*, *ē-*, *il-*, *inter-*, *per-*, or *pel-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *trans-luceo*.

Exc. 2. The following verbs in *DEO* :

Prandeo, prandi, pransum, to dine.

Video, vidi, vīsum, to see. So *in-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *rē-* *video*.

Sēdeo, sēdi, sessum, to sit. So *as-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *pos-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *sub-sēdeo* : *Circumsēdeo*, or *circumsēdeo*, *supersēdeo*. But *dē-*, *dis-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *rē-*, *sub-sēdeo*, seem to want the supine.

Strīdeo, strīdi, — to make a noise.

Pendeo, pēpendi, pensum, to hang. So *de-*, *im-*, *pro-*, *super-* *pendeo*.

Mordeo, mōmordi, morsum, to bite. So *ad-*, *com-*, *de-*, *ob-*, *præ-*, *re-* *mordeo*.

Spondeo, spōpondi, sponsum, to promise. So *de-*, *re-* *spondeo*.

Tondeo, tōtondi, tonsum, to clip. So *at-*, *circum-*, *de-* *tondeo*.

But the compounds of these verbs do not double the first syllable ; thus, *dependi, remordi, respondi, attondi*, &c.

Rīdeo, rīsi, risum, to laugh. So *ar-*, *de-*, *ir-*, *sub-rīdeo*.

Suādeo, suāsi, suāsum, to advise. So *dis-*, *per-* *suādeo*.

Ardeo, arsi, arsum, to burn. So *ex-*, *in-*, *ab-* *ardeo*.

Exc. 3. The following verbs in *GEO* :

Augeo, auxi, auctum, to increase. So *ad-*, *ex-* *augeo*.

Lūgeo, luxi, — to mourn. So *e-*, *pro-*, *sub-lūgeo*.

Frīgeo, frixi, — to be cold. So *per-*, *re-* *frīgeo*.

Tergeo, tersi, tersum, to wipe. So *abs-*, *circum-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *per-* *tergeo*.

Mulgeo, mulsi, mulsum,¹ or *mulctum*, to milk. So *e-*, *im-* *mulgeo*.

Indulgeo, indulsi, indultum, to grant, to indulge.

Urgeo, ursi, — to press. So *ad-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *sub-*, *super-* *urgeo*.

Fulgeo, fulsi, — to shine. So *af-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *ef-*, *inter-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *super-* *fulgeo*.

Turgeo, tursi, to swell. Algeo, alsi, to be cold.

Exc. 4. The following verbs in *IEO* and *LEO* :

Vieo, viēvi, viētum, to bind with twigs, to hoop a vessel.

Cieo, (civi) citum, to stir up, to rouse. So *ac-*, *con-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *per-* *cieo*. *Civi* comes from *cio* of the fourth conjugation.

Fleo, flēvi, flētum, to weep. So *af-*, *de-* *fleo*.

Compleo, complevi, complētum, to fill. So the other compounds of *pleo* ; *de-*, *ex-*, *im-*, *adim-*, *op-*, *re-*, *sup-* *pleo*.

Dēleo, dēlēvi, dēlētum, to destroy, to blot out.

Oleo, to smell, has *ōlvi*, *ōlītum*. So likewise its compounds, which have a similar signification; *ob-*, *per-*, *red-*, *sub-ōleo*. But such of the compounds as have a different signification make *ēvi* and *ētum*; thus, *exōlēo*, *exōlēvi*, *exōlētum*, to fade. So *īnsōleo*, *-ēvi*, *-ētum*, or *-ītum*, to grow into use; *obsōleo*, *-ēvi*, *-ētum*, to grow out of use. *Abōleo*, to abolish, has *ābōlēvi*, *abōlītum*; and *ādōleo*, to grow up, to burn, *adōlēvi*, *adūltum*.

Exc. 5. Several verbs in *NEO*, *QUEO*, *REO*, and *SEO*.

Maneo, *mansi*, *mansum*, to stay. So *per-*, *rē-māneo*.

Neo, *nēvi*, *nētum*, to spin. So *per-neo*.

Tēneo, *tēnui*, *tentum*, to hold. So *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ob-*, *re-*, *sus-tīneo*. But *attīneo*, *pertīneo*, are not used in the supine; and seldom *abstīneo*.

Torqueo, *torsi*, *tortum*, to throw, to whirl, to twist. Thus, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *re-torqueo*.

Hæreo, *hæsi*, *hæsum*, to stick. Thus, *ad-*, *con-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *sub-hæreo*.

Torreo, *torrui*, *tostum*, to roast. So *extorreo*.

Censeo, *censui*, *censum*, to judge. So *ac-*, *per-*, *re-censeo*, to review; *succenseo*, to be angry.

Exc. 6. Verbs in *VEO* have *vi*, *tum*; as, *mōveo*, *mōvi*, *mōtum*, to move; *Fōveo*, *fovi*, *fōtum*, to cherish. So *con-*, *rē-foveo*. So *vōveo*, to vow or wish, and *dēvōveo*.

Faveo, to favor; *has fāvi*, *fautum*; and *cāveo*, to beware of; *cāvi*, *cautum*. So *præ-cāveo*.

Neuter verbs in *veo* want the supine; as, *pāveo*, *pāvi*, to be afraid.

Ferveo, to boil, to be hot, makes *ferbui*. So *de-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *per-*, *rē-ferveo*.

Connīveo, to wink, has *connīvi* and *connixi*.

Exc. 7. The following verbs want both preterite and supine: *Lacteo*, to suck milk; *liveo*, to be black and blue; *scāteo*, to abound; *renīdeo*, to shine; *mæreo*, to be sorrowful; *āreo*, to desire; *polleo*, to be able; *flāveo*, to be yellow; *denseo*, to grow thick; *glabreo*, to be smooth or bare. To these add *calveo*, to be bald; *cēveo*, to wag the tail, as dogs do when they fawn on one; *hēbeo*, to be dull; *ūveo*, to be moist; and some others.

Third Conjugation.

Verbs of the third conjugation form their preterite and supine variously, according to the termination of the present.

IO.

1. *Fācio*, *fēcī*, *factum*, to do, to make. So the compounds which retain a: *lucrī-*, *magnī-*, *ārē-*, *cālē-*, *mādē-*, *tēpē-*, *bēnē-*,

mālĕ-, sātis-fācio, &c. But those which change *a* into *i* have *ectum*; as, *afficio, affēci, affectum*. So *con-, de-, ef-, in-, inter-, of-, per-, prae-, pro-, re-, suf-ficio*. Note: *FACIO*, compounded with a noun, verb, or adverb, retains *a*; but when compounded with a preposition, it changes *a* into *i*.

Some compounds of *facio* are of the first conjugation; as, *Amplifīco, sacrifico, terrīfico, magnīfico; gratīficor*, to gratify, or do a good turn, to give up: *lūdīficor*, to mock.

Jācio, jēci, jactum, to throw. So *ab-, ad-, circum-, con-, de-, dis-, e-, in-, inter-, ob-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-, superin-, tra-jicio*; in the supine *-ectum*.

The compounds of *spĕcio* and *lācio*, which themselves are not used, have *exi* and *ectum*; as, *aspĕcio, asperi, aspectum*, to behold. So *circum-, con-, de-, dis-, in-, intro-, per-, pro-, re-, retro-, su-spicio*.

Allicio, allexi, allectum, to allure. So *il-, pel-licio*; but *ēlicio*, to draw out, has *ēlicui, ēlicitum*.

2. *Fōdio, fōdi, fossum*, to dig, to delve. So *ad-, circum-, con-, ef-, in-, inter-, per-, prae-, re-, suf-, trans-fōdio*.

Fūgio, fūgi, fūgitum, to fly. So *au-, (for ab-,) con-, de-, dif-, ef-, per-, pro-, re-, suf-, subter-, trans-fūgio*.

3. *Cāpio, cēpi, captum*, to take. So *ac-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, oc-, per-, prae-, re-, sus-cīpio*, (in the supine *-ceptum*;) and *ante-cāpio*.

Rāpio, rāpui, raptum, to pull or snatch. So *ab-, ar-, cor-, de-, di-, e-, prae-, pro-, sur-rīpio, -rīpui, -reptum*.

Sāpio, sāpui, — to favor, to be wise. So *consīpio*, to be well in one's wits; *desīpio*, to be foolish; *resīpio*, to come to one's wits.

Cūpio, cupīvi, cupitum, to desire. So *con-, dis-, per-cūpio*.

4. *Pārio, pēperi, paritum*, or *partum*, to bring forth a child, to get. Its compounds are of the fourth conjugation.

Quātio, quassi, quassum, to shake; but *quassi* is hardly used. Its compounds have *cussi, cussum*, as, *concūtio, concussi, concussum*. So *de-, dis-, ex-, in-, per-, re-, reper-, suc-, cūtio*.

UO has *ui, ūtum*; as,

Arguo, argui, argūtum, to show, to prove, or argue, to reprove. So *co-, red-arguo*, to confute. So,

Acuo, exācuo, to sharpen.

Batuo, vel battuo, to beat, to fight, to fence with foils.

Exuo, to put off clothes.

Sternuo, to sneeze.

Suo, to sew or stitch, to tack together:

Ascircum-, con-, dis-, in-, prae-, re-suo, &c.

Exc. 1. *Fluo, fluxi, fluxum*, to flow. So *af-, circum-, con-,*

de-, dif-, ef-, in-, inter-, per-, præter-, pro-, re-, subter-, super-, trans-fluo.

Struo, struxi, structum, to put in order, to build. So *ad-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, ob-, præ-, sub-, super-struo.*

Exc. 2. *Luo, lui, luitum*, to pay, to wash away, to suffer punishment. Its compounds have *ūtum*; as, *abluo, -ui, -ūtum*, to wash away, to purify. So *al-, circum-, col-, de-, di-, e-, inter-, per-, pol-, pro-, sub-luo.*

Ruo, rui, ruitum, to rush, to fall. Its compounds have *ūtum*; as, *diruo, dirui, dirūtum*, to overthrow. So *ē-, ob-, prō-, sub-ruo*. *Corruo*, and *irruo*, want the supine; as likewise do *mētuo*, to fear; *pluo*, to rain; *ingruo*, to assail; *congruo*, to agree; *respuo*, to reject, to slight; *annuo*, to assent; and the other compounds of the obsolete verb *nuo*; *abnuo*, to refuse; *innuo*, to nod or beckon with the hand; *rēnuo*, to deny; all which have *ui* in the preterite.

BO has *bi, bītum*; as,

Bibo, bibi, bibītum, to drink. So *ad-, com-, e-, im-, per-, præ-bibo.*

Exc. 1. *Scribo, scripsi, scriptum*, to write. So *ad-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, per-, post-, præ-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-, supra-, trans-scribo.*

Nūbo, nupsi, nuptum, to veil, to be married. So *de-, e-, in-, ob-nūbo*. Instead of *nupsi*, we often find *nupta sum*.

Exc. 2. The compounds of *cūbo* in this conjugation insert an *m* before the last syllable; as, *accumbo, accūbui, accūbūtum*, to recline at table. So *con-, de-, dis-, in-, oc-, pro-, re-, suc-, superin-cumbo, cūbui, -cūbūtum.*

These two verbs want the supine; *scābo, scābi*, to scratch; *lambo, lambi*, to lick. So *ad-, circum-, dē-, præ-lambo.*

Glūbo and *deglūbo*, to strip, to flay, want both preterite and supine.

CO.

1. *Dico, dixi, dictum*, to say. So *ab-, ad-, con-, contra-, e-, in-, inter-, præ-, pro-dīco.*

Dūco, duxi, ductum, to lead. So *ab-, ad-, circum-, con-, de-, di-, e-, in-, intro-, ob-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, se-, sub-, tra-, or trans-dūco.*

2. *Vinco, vīci, victum*, to overcome. So *con-, de-, e-, per-, rē-vinco.*

Parco, pēperci, parsum, seldom *parsi, parsitum*, to spare. So *comparco*, or *comperco*, which is seldom used.

Ico, īci, ictum, to strike.

SCO has *vi, tum*; as,

Nosco, nōvi, nōtum, to know; fut. part. *nosciturus*. So,

Dignosco, to distinguish; *ignosco*, to pardon; also inter-, per-, *præ-nosco*.

Cresco, -ēvi, -ētum, to grow: Con-, de-, ex-, re-, and without the supine, ac-, in-, per-, pro-, suc-, super-cresco.

Quiesco, -ēvi, -ētum, to rest: Ac-, con-, inter-, *rē-quiesco*.

Scisco, -īvi, -ītum, to ordain; ad-, or *ascisco*, to take, to associate; *concisco*, to vote, to commit; also *præ-, re-scisco*; *descisco*, to revolt.

Suesco, to be accustomed; As-, con-, de-, in-suesco, -ēvi, -ētum.

Exc. 1. *Agnosco, agnōvi, agnītum*, to own; *cognosco, cognōvi, cognītum*, to know. So *rēcognosco*, to review.

Pasco, pāvi, pastum, to feed. So *com-, dē-pasco*.

Exc. 2. The following verbs want the supine.

Disco, didīci, to learn. So *ad-, con-, de-, e-, per-, præ-disco, didīci*.

Posco, pōposci, to demand. So *ap-, dē-, ex-, rē-posco*.

Compesco, compescui, to stop, to restrain. So *dispesco, dispescui*, to separate.

Exc. 3. *Glisco*, to grow; *fatisco*, to be weary; and likewise inceptive verbs, want both preterite and supine: as, *aresco*, to become dry. But these verbs borrow the preterite and supine from their primitives; as, *ardesco*, to grow hot, *arsi, arsum*, from *ardeo*.

DO has *di, sum*; as,

Scando, scandi, scansum, to climb; *ēdo, ēdi, ēsum*, to eat. So,

Ascendo, to mount.

Descendo, to go down.

Con-, e-, ex-, in-, trans-cendo.

Accendo, to kindle: In-, succendo.

Cudo, to forge, to stamp,

or coin; Ex-, in-, per-

pro-, re-cūdo.

Defendo, to defend.

Offendo, to strike against, to offend, to find.

Mando, to chew; *Præ-, re-mando*.

Prehendo, to take hold of;

Ap-, com-, de-prehendo.

Exc. 1. *Divīdo, divīsi, divīsūm*, to divide.

Rādo, rāsi, rāsūm, to shave. So *ab-, circum-, cor-, de-, e-, inter-, præ-, sub-rādo*.

Claudo, clausi, clausūm, to close. So *circum-, con-, dis-, ex-, in-, inter-, præ-, re-, se-clūdo*.

Plaudo, plausi, plausūm, to clap hands for joy. So *ap-, circum-plaudo*: also *com-, dis-, ex-, sup-plōdo, -plosi-, -plosūm*.

Lūdo, lūsi, lūsūm, to play. So *ab-, al-, col-, de-, e-, il-, inter-, ob-, præ-, pro-, re-lūdo*.

Trūdo, trūsi, trūsūm, to thrust. So *abs-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, ob-, pro-, re-trūdo*.

Lædo, læsi, læsūm, to hurt. So *al-, col-, e-, il-līdo, -līsi, -līsūm*.

Rōdo, rōsi, rōsum, to gnaw. So *ab-*, *ar-*, *circum-*, *cor-*, *de-*, *e-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-rodo*.

Vādo, to go, wants both preterite and supine; but its compounds have *si*, *sum*; as, *invādo, invāsi, invāsum*, to invade, or fall upon. So *circum-*, *ē-*, *super-vādo*.

Cēdo, cessi, cessum, to yield. So *abs-*, *ac-*, *antē-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *rē-*, *retro-*, *se-*, *suc-cēdo*.

Exc. 2. *Pando, pandi, passum*, and sometimes *pansum*, to open, to spread. So *dis-*, *ex-*, *op-*, *præ-*, *rē-pando*.

Cōmēdo, comēdi, comēsum, or *comestum*, to eat. But *ēdo* itself, and the rest of its compounds, have always *ēsum*; as, *ad-*, *amb-*, *ex-*, *per-*, *sub-*, *super-ēdo*, *-ēdi*, *-ēsum*.

Fundo, fūdi, fūsum, to pour forth. So *af-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dif-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *of-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *suf-*, *super-*, *superin-*, *trans-fundo*.

Scindo, scīdi, scissum, to cut. So *as-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *ex-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *tran-scindo*.

Findo, fīdi, fissum, to cleave. So *con-*, *dif-*, *in-findo*.

Exc. 3. *Tundo, tūtūdi, tunsum*, and sometimes *tūsum*, to beat. The compounds have *tūdi*, *tūsum*; as, *contundo, contūdi, contūsum*, to bruise. So *ex-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *re-tundo*.

Cādo, cēcīdi, cāsum, to fall. The compounds want the supine; as, *ac-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *inter-*, *pro-*, *suc-cīdo*, *-cīdi*,—: except, *incīdio, incīdi, incāsum*, to fall in; *recīdo, recīdi, recāsum*, to fall back; and *occīdo, occīdi, occāsum*, to fall down.

Cædo, cēcīdi, cæsum, to cut, to kill. The compounds change *æ* into *i* long; as, *accīdo, accīdi, accīsum*, to cut about. So *abs-*, *con-*, *circum-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *oc-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *rē-*, *suc-cīdo*.

Tendo, tētēdi, tensum, or *tentum*, to stretch out. So *at-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *ob-*, *præ-*, *pro-tendo*, *-tēdi*, *-tensum* or *tentum*. But the compounds have rather *tentum*, except *ostendo*, to show; which has commonly *ostensum*.

Pēdo, pēpēdi, peditum, to break wind backward. So *op-pēdo*.

Pendo, pēpendi, pensum, to weigh. So *ap-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *im-*, *per-*, *re-*, *sus-pendo*, *-pendi*, *-pensum*.

Exc. 4. The compounds of *do* have *dīdi*, and *dītum*; as, *abdo, abdīdi, abdītum*, to hide. So *ad-*, *con-*, *dē-*, *dī-*, *ē-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *red-*, *sub-trado*: also *decon-*, *recon-do*, and *coad-*, *superad-do*; and *deper-*, *disper-do*. To these add *crēdo, crēdīdi, crēdītum*, to believe; *vendo, vendīdi, vendītum*, to sell. *Abscondo*, to hide, has *abscondi, abscondītum*, rarely *abscondīdi*.

Exc. 5. These three want the supine: *strīdo*, *strīdi*, to creak; *rūdo*, *rūdi*, to bray like an ass; and *sīdo*, *sīdi*, to sink down. The compounds of *sīdo* borrow the preterite and supine from *sēdeo*; as, *consīdo*, *consēdi*, *consessum*, to sit down. So *as-*, *circum-*, *de-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *rē-*, *sub-sīdo*.

Note. Several compounds of verbs in *do* and *deo*, in some respects resemble one another, and therefore should be carefully distinguished; as, *concīdo*, *concēdo*, *concīdo*; *consīdo* and *consideo*; *conscīdo*, *conscendo*, &c.

GO, GUO, has *xi*, *ctum*; as,

Rēgo, *rexī*, *rectum*, to rule, to govern; *dirīgo*, *-exī*, *-ectum*, to direct; *arīgo*, & *ērīgo*, *-exī*, *-ectum*, to raise up; *corrīgo*, to correct; *porrīgo*, to stretch out; *subrīgo*, to raise up. So,

Flīgo, to dash or beat upon: *Af*, *con-*, *Emungo*, to wipe, to cheat.

in-flīgo; also *proflīgo*, to rout, of the *Stingo*, or *Stinguo*, to dash out, to extin-

first conj. *guish*: *Di-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *præ-*, *re-*

Līgo, to lick: *de-*, *ē-līgo*, & *pollīgo*, *stīnguo*.

to anoint a dead body.

Mungo, to wipe, or clean the nose.

Ungo, or *Unguo*, to anoint: *Ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *super-ungo*, &c.

Exc. 1. *Surgo*, to rise, has *surrexī*, *surrectum*. So *as-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *re-surgo*.

Pergo, *porrexī*, *perrectum*, to go forward.

Stringo, *strinxī*, *strictum*, to bind, to strain, to lop. So *ad-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *sub-stringo*.

Fīngo, *finxī*, *fictum*, to feign. So *af-*, *con-*, *ef-*, *re-fīngo*.

Pīngo, *pinxī*, *pictum*, to paint. So *ap-*, *de-pīngo*.

Exc. 2. *Frango*, *frēgi*, *fractum*, to break. So *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *suf-frīngo*, *-frēgi*, *-fractum*.

Ago, *ēgi*, *actum*, to do, to drive. So *ab-*, *ad-*, *ex-*, *red-*, *sub-*, *trans-*, *transad-īgo* and *cīrcum-*, *per-āgo*: *cōgo*, for *coāgo*, *coēgi*, *coactum*, to bring together, to force.

These three compounds of *āgo* want the supine: *sātāgo*, *satēgi*, to be busy about a thing; *prōdīgo*, *prodēgi*, to lavish, or spend riotously; *dēgo*, for *deāgo*; *dēgi*, to live or dwell. *Ambīgo*, to doubt, to dispute, also wants the preterite.

Lēgo, *lēgi*, *lectum*, to gather, to read. So *al-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *sub-lēgo*: also *col-*, *de-*, *e-*, *recol-*, *se-līgo*, which change *e* into *i*.

Dilīgo, to love, has *dilēxi*, *dilectum*. So *neglīgo*, to neglect; and *intellīgo*, to understand; but *neglīgo* has sometimes *neglēgi*, Sall. Jug. 40.

Exc. 3. *Tango*, *tētīgi*, *tactum*, to touch. So *at-*, *con-*, *ob-*, *per-tingo*; thus, *attingo*, *attīgi*, *attactum*, &c.

Pungo, *pūpūgi*, *punctum*, to prick or sting. The compounds

have *punxi*; as, *compungo, compunxi, compunctum*. So *dis-, ex-, inter-pungo*: but *repungo* has *repunxi*, or *repūpūgi*.

Pango, panxi, pactum, to fix, to drive in, to compose; or *pēpēgi*, which comes from the obsolete verb *pago*, to bargain, for which we use *paciscor*. The compounds of *pango* have *pēgi*; as, *compingo, compēgi, compactum*, to put together. So *im-, ob-, sup-pingo*.

Exc. 4. *Spargo, sparsi, sparsum*, to spread. So *ad-, circum-, con-, di-, in-, inter-, per-, pro-, re-spergo*.

Mergo, mersi, mersum, to dip or plunge. So *de-, e-, im-, sub-mergo*.

Tergo, tersi, tersum, to wipe or clean. So *abs-, de-, ex-, per-tergo*.

Figo, fixi, fixum, to fix or fasten. So *af-, con-, de-, in-, of-, per-, præ-, re-, suf-, trans-figo*.

Frigo, frixi, frixum, or frictum, to fry.

Exc. 5. These three want the supine: *clango, clanxi*, to sound a trumpet; *ningo*, or *ninguo, ninxi*, to snow; *ango, anxi*, to vex. *Vergo*, to incline, or lie outwards, wants both preterite and supine. So *e-, de-, in-vergo*.

HO, JO.

1. *Trāho, traxi, tractum*, to draw. So *abs-, at-, circum-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, per-, pro-, re-, sub-trāho*.

Veho, vaxi, vectum, to carry. So *a-, ad-, circum-, con-, di-, e-, in-, per-, præ-, præter-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-, trans-vēho*.

2. *Mejo, or mingo, minxi, mictum*, to make water. So *im-mejo*.

LO.

1. *Cōlo, cōlui, cultum*, to adorn, to inhabit, to honor, to till. So *ac-, circum-, ex-, in-, per-, præ-, re-cōlo*: and likewise *occūlo, occului, occultum*, to hide.

Consūlo, consului, consultum, to advise or consult.

Alo, ālui, alitum, or contracted, *altum*, to nourish.

Mōlo, molui, molitum, to grind. So *com-, e-, per-mōlo*. The compounds of *cello*, which itself is not in use, want the supine; as, *ante-, ex-, præ-cello, -cellui*, to excel. *Percello*, to strike, to astonish, has *percūli, perculsum*.

Pello, pēpūli, pulsum, to thrust. So *ap-, as-, com-, de-, dis-, ex-, im-, per-, pro-, re-pello; appūli, appulsum, &c.*

Fallo, fēfelli, falsum, to deceive. But *rēfello, refelli*, to confute, wants the supine.

3. *Vello, velli, or vulsi, vulsum*, to pull or pinch. So, *a-,*

con-, e-, inter-, præ-, re-vello. But *de-, di-, per-vello*, have rather *velli*.

Sallo, salli, salsum, to salt. *Psallo, psalli*, — to play on a musical instrument, wants the supine.

Tollo, to lift up, to take away, in a manner peculiar to itself, makes *sustuli*, and *sublatum*; *extollo, extūli, elātum*; but *attollo*, to take up, has neither preterite nor supine.

MO has *ui, ūtum*; as,

Gēmo, gēmui, gemitum, to groan. So *ad-, or ag-, circum-, con-, in-, re-gēmo*.

Frēmo, fremui, fremitum, to rage or roar, to make a great noise. So *af-, circum-, con-, in-, per-frēmo*.

Vōmo, ēvōmo, -ui, -itum, to vomit, or spew, to cast up.

Exc. 1. *Dēmo, dempsi, demptum*, to take away.

Promo, prompsi, promptum, to bring out. So *de-, ex-prōmo*.

Sūmo, sumpsi, sumptum, to take. So *ab-, as-, con-, de-, in-, præ-, re-, tran-sumo*.

Cōmo, compsi, comptum, to deck or dress.

These verbs are also used without the *p*; as, *demsi, demtum*; *sumsi, sumtum*, &c.

Exc. 2. *Emo, ēmi, emptum or entum*, to buy. So *ad-, dir-, ex-, inter-, per-, red-īmo* and *co-ēmo, -emi, emptum or entum*.

Prēmo, pressi, pressum, to press. So *ap-, com-, de-, ex-, im-, op-, per-, re-, sup-prīmo*.

Trēmo, trēmui, to tremble, to quake for fear, wants the supine. So *at-, circum-, con-, in-trēmo*.

NO.

1. *Pōno, posui, pōsitum*, to put, or place. So *ap-, ante-, circum-, com-, de-, dis-, ex-, im-, inter-, ob-, post-, præ-, pro-, re-, se-, sup-, super-, superim-, trans-pōno*.

Gigno, gēnui, gēnitum, to beget. So *con-, e-, in-, per-, pro-, re-gigno*.

Cāno, cēcini, cantum, to sing. But the compounds have *cīnui* and *centum*; as, *accīno, accīnui, accentum*, to sing in concert. So *con-, in-, præ-, suc-cīno*; *oc-cīno* and *oc-cāno*; *re-cīno* and *re-cāno*. But *occanui, récanui*, are not in use.

Temno, to despise, wants both preterite and supine; but its compound *contemno*, to despise, to scorn, has *contempsi, contemptum*; or without the *p*, *contemsi, contemtum*.

2. *Sperno, sprēvi, sprētum*, to disdain or slight. So *desperno*.

Sterno, strāvi, strātum, to lay flat, to strow. So *ad-, con-, in-, præ-, pro-, sub-sterno*.

Sino, sivi, or sii, sītum, to permit. So *desino, desivi, of-tener, desii, desītum*, to leave off.

Līno, līvi, or lēvi, lītum, to anoint or daub. So *al-, circum-, col-, de-, il-, inter-, ob-, per-, præ-, re-, sub-, subter-, super-, superil-līno*.

Cerno, crēvi, seldom crētum, to see, to decree, to enter upon an inheritance. So *de-, dis-, ex-, in-, se-cerno*.

PO, QUO.

Verbs in *po* have *psi* and *ptum*; as, *Carpo, carpsi, carptum*, to pluck or pull, to crop, to blame. So *con-, de-, dis-, ex-, præ-, -cerpo, -cerpsi, -cerptum*.

Clēpo, -psi, -ptum, to steal.

Rēpo, to creep: *Ad-, v. ar-, cor-, de-, di-, e-, ir-, intro-, ob-, per-, pro-, sub-rēpo, -psi, -ptum*.

Scalpo, to scratch, or engrave. So *cir-cum-, ex-scalpo*.

Sculpo, to grave or carve. So *ex-, in-sculpo*.

Serpo, to creep as a serpent.

Exc. 1. *Strēpo, strēpui, strēpītum*, to make a noise. So *ad-, circum-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-strepo*.

Exc. 2. *Rumpo, rūpi, ruptum*, to break. So *ab-, cor-, di-, e-, inter-, intro-, ir-, ob-, per-, præ-, pro-rumpo*.

There are only two simple verbs ending in *QUO*, viz.

Cōquo, coxi, cōctum, to boil. So *con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, per-, re-cōquo*.

Līnquo, līqui, —, to leave. The compounds have *lictum*; as, *rēlinquo, reliqui, relictum*, to forsake. So *de-, and dērē-līnquo*.

RO.

1. *Quæro* makes *quæsivi, quæsītum*, to seek. So *ac-, an-, con-, dis-, ex-, per-, re-qui-ro, -quisivi, -quisītum*.

Tēro, trīvi, trītum, to wear, to bruise. So *at-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, sub-tēro*.

Verro, verri, versum, to sweep, brush, or make clean. So *ā-, con-, dē-, ē-, præ-, rē-verro*.

Uro, ussi, ustum, to burn. So *ād-, amb-, comb-, de-, ex-, in-, pēr-, sub-ūro*.

Gēro, gessi, gestum, to carry. So *ag-, con-, dī-, in-, prō-, rē-, sug-gēro*.

2. *Curro, cūcurri, cursum*, to run. So *ac-, con-, dē-, dis-, ex-, in-, oc-, per-, præ-, prō-curro*, which sometimes double the

first syllable, and sometimes not; as, *accurri*, or *accūcurri*, &c. *Circum-*, *rě-*, *suc-*, *trans-curro*, hardly ever redouble the first syllable.

3. *Sěro*, *sěvi*, *sātum*, to sow. The compounds which signify *planting* or *sowing*, have *sěvi*, *sītum*; as, *consěro*, *consěvi*, *consītum*, to plant together. So *as-*, *circum-*, *dě-*, *dis-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *pro-*, *rě-*, *sub-*, *tran-sěro*.

Sěro, —, to knit, had anciently *sěrui*, *sertum*, which its compounds still retain; as, *assěro*, *asserui*, *assertum*, to claim. So *con-*, *circum-*, *dě-*, *dis-*, *edis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-sěro*.

4. *Fűro*, to be mad, wants both preterite and supine.

SO has *sīvi*, *sītum*; as,

Arcesso, *arcessīvi*, *arcessītum*, to call, or send for. So *cāpesso*, to take; *fācesso*, to do, to go away; *lācesso*, to provoke.

Exc. 1. *Vīso*, *vīsi*, —, to go to see, to visit. So *in-*, *rě-vīso*. *Incesso*, *incessi*, —, to attack, to seize.

Exc. 2. *Depso*, *depsui*, *depstum*, to knead. So *con-*, *per-depso*.

Pinso, *pinsui*, or *pinsi*, *pinsum*, *pistum*, or *pinsītum*, to bake.

TO.

1. *Flecto* has *flexi*, *flexum*, to bow. So *circum-*, *de-*, *in-*, *re-*, *retro-flecto*.

Plecto, *plexi*, and *plexui*, *plexum*, to plait. So *implecto*.

Necto, *nexi*, and *nexui*, *nexum*, to tie or knit. So *ad-*, *vel an-*, *con-*, *circum-*, *in-*, *sub-necto*.

Pecto, *pexi*, and *pexui*, *pexum*, to dress, or comb. So *de-*, *ex-*, *re-pecto*.

2. *Měto*, *messui*, *messum*, to reap, mow, or cut down. So *de-*, *e-*, *præ-měto*.

3. *Pěto*, *pětivi*, *pětītum*, to seek, to pursue. So *ap-*, *com-*, *ex-*, *im-*, *op-*, *re-*, *sup-pěto*.

Mitto, *mīsi*, *missum*, to send. So *a-*, *ad-*, *com-*, *circum-*, *dě-*, *dī-*, *ě-*, *im-*, *inter-*, *intro-*, *ō-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *præter-*, *prō-*, *rě-*, *sub-*, *super-*, *trans-mitto*.

Verto, *verti*, *versum*, to turn. So *a-*, *ad-*, *animad-*, *ante-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *di-*, *en-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *præter-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *trans-vertō*.

Sterto, *stertui*, —, to snore. So *de-sterto*.

4. *Sisto*, an active verb, to stop, has *stīti*, *stātum*: but *sisto*, a neuter verb, to stand still, has *stēti*, *stātum*, like *sto*. The compounds have *stīti*, and *stītum*; as, *assisto*, *astīti*, *astītum*, to stand by. So *ab-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *re-*, *sub-sisto*. But the compounds are seldom used in the supine.

VO, XO.

There are three verbs in *vo*, which are thus conjugated:

1. *Vivo*, *vixi*, *victum*, to live. So *ad-*, *con-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *super-vivo*.

Solvo, *solvi*, *sōlūtum*, to loose. So *absolvo*, to acquit, *dis-*, *ex-*, *per-*, *re-solvo*.

Volvo, *volvi*, *vōlūtum*, to roll. So *ad-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *e-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *prō-*, *rē-*, *sub-volvo*.

2. *Texo*, to weave, (the only verb of this conjugation ending in *xo*) has *texui*, *textum*. So *at-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *sub-texo*.

Fourth Conjugation.

Verbs of the fourth conjugation make the preterite in *īvi*, and the supine in *ītum*; as,

Mūnio, *mūnīvi*, *mūnītum*, to fortify. So,

<i>Balbūtio</i> , to stammer, to lisp, to stutter.	<i>Irrētio</i> , to ensnare.	<i>Rūgio</i> , to roar like a lion.
<i>Crōcio</i> , to croak.	<i>Ligūrio</i> , to eat deliciously, to slabber up,	<i>Sāgio</i> , <i>præsāgio</i> , to guess, to foresee.
<i>Effūtio</i> , to babble or blab out.	<i>Lippio</i> , to be dim-sighted.	<i>Scāturio</i> , to gush out.
<i>Glūtio</i> , to swallow.	<i>Mūtio</i> , to mutter.	<i>Tussio</i> , to cough.
<i>Hinnio</i> , to neigh.	<i>Pāvio</i> , to beat.	<i>Vāgio</i> , to cry or squeal as a child, &c.
	<i>Pīpio</i> , to peep as a chicken.	

Exc. 1. *Singultio*, *singultīvi*, *singultum*, to sob.

Sēpēlio, *sepēlīvi*, *sepultum*, to bury.

Vēnio, *vēni*, *ventum*, to come. So *ad-*, *ante-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *contra-*, *de-*, *e-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *intro-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *post-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *super-vēnio*.

Vēneo, *vēni*, —, to be sold.

Salio, *sālui*, and *sālīi*, *saltum*, to leap. The compounds have commonly *sīlui*, sometimes *sīlii*, or *sīlīvi* and *sultum*; as, *transīlio*, *transīlui*, *transīlii*, and *transīlīvi*, *transultum*, to leap over. So, *ab-*, *as-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *super-sīlio*.

Exc. 2. *Amīcio* has *amīcui*, *amictum*, seldom *amixi*, to cover or clothe.

Vincio, *vinxi*, *vinctum*, to tie. So *circum-*, *de-*, *e-*, *re-vincio*.

Sancio, sanxi, sanctum; and *sancīvi, sancitum*, to establish or ratify.

Exc. 3. *Cambio, campsi, campsum*, to change money.

Sēpio, sepsi, septum, to hedge or inclose. So *circum-, dis-, inter-, ob-, præ-sēpio*.

Haurio, hausi, haustum, rarely *hausum*, to draw out, to empty, to drink. So *de-, ex-haurio*.

Sentio, sensi, sensum, to feel, to perceive, to think. So *as-, con-, dis-, per-, præ-, sub-sentio*.

Raucio, rausi, rausum, to be hoarse.

Exc. 4. *Sarcio, sarsi, sartum*, to mend or repair. So *ex-, re-sarcio*.

Farcio, farsī, fartum, to cram. So *con-fercio, ef-fercio*, or *ef-farcio*; *in-fercio*, or *in-farcio*; *re-fercio*.

Fulcio, fulsi, fultum, to prop or uphold. So *con-, ef-, in-, per-, suf-fulcio*.

Exc. 5. The compounds of *pārio*, have *pērui, pertum*; as, *āpērio, apērui, apertum*, to open. So *ōpērio*, to shut, to cover. But *compērio* has *compēri, compertum*, to know a thing for certain. *Rēpērio, repēri, repertum*, to find.

Exc. 6. The following verbs want the supine. *Cēcūtio, cēcūtīvi*, to be dim-sighted. *Gestio, gestīvi*, to show one's joy by the gesture of his body. *Glōcio, glōcīvi*, to cluck or cackle as a hen. *Dementio, dementīvi*, to be mad. *Ineptio, ineptīvi*, to play the fool. *Prōsīlio, prosīlui*, to leap forth. *Fērōcio, ferōcīvi*, to be fierce.

Ferio, to strike, wants both preterite and supine. So *rē-fērio*, to strike again.

DEPONENT AND COMMON VERBS.

A deponent verb is that which, under a passive form, has an active or neuter signification; as, *lōquor*, I speak; *mōrior*, I die.

A common verb, under a passive form, has either an active or passive signification; as, *crīmīnor*, I accuse, or I am accused.

Most deponent verbs of old, were the same with common verbs. They are called *Deponent* because they have laid aside the passive sense.

Deponent and common verbs form the participle perfect and other parts, in the same manner as if they had the active voice; thus, *Lātor, latātus, latāri*, to rejoice; *vēreor, verītus, vērēri*, to fear; *fungor, functus, fungi*, to discharge an office; *pōtior, pōtitus, potīri*, to enjoy, to be master of.

Deponent verbs are Englished like active, but varied like passive verbs, except so far as they assume parts of the active voice; thus,

First Conjugation.

Præs. Indic.

Lætor,

Perfect Part.

lætatus,

Pres. Infinit.

lætari.

Indicative Mode.

Present.

- Sing.* 1. Ego lætor,
2. Tu lætāres *vel* -āre,
3. Ille lætātūr,

*I rejoice.
Thou rejoicest.
He rejoices.*

- Plur.* 1. Nos lētāmur,
2. Vos lētāmini,
3. Illi lējāntur,

*We rejoice.
Ye rejoice.
They rejoice.*

Imperfect.

- Sing.* 1. Ego lētābar,
2. Tu lētābāris *vel* -bāre,
3. Ille lētābātūr,

*I rejoiced, or did rejoice.
Thou rejoicedst.
He did rejoice.*

- Plur.* 1. Nos lētābāmur,
2. Vos lētābāmini,
3. Illi lētābāntur,

*We rejoiced.
Ye rejoiced.
They rejoiced.*

Perfect.

- Sing.* 1. Ego lētātus sum *vel* fui,*
2. Tu lētātus es *vel* fuisti,
3. Ille lētātus est *vel* fuit,

*I have rejoiced.
Thou hast rejoiced.
He has rejoiced.*

- Plur.* 1. Nos lētātisumus *vel* fuimus,
2. Vos lētāti estis *vel* fuistis,
3. Illi lētāti sunt, fuerunt *vel* fuēre,

*We have rejoiced.
Ye have rejoiced.
They have rejoiced.*

Pluperfect.

- Sing.* 1. Ego lētātus eram *vel* fuēram,
2. Tu lētātus eras, *vel* fueras,
3. Ille lētātus erat *vel* fuerat,

*I had rejoiced.
Thou hadst rejoiced.
He had rejoiced.*

- Plur.* 1. Nos lētāti eramus *vel* fueramus,
2. Vos lētāti eratis *vel* fueratis,
3. Illi lētāti erant *vel* fuerant,

*We had rejoiced.
Ye had rejoiced.
They had rejoiced.*

Future.

- Sing.* 1. Ego lētābor,
2. Tu lētābēris *vel* -abēre,
3. Ille lētābitur,

*I shall or will rejoice.
Thou shalt rejoice.
He shall rejoice.*

- Plur.* 1. Nos lētābimur,
2. Vos lētābimini,
3. Illi lētābuntur,

*We shall rejoice.
Ye shall rejoice.
They shall rejoice.*

Lætātūrus sum, I am about to rejoice, or I am to rejoice, &c.

Subjunctive Mode.

Present.

- Sing.* 1. Ego læter,
2. Tu lætēris *vel* -ēre,
3. Ille lætetur,

*I may rejoice.
Thou mayest rejoice.
He may rejoice.*

- Plur.* 1. Nos lētēmur,
2. Vos lētēmini,
3. Illi lētēntur,

*We may rejoice.
Ye may rejoice.
They may rejoice.*

* *Fui, fueram, &c.* are seldom joined to the particles of deponent verbs; and not so often to those of passive verbs, as *sum, eram, &c.*

Imperfect.

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Ego lætārer,	<i>I might rejoice.</i>
2. Tu lætārēris vel -arēre,	<i>Thou mightest rejoice.</i>
3. Ille lætārētur,	<i>He might rejoice.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Nos lætārēmur,	<i>We might rejoice.</i>
2. Vos lætārēmini,	<i>Ye might rejoice.</i>
3. Illi lætārēntur,	<i>They might rejoice.</i>

Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Ego lætātus sim vel fuerim,	<i>I may have rejoiced.</i>
2. Tu lætātus sis vel fueris,	<i>Thou mayest have rejoiced.</i>
3. Ille lætātus sit vel fuerit,	<i>He may have rejoiced.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Nos lætati simus vel fuerimus,	<i>We may have rejoiced.</i>
2. Vos lætati sitis vel fueritis,	<i>Ye may have rejoiced.</i>
3. Illi lætati sint vel fuerint,	<i>They may have rejoiced.</i>

Pluperfect.

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Ego lætātus essem vel fuisset,	<i>I might have rejoiced.</i>
2. Tu lætātus esses vel fuisses,	<i>Thou mightest have rejoiced.</i>
3. Ille lætātus esset vel fuisset,	<i>He might have rejoiced.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Nos lætāti essemus vel fuissetus,	<i>We might have rejoiced.</i>
2. Vos lætāti essetis vel fuissetis,	<i>Ye might have rejoiced.</i>
3. Illi lætāti essent vel fuissent,	<i>They might have rejoiced.</i>

Future.

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Ego lætātus fuero,	<i>I shall or will have rejoiced.</i>
2. Tu lætātus fueris,	<i>Thou shalt have rejoiced.</i>
3. Ille lætātus fuerit,	<i>He shall have rejoiced.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Nos lætati fuerimus,	<i>We shall have rejoiced.</i>
2. Vos lætati fueritis,	<i>Ye shall have rejoiced.</i>
3. Illi lætati fuerint,	<i>They shall have rejoiced.</i>

Imperative.

<i>Sing.</i> 2. Lætāre vel lætātor tu,	<i>Rejoice thou.</i>
3. Lætātor ille,	<i>Let him rejoice.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 2. Lætāmini vos,	<i>Rejoice ye.</i>
3. Lætantor illi,	<i>Let them rejoice.</i>

Infinitive.

<i>Pres.</i> Lætari, to rejoice.
<i>Perf.</i> Lætatus esse vel fuisse, to have rejoiced.
<i>Fut.</i> Lætaturus esse, to be about to rejoice.
Lætaturus fuisse, to have been about to rejoice.

Participles.

<i>Pres.</i> Lætans, rejoicing.
<i>Perf.</i> Lætatus, having rejoiced.
<i>Fut.</i> Lætaturus, about to rejoice.
Lætandus, to be rejoiced at.

Deponent verbs have usually the gerunds and supines: thus, *venor*, to hunt, makes—

Gerunds.			Supines.
<i>Nom.</i> Venāndum, hunting.	<i>Acc.</i> Venandum, hunting.	1. Venātum, to hunt.	
<i>Gen.</i> Venandi, of hunting.	<i>Abl.</i> Venando, with or by hunting.	2. Venātū, to hunt or to be hunted.	
<i>Dat.</i> Venando, to hunting.			

In like manner conjugate in the First Conjugation,

Abōmīnor, to abhor.	Aprīcor, to bask in the sun.	Caupōnor, to huckster, to retail.
Æmulor, to vie with, to envy.	Bacchor, to rage, to revel, to riot.	Cōmessor, to revel.

Dētestor, to abhor.	Imāginor, to conceive.	Palpor, or -o, to stroke or soothe.
Dōminor, to rule.	Inficior, to deny.	Rēcōrdor, to remember.
Epūlor, to feast.	Jacūlor, to dart.	Rīxor, to scold or brawl.
Execror, to curse.	Jōcor, to jest.	Scrūtōr, to search.
Fāmūlor, to serve.	Lucror, to gain.	Suāvior, to kiss.
Fērior, to keep holy-day.	Luctor, to wrestle.	Tergiversor, to boggle, to put off.
Frustror, to disappoint.	Mēdicor, to cure.	Tūtōr, to defend.
Fūrōr, to steal.	Misēror, to pity.	Vādor, to give bail, to force to give bail.
Glōrior, to boast.	Nūgor, to trifle.	Vēneror, to worship.
Grāvōr, to grudge.	Odōror, to smell.	Vēnor, to hunt, &c.
Hāriōlor, to conjecture.	Oscūlor, to kiss.	
Helluor, to gulf or gorge, to waste.	Pālor, to stroll or straggle.	

SYNOPSIS OF THE MODES AND TENSES OF DEPONENT EXAMPLES
IN THE OTHER CONJUGATIONS.

Second Conjugation.

	Pres. Indic.	Perf. Part.	Pres. Infin.	
	Mēreor,	meritus,	mereri,	To gain.
	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Imperative.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
Pres.	mēreor.	merēar.	merērē vel merētōr.	Pres. merēns.
Imp.	merēbar.	merērer.	<i>Infinitive.</i>	Perf. meritūs.
Perf.	meritus sum vel fui.	meritūs sim vel fuerim.	Pres. merērī.	Fut. meritūrus. merēndus.
Pluperf.	meritus eram vel fueram.	meritūs essem vel fuisset.	Perf. meritūs esse vel fuisset.	<i>Gerunds.</i>
Fut.	merēbor.	meritus fūero.	Fut. meritūrus esse vel fuisset.	merēndum, -di, -do. <i>Supines.</i>
				1. meritūm.
				2. meritū.

Third Conjugation.

	Pres. Indic.	Perf. Part.	Pres. Infin.	
	Querōr,	questus,	queri,	To complain.
	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Imperative.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
Pres.	querōr.	querār.	querēre vel querītōr.	Pres. querens.
Imp.	querēbar.	querērer.	<i>Infinitive.</i>	Perf. questūs.
Perf.	questus sum vel fui.	questūs sim vel fuerim.	Pres. querī.	Fut. questūrus. querendus.
Pluperf.	questus eram vel fueram.	questus essem vel fuisset.	Perf. questus esse vel fuisset.	<i>Gerunds.</i>
Fut.	querār.	questus fuero.	Fut. questūrus esse vel fuisset.	querendum, -di, -do. <i>Supines.</i>
				1. quēstum.
				2. questū.

Fourth Conjugation.

	Pres. Indic.	Perf. Part.	Pres. Infin.	
	Largīōr,	largītus,	largīri,	To bestow.
	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Imperative.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
Pres.	largīōr.	largīar.	largīrē vel largītōr.	Pres. largiēns.
Imp.	largiēbar.	largīrer.	<i>Infinitive.</i>	Perf. largītus.
Perf.	largītus sum vel fui.	largītus sim vel fuerim.	Pres. largīrī.	Fut. largītūrus. largiēndus.
Pluperf.	largītus eram vel fueram.	largītus essem vel fuisset.	Perf. largītus esse vel fuisset.	<i>Gerunds.</i>
Fut.	largiār.	largītus fuero.	Fut. largītūrus esse vel fuisset.	largiēndum, -di, -do. <i>Supines.</i>
				1. largītum.
				2. largītū.

In the Second Conjugation.

Měreor, mēritus, to deserve.

Tueor, tuītus, or tutus, to defend.

Pollicēor, pollicītus, to promise.

Līceor, līcītus, to bid at an auction.

In the Third Conjugation.

Amplector, amplexus; and complector, complexus, to embrace.

Revertor, reversus, to return.

In the Fourth Conjugation.

Blandior, to soothe, to flatter.

Mentior, to lie.

Mōlior, to attempt something difficult.

Partior, to divide.

Sortior, to draw or cast lots.

Largior, to give liberally.

Part. perf. Blandītus, mentītus, molītus, partītus, sortītus, largītus.

There are no exceptions in the *First Conjugation*.EXCEPTIONS in the *Second Conjugation*.

Reor, rātus, to think.

Mīsēreor, misertus, or not contracted, miserītus, to pity.

Fāteor, fassus, to confess. The compounds of fāteor have fessus; as, prōfīteor, professus, to profess. So confīteor, to confess, to own or acknowledge.

EXCEPTIONS in the *Third Conjugation*.

Lābor, lapsus, to slide. So al-, col-, de-, di-, e-, il-, inter-, per-, prāter-, pro-, re-, sub-, subter-, super-, trans-lābor.

Ulciscor, ultus, to revenge.

Utor, ūsus, to use. So ab-, de-ūtor.

Lōquor, lōquūtus, or locūtus, to speak. So al-, col-, circum-, e-, inter-, ob-, prā-, pro-lōquor.

Sēquor, sēquūtus or sēcūtus, to follow. So as-, con-, ex-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, re-, sub-sēquor.

Quēror, questus, to complain. So con-, inter-, prā-quēror.

Nītor, nīsus, or nīxus, to endeavor, to lean upon. So ad-, vel an-, con-, e-, in-, ob-, re-, sub-nītor: but the compounds have oftener nīxus.

Pāciscor, pactus, to bargain. So de-peciscor, or de-paciscor.

Grādior, gressus, to go. So ag-, ante-, circum-, con-, de-, di-, e-, in-, intro-, prā-, prāter-, pro-, re-, retro-, sug-, super-, trans-grādior.

Prōfīciscor, profectus, to go a journey.

Nanciscor, nactus, to get.

Pator, passus, to suffer. So per-pētior.

Apiscor, aptus, to get. So adīpiscor, adeptus, and indīpiscor, indeptus.

Commīniscor, commentus, to devise or invent.

Fruor, frūitus, or fructus, to enjoy. So per-fruor.

Obliviscor, oblitus, to forget.

Expergiscor, experrectus, to awake.

Morior, mortuus, to die. So com-, de-, e-, im-, inter-, præ-morior.

Nascor, nātus, to be born. So ad-, circum-, de-, e-, in-, inter-, re-, sub-nascor.

Orior, ortus, ōriri, to rise. So ab-, ad-, co-, ex-, ob-, sub-ōrior.

The three last form the future participle in *itūrus*; thus, *mōritūrus, nascitūrus, ōritūrus*.

EXCEPTIONS in the Fourth Conjugation.

Mētor, mensus, to measure. So ad-, com-, di-, e-, præ-, re-mētor.

Ordior, orsus, to begin. So ex-, red-ordior.

Expērior, expertus, to try.

Oppērior, oppertus, and -itus, to wait or tarry for one.

The following verbs want the participle perfect :

Vescor, vesci, to feed.

Liquor, liqui, to melt or be dissolved.

Mēdeor, mederi, to heal.

Rēmīniscor, reminisci, to remember.

Irascor, irasci, to be angry.

Ringor, ringi, to grin like a dog.

Prævertor, præverti, to get before, to outrun.

Diffiteor, diffiteri, to deny.

Divertor, diverti, to turn aside, to take lodging.

Dēfētiscor, defētisci, to be weary, to faint.

The verbs which do not fall under any of the foregoing rules are called *Irregular*.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

The Irregular verbs are commonly reckoned eight; *sum, eo, queo, volo, nolo, malo, fero, and fio*, with their compounds.

But properly there are only six; *nolo* and *malo* being compounds of *volo*.

SUM has already been conjugated. After the same manner are formed its compounds, *ad-, ab-, de-, inter-, præ-, ob-, sub-, super-sum*, and *insum*, which wants the preterite; thus, *adsum, adfui, adesse, &c.*

PROSUM, to do good, has a *d* where *sum* begins with *e*; and in those parts is thus declined :

Indicative Mode.

Present.

- Sing.* 1. Ego prōsūm, *I do good.*
 2. Tū prōd-ēs, *thou doest good.*
 3. Ille prōd-est, *he does good.*
- Plur.* 1. Nos prō-sūmūs, *we do good.*
 2. Vos prōd-estis, *ye do good.*
 3. Illi prō-sunt, *they do good.*

Imperfect.

- Sing.* 1. Prōd-eram, *I did good.*
 2. Prōd-eras, *thou didst good.*
 3. Prōd-erat, *he did good.*
- Plur.* 1. Prōd-erāmus, *we did good.*
 2. Prōd-erātis, *ye did good.*
 3. Prōd-erānt, *they did good.*

*Subjunctive Mode.**Imperfect.**Sing.**Plur.*

1. Prōd-essēm, *I might do good.*
2. Prōd-essēs, *thou mightest do good.*
3. Prōd-essēt, *he might do good.*

1. Prōd-essēmus, *we might do good.*
2. Prōd-essētis, *ye might do good.*
3. Prōd-essent, *they might do good.*

*Imperative.**Sing.**Plur.*

2. Prōd-es vel prōd-esto, *do thou good.*
3. Prōd-esto, *let him do good.*

2. Prōd-estē vel prōd-estōte, *do ye good.*
3. Pro-sūnto, *let them do good.*

Infinitive.

Pres. Prōd-esse, *to do good.*

Perf. Prōfuisse, *to have done good.*

Fut. Essē-prōfutūrus, *to be about to do good.*

Fuisse-profutūrus, *to have been about to do good.*

In the other parts it is like *sum*: *Pro-sim, -sis, &c. Pro-fui, -fueram, &c.*

POSSUM is compounded of *pōtis*, able, and *sum*; and is thus conjugated:

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Possum, pōtes, pōtest; possūmus, potestis, possunt,

Im. Pot-eram, -eras, -erat; -eramus, -eratis, -erant.

Per. Pot-ui, -uisti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt, -uere.

Plu. Pot-uēram, -ueras, -uerat; -uēramus, -ueratis, -uerant.

Fut. Pot-ēro, -eris, -erit; -erimus, -eritis, -erunt.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Pos-sim, -sis, -sit; -sīmus, -sītis, -sint.

Im. Pos-sem, -ses, -set; -sēmus, -sētis, -sent.

Per. Pot-uērim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

Plu. Pot-uīsem, -uisses, -uisset; -uīsemus, -uīsetis, -uīssent.

Fut. Pot-uēro, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

Infinitive.

Pres. Posse. *Per.* Potuisse. *The rest wanting.*

EO, īvi, ītum, īre, *To go.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Eo, is, it; īmus, itis, eunt.

Imp. Ibam, ibas, ibat; ibamus, ibatis, ibant.

Per. Ivi, ivisti, ivit; ivimus, ivistis, iverunt, ivere.

Plu. Iveram, iveras, iverat; iveramus, iveratis, iverant.

Fut. Ibo, ibis, ibit; ibimus, ibitis, ibunt.

Subjunctive Mode.

<i>Pr.</i>	Eam,	eas,	eat;	eamus,	eatis,	eant.
<i>Im.</i>	Irem,	ires,	iret;	iremus,	iretis,	irent.
<i>Per.</i>	Iverim,	iveris,	iverit;	iverimus,	iveritis,	iverint.
<i>Plu.</i>	Ivissem,	ivisses,	ivisset;	ivissemus,	ivissetis,	ivissent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Ivero,	iveris,	iverit;	iverimus,	iveritis,	iverint.

*Imperative.**Infinitive.*

<i>Pres.</i>	{ I,	{ ite,	<i>Pres.</i>	Ire.
	{ Ito, ito;	{ itote, eunto.	<i>Perf.</i>	Ivisse.
			<i>Fut.</i>	Esse iturus, -a, -um.
				Fuisse iturus.

*Participles.**Gerunds.**Supines.*

<i>Pr.</i>	Iens,	<i>Gen.</i>	euntis.	Eundum.	1. Itum.
<i>Fut.</i>	Iturus,	-a, -um.		Eundi.	2. Itu.
				Eundo, &c.	

The compounds of *eo* are conjugated after the same manner; *ad-*, *ab-*, *ex-*, *ob-*, *red-*, *sub-*, *p̄r-*, *cō-*, *in-*, *præ-*, *ante-*, *prōd-eo*; only in the perfect, and the tenses formed from it, they are usually contracted; thus, *Adeo*, *adsi*, seldom *adivi*, *aditum*, *adire*, to go to; perf. *Adii*, *adiisti*, or *adisti*, &c. *adiēram*, *adiērim*, &c. So likewise *veneo*, *venii*, —, to be sold, (compounded of *venum* and *eo*.) But *ambio*, *-īvi*, *-itum*, *-īre*, to surround, is a regular verb of the fourth conjugation.

Eo, like other neuter verbs, is often rendered in English under a passive form; thus, *it*, he is going; *īvit*, he is gone; *īvērat*, he was gone; *iverit*, he may be gone, or shall be gone. So *vēnit*, he is coming; *venit*, he is come; *vēnērat*, he was come, &c. In the passive voice these verbs for the most part are only used impersonally; as *itur ab* illo*, he is going; *ventum est ab illis*, they are come. We find some of the compounds of *eo*, however, used personally; as, *pericula ad-euntur*, are undergone, Cic. *Libri sibyllini aditi sunt*, were looked into, Liv. *Flumen pedibus transiri potest*, Cæs. *Inimicitiae subeantur*, Cic.

QUEO, I can, and *NEQUEO*, I cannot, are conjugated the same way as *eo*; only they want the imperative and the gerunds; and the participles are seldom used.

* *Itur*, *ibatur*, *itum est*, *itum erat*, *ibitur*; Subj. *eatur*, *iretur*, *itum sit*, *itum esset*, *itum fuerit*; Infin. *iri*, *itum esse*, &c.

VOLO, völuī, velle, *To will, or to be willing.*

Indicative Mode.

<i>Pr.</i>	Völ-o,	vis,	vult;	volūmus,	vultis,	volunt.
<i>Im.</i>	Vol-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
<i>Per.</i>	Vol-ui,	-uisti,	-uit;	-uimus,	-uistis,	-uerunt, -uere.
<i>Pl.</i>	Vol-ueram,	-ueras,	-uerat;	-ueramus,	-ueratis,	-uerant.
<i>Fut.</i>	Vol-am,	-es,	-et;	-emus,	-etis,	-ent.

Subjunctive Mode.

<i>Pr.</i>	Velim,	velis,	velit;	velīmus,	velitis,	velint.
<i>Imp.</i>	Vellem,	velles,	vellet;	vellēmus,	velletis,	vellent.
<i>Per.</i>	Vol-uerim,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
<i>Plu.</i>	Vol-uissem,	-uisses,	-uisset;	-uissemus,	-uissetis,	-uissent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Vol-uero,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

Infinitive.

Pres. Velle.

Perf. Voluisse.

Participle.

Pres. Volens.

The rest not used.

NOLO, nolui, nolle, *To be unwilling.*

Indicative Mode.

<i>Pr.</i>	Nōlo,	non-vis,	non-vult;	nolūmus,	non-vultis,	nolunt.
<i>Im.</i>	Nol-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
<i>Per.</i>	Nol-ui,	-uisti,	-uit;	-uimus,	-uistis,	-uerunt, -uere.
<i>Plu.</i>	Nol-ueram,	-ueras,	-uerat;	-ueramus,	-ueratis,	-uerant.
<i>Fut.</i>	Nolam,	noles,	nolet;	nolemus,	noletis,	nolent.

Subjunctive Mode.

<i>Pr.</i>	Nolim,	nolis,	nolit;	nolimus,	nolitis,	nolint.
<i>Im.</i>	Nollem,	nolles,	nollet;	nollemus,	nolletis,	nollent.
<i>Per.</i>	Nol-uerim,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
<i>Plu.</i>	Nol-uissem,	-uisses,	-uisset;	-uissemus,	-uissetis,	-uissent.
<i>Fut.</i>	Nol-uero,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

Imperative.

2. *Sing.* 2. *Plur.*

Infinitive.

Participle.

<i>Pr.</i>	{ Noli, <i>vel</i>	{ nolite, <i>vel</i>	<i>Pr.</i> Nolle.	<i>Pr.</i> Nolens.
	{ Nolito;	{ nolitote.	<i>Per.</i> Noluisse.	<i>The rest wanting.</i>

MALO, malui, malle, *To be more willing.*

Indicative Mode.

<i>Pr.</i> Māl-o,	mavis, mavult; malūmus, mavultis, malunt.
<i>Im.</i> Mal-ebam,	-ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.
<i>Per.</i> Mal-ui,	-uisti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt, -uere.
<i>Plu.</i> Mal-ueram,	-ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.
<i>Fut.</i> Mal-am,	-es, -et; &c. <i>this is scarcely in use.</i>

Subjunctive Mode.

<i>Pr.</i> Malim,	malis, malit; malimus, malitis, malint.
<i>Im.</i> Mallem,	malles, mallet; malleamus, malletis, mallent.
<i>Per.</i> Mal-uerim,	-ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.
<i>Plu.</i> Mal-uissem,	-uisses, -uisset; -uissemus, -uissetis, -uissent.
<i>Fut.</i> Mal-uero,	-ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

Infinitive Mode.

Pres. Malle. *Perf.* Maluisse. *The rest not used.*

FERO, tūli, lātum, ferre, *To carry, to bring or suffer.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

<i>Pr.</i> Fēro,	fers, fert; ferīmus, fertis, ferunt.
<i>Im.</i> Fer-ebam,	-ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.
<i>Per.</i> Tuli,	tulisti, tulit; tulimus, tulistis, tulerunt, -ere.
<i>Plu.</i> Tul-eram,	-eras, -erat; -eramus, -eratis, -erant.
<i>Fut.</i> Feram,	feres, feret; -feremus, feretis, ferent.

Subjunctive Mode.

<i>Pr.</i> Feram,	feras, ferat; feramus, feratis, ferant.
<i>Im.</i> Ferrem,	ferres, ferret; ferremus, ferretis, ferrent.
<i>Per.</i> Tul-erim,	-eris, -erit; -erimus, -eritis, -erint.
<i>Plu.</i> Tul-issem,	-isses, -isset; -issemus, -issetis, -issent.
<i>Fut.</i> Tul-ero,	-eris, -erit; -erimus, -eritis, -erint.

Imperative.

Infinitive.

<i>Pr.</i> { Fer,	ferto; { ferte, ferunto.	<i>Pr.</i> Ferre.
{ Ferto,	ferto; { fertote,	<i>Per.</i> Tulusse.
		<i>Fut.</i> Esse laturus, -a, -um.
		Fuisse laturus, -a, -um.

<i>Participles.</i>	<i>Gerunds.</i>	<i>Supines.</i>
<i>Pres.</i> Fērens,	Ferendum.	1. Lātum.
<i>Fut.</i> Laturus, -a, -um.	Ferendi.	2. Latu.
	Ferendo, &c.	

PASSIVE VOICE.

Fēror, lātus, ferri, *To be brought.*

Indicative Mode.

<i>Pr.</i> Fēror, ferris, fertur; ferīmur, ferīmini, feruntur.
<i>Im.</i> Ferebar, -ebaris, -ebatur; -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.
<i>Perf.</i> Latus sum, &c. latus fui, &c.
<i>Plu.</i> Latus eram, &c. latus fueram, &c.
<i>Fut.</i> Ferar, ferēris, feretur; feremur, feremini, ferentur.
<i>vel ferēre,</i>

Subjunctive Mode.

<i>Pr.</i> Ferar, feraris, feratur; feramur, feramini, ferantur.
<i>Im.</i> Ferrer, ferreris, ferretur; ferremur, feremini, ferrentur.
<i>Per.</i> Latus sim, &c. latus fuerim, &c.
<i>Plu.</i> Latus essem, &c. latus fuisset, &c.
<i>Fut.</i> Latus fuero, &c.

Imperative Mode.

Pres. Ferre *vel* fertor, fertor; ferimini, feruntor.

*Infinitive.**Participles.*

<i>Pres.</i> Ferri.	<i>Perf.</i> Latus, -a, -um.
<i>Perf.</i> Esse <i>vel</i> fuisse, latus, -a, -um.	<i>Fut.</i> Ferendus, -a, -um.
<i>Fut.</i> Latum iri.	

In like manner are conjugated the compounds of *fēro*; as, *affēro*, *attūli*, *allatum*; *aufēro*, *abstuli*, *ablatum*; *diffēro*, *distuli*, *dilatatum*; *confēro*, *contuli*, *collatum*; *infēro*, *intuli*, *illatum*; *offēro*, *obtuli*, *oblatum*; *effēro*, *extuli*, *elatum*. So *circum-*, *per-*, *trans-*, *de-*, *pro-*, *ante-*, *præ-* *fēro*. In some writers we find, *adfero*, *adtūli*, *adlatum*; *conlatum*, *inlatum*; *obfero*, &c. for *affero*, &c.

OBS. 1. Most part of the above verbs are made irregular by contraction. Thus, *nolo* is contracted for *non volo*; *malo*, for *magis volo*: *fero*, *fers*, *fert*, &c. for *feris*, *ferit*, &c. *Feror*, *ferris*, v. *ferre*, *fertur*, for *ferēris*, &c.

OBS. 2. The imperatives of *dīco*, *dūco*, and *fācio*, are contracted in the same manner with *fer*; thus we say, *dic*, *duc*, *fac*, instead of *dīce*, *dūce*, *fāce*. But these often occur likewise in the regular form.

FIO, factus, fīeri, to be made or done, to become.

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Fio, fis, fit; fimus, fitis, fiunt.
Im. Fiebam, fiebas, fiebat; fiebamus, fiebatis, fiebant.
Per. Factus, sum, &c. factus fui, &c.
Plu. Factus eram, &c. factus fueram, &c.
Fut. Fiam, fies, fiet; fiemus, fietis, fient.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Fiam, fias, fiat; fiamus, fiatis, fiant.
Im. Fiērem, fieres, fieret; fieremus, fieretis, fierent.
Per. Factus sim, &c. factus fuērim, &c.
Plu. Factus essem, &c. factus fuerim, &c.
Fut. Factus fuero, &c.

Imperative.

Pr. { Fi, fito; { fite, fiunto,
 { Fito, fito; { fitote,

Infinitive.

Pr. Fieri.
Per. Esse v. fuisse factus, -a, -um.

Fut. Factum iri.

Participles.

Per. Factus, -a, -um.
Fut. Faciendus, -a, -um.

Supine.

Factu.

The compounds of *fācio*, which retain *a*, have also *fio* in the passive, and *fac* in the imperative active; as, *calefacio*, to warm, *calefio*, *calefac*; but those which change *a* into *i*, form the passive regularly, and have *fīce*, in the imperative; as, *conficio*, *confīce*; *conficior*, *confectus*, *confīci*. We find, however, *confit*, it is done, and *confīeri*; *desit*, it is wanting; *infīt*, he begins.

To irregular verbs may properly be subjoined what are commonly called *Neuter Passive Verbs*, which, like *fio*, form the preterite tenses according to the passive voice, and the rest in the active. These are, *sōleo*, *solītus*, *solēre*, to use; *audeo*, *ausus*, *audēre*, to dare; *gaudeo*, *gavisus*, *gaudēre*, to rejoice; *fido*, *fīsus*, *fidēre*, to trust: So *confido*, to trust; and *diffido*, to distrust; which also have *confīdi*, and *diffīdi*. Some add *mæreo*, *mæstus*, *mæreere*, to be sad; but *mæstus* is generally reckoned an adjective. We likewise say *jūratu sum* and *cænatu sum*, for *jūravi* and *cænavi*, but these may also be taken in a passive sense. So *pransus* and *potus*, perfect passive participles, have a deponent sense; as, having dined, having drunk.

To these may be referred verbs wholly active in their termination, and passive in their signification; as, *vāpūlo*, -avi, -atum, to be beaten or whipped; *vēneo*, to be sold; *exūlo*, to be banished; as, *vapulo*, I am whipped; *vēneo*, I am sold; *exulo*, I am banished, &c.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Verbs are called *Defective*, which are not used in certain tenses, numbers, and persons.

These three, *ōdi*, *cæpi*, and *mēmīni*, are only used in the preterite tenses; and therefore are called *Preteritive Verbs*; though they have sometimes likewise a present signification; thus,

Odi, I hate or have hated, *oderam*, *oderim*, *odissem*, *odero*, *odisse*. Participles, *osus*, *osurus*; *exosus*, *perosus*.

Cæpi, I begin or have begun, *cæperam*, -erim, -issem, -ero, -isse. Supine, *cæptu*. Participles, *cæptus*, *cæpturus*.

Nēmīni, I remember, or have remembered, *memineram*, -erim, -issem, -ero, -isse. Imperative, *memento*, *mementote*.

Instead of *odi*, we sometimes say *osus sum*; and always *exosus*, *perosus sum*, and not *exodi*, *perodi*. We say *opus cæpit fieri*, or *cæptum est*.

To these some add *nōvi*, because it frequently has the signification of the present, *I know*, as well as *I have known*, though it comes from *nosco*, which is complete. *Novi*, I know or have known; *noveram*, -erim, -issem, -ero, -isse; contracted (*nōram*,) (*nōrim*,) (*nōssem*,) (*nōsse*,)

Fūro, to be mad, *dor*, to be given, and *for*, to speak, as also, *der* and *fer*, are not used in the first person singular; thus we say, *daris*, *datur*; but never *dor*.

Of verbs which want many of their chief parts, the following most frequently occur: *Aiō*, I say; *inquam*, I say; *fōrem*, I should be; *ausim*, contracted for *ausus sim*, I dare; *faxim*, I'll see to it, or I will do it; *ave*, and *salve*, save you, hail, good-morrow; *cedo*, tell thou, or give me; *quæso*, I pray.

Indicative Mode.

Present.		Imperfect.		Perfect.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ego aio, <i>I say</i> .	<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Ego aiēbam, <i>I said</i> .	<i>Sing.</i> 1.	—
2.	Tu ais.	2.	Tu aiēbās.	2.	Tu aisti, <i>Thou hast</i>
3.	Ille ait.	3.	Ille aiēbāt.	3.	Ille ait. [<i>said</i>]
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	—	<i>Plur.</i> 1.	Nos aiēbāmus.	<i>Plur.</i> 1.	—
2.	—	2.	Vos aiēbātis.	2.	Vos aistis.
3.	Illi aiunt.	3.	Illi aiēbānt.	3.	—

Subjunctive.

Present.	
<i>Sing.</i> 1.	—
2.	Tu aias, <i>thou mayest say</i> .
3.	Ille aiāt.
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	—
2.	Vos aiātis.
3.	Illi aiant.

Imperative.

Sing. 2. Ai tu, *do thou say*.

Participle.

Pres. Aiēns, *saying*.

Indicative.		
Present.	Imperfect.	Perfect.
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
1. Ego inquā̄m, <i>I say.</i>	1. —	1. Ego inq̄uii, <i>I have said.</i>
2. Tu inquīs.	2. —	2. Tu inq̄uisti.
3. Ille inquīt.	3. Ille inq̄uiēbat, <i>He said.</i>	3. —
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. Nos inq̄uim̄s.	1. —	1. —
2. Vos inq̄uit̄is.	2. —	2. Vos inq̄uistis.
3. Illi inq̄uiunt̄.	3. Illi inq̄uiēbant.	3. —
Future.	Imperative.	Participle.
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pres.</i>
1. —	2. Inque vel inquito tu, <i>say thou.</i>	Inq̄uiens, <i>saying.</i>
2. Tu inq̄uiēs, <i>Thou shalt say.</i>		
3. Ille inq̄uiēt.		
<i>Rest wanting.</i>		

Some give the imperfect indicative entire, and parts of the present subjunctive thus:

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
1. —	1. —
2. Tu inq̄uiās.	2. Vos inq̄uiatis.
3. Ille inq̄uiāt.	3. Illi inq̄uiant̄.

Subjunctive. *Forēm.*

Imperfect and Pluperfect. *I might, could, would, or should be, or have been.*

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	
1. Ego fōrēm.	1. Nos forēm̄s.	So also decline—
2. Tu forēs.	2. Vos forētis.	Ego affōrem.
3. Ille forēt.	3. Illi fōrēt.	Tu affōrēs, &c.

Infinitive.

Future, *Forē*, to be hereafter, or to be about to be, the same with *esse futurus*; as is also *affōrē*.

Subjunctive.

Present.	Perfect.	Future.
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>
1. Ego ausīm, <i>I dare.</i>	1. Ego faxīm, <i>I will do it.</i>	1. Ego fāxo, <i>I'll see to it.</i>
2. Tu ausis.	2. Tu faxīs.	2. Tu faxīs.
3. Ille ausīt.	3. Ille faxīt.	3. Ille faxīt.
<i>No plural.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
	1. —	1. —
	2. —	2. Vos faxītis.
	3. Illi faxint.	3. Illi faxint.

NOTE. *Faxim* and *faxo* are used instead of *fēcērīm* and *fēcēro*.

Imperative.	Infinitive.
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Pres.</i>
2. Avē vel avēto tu, <i>hail thou.</i>	Avēre, <i>to hail.</i>
3. —	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
2. Salvē vel salvēto tu, <i>save thou, or God save you.</i>	2. Salvēte vel salvētōte vos, <i>save ye.</i>
	<i>Pres.</i> Salvēre, <i>to hail.</i>
	<i>Fut. Indic. Sing.</i> 2. Salvēbis.

Imperative.
<i>Sing.</i> 2. Cēdo tu, <i>tell thou.</i>
3. —
<i>Plur.</i> 2. Cedite vos, <i>tell ye.</i>
3. —

Indic. Present.
<i>Sing.</i> 1. Ego quāso, <i>I pray.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Nos quāsum̄s, <i>we pray.</i>

Also add to these defective verbs the two following, which are often adverbs.

Imperative.

<i>Sing. 2.</i> Agē vel āgedum tu, come thou on.	<i>Sing. 2.</i> Apāge tu, go hence or away with yourself.
<i>3.</i> _____	<i>3.</i> _____
<i>Plur. 2.</i> Agite vos, do ye come on.	<i>Plur. 2.</i> Apāgete vos, away with yourselves.
<i>3.</i> _____	<i>3.</i> _____

Most of the other defective verbs are but single words, and rarely to be found, but among the poets; as, *infit*, he begins; *defit*, it is wanting. Some are compounded of a verb and the conjunction *si*; as, *sis* for *si vis*, if thou wilt; *sultis* for *si vultis*; *sodes* for *si audes*, equivalent to *quæso*, I pray; *capsis* for *cape si vis*.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

A verb is called *Impersonal*, which has only the terminations of the third person singular, but does not admit any person or nominative before it.

Impersonal verbs, in English, have before them the neuter pronoun *it*, which is not considered as a person; thus, *dēlectat*, it delights; *dēcet*, it becomes; *contingit*, it happens; *evēnit*, it happens:

Indicative.

<i>1st Conj.</i>	<i>2d Conj.</i>	<i>3d Conj.</i>	<i>4th Conj.</i>
<i>Pr.</i> Delectat,*	Dēcet,	Contingit,	Evēnit,
<i>Im.</i> Delectabat,	Decebat,	Contingebat,	Eveniebat,
<i>Per.</i> Delectavit,	Decuit,	Contigit,	Evēnit,
<i>Plu.</i> Delectaverat,	Decuerat,	Contigerat,	Evererat,
<i>Fut.</i> Delectabit.	Decebit.	Contingēt.	Eveniet.

Subjunctive.

<i>Pr.</i> Dēlectet,	Dēceat,	Contingat,	Eveniat,
<i>Im.</i> Delectaret,	Decēret,	Contingēret,	Eveniret,
<i>Per.</i> Delectaverit,	Decuerit,	Contigerit,	Evererit,
<i>Plu.</i> Delectavisset,	Decuisset,	Contigisset,	Evenisset,
<i>Fut.</i> Delectaverit.	Decuerit.	Contigerit.	Evererit.

Infinitive.

<i>Pr.</i> Delectāre,	Decēre,	Contingēre,	Evenīre,
<i>Per.</i> Delectavisse,	Decuisse.	Contigisse.	Evenisse.

* 1st Conjugation.

<i>Active Voice.</i>		<i>Passive Voice.</i>	
Delectat.		Pugnātur.	
<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	It delights,	<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	It is fought,
<i>Imp.</i>	It delighted,	<i>Imp.</i>	It was fought,
<i>Per.</i>	It has delighted,	<i>Per.</i>	It has been fought,
<i>Plu.</i>	It had delighted,	<i>Plu.</i>	It had been fought,
<i>Fut.</i>	It shall delight.	<i>Fut.</i>	It shall be fought.
<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	It may delight,	<i>Subj. Pres.</i>	It may be fought,
<i>Imp.</i>	It might delight,	<i>Imp.</i>	It might be fought,
<i>Per.</i>	It may have delighted,	<i>Per.</i>	It may have been fought,
<i>Plu.</i>	It might have delighted,	<i>Plu.</i>	It might have been fought,
<i>Fut.</i>	It shall have delighted.	<i>Fut.</i>	It shall have been fought.
<i>Infin. Pres.</i>	To delight,	<i>Infin. Pres.</i>	To be fought,
<i>Per.</i>	To have delighted.	<i>Per.</i>	To have been fought,
		<i>Fut.</i>	To be about to be fought.

After the same manner, English the other conjugations of Impersonals.

Most Latin verbs may be used impersonally in the passive voice, especially Neuter and Intransitive verbs, which otherwise have no passive; as, *pugnātur*, *fāvētur*, *curritur*, *venītur*; from *pugno*, to fight; *faveo*, to favor; *curro*, to run; *venio*, to come:

Indicative.

Pr. Pugnātur,	Fāvētur,	Curritur,	Venītur,
Im. Pugnabatur,	Favebatur,	Currebat,	Veniebatur,
Per. Pugnatum est,	Fautum est,	Cursum est,	Ventum est,
Plu. Pugnatum erat,	Fautum erat,	Cursum erat,	Ventum erat.
Fut. Pugnabitur.	Favebitur.	Curretur.	Venietur.

Subjunctive.

Pr. Pugnetur,	Faveatur,	Curatur,	Veniat,
Im. Pugnetur,	Faveretur,	Curretur,	Veniretur,
Per. Pugnatum sit,	Fautum sit,	Cursum sit,	Ventum sit,
Plu. Pugnatum esset,	Fautum esset,	Cursum esset,	Ventum esset,
Fut. Pugnatum fuerit.	Fautum fuerit.	Cursum fuerit.	Ventum fuerit.

Infinitive.

Pr. Pugnari,	Faveri,	Curri,	Veniri,
Per. Pugnatum esse,	Fautum esse,	Cursum esse,	Ventum esse,
Fut. Pugnatum iri.	Fautum iri.	Cursum iri.	Ventum iri.

Obs. 1. Impersonal verbs are scarcely used in the imperative, but instead of it; we take the subjunctive; as, *delectet*, let it delight, &c.; nor in the supines, participles, or gerunds, except a few; as, *pānīens*, -*dum*, -*dus*, &c. *Induci ad pudendum et pigendum*, Cic. In the preterite tenses of the passive voice, the participle perfect is always put in the neuter gender.

Obs. 2. Grammarians reckon only ten real impersonal verbs, and all in the second conjugation; *dēcet*, it becomes; *pānītet*, it repents; *oportet*, it behoves; *misēret*, it pities; *pīget*, it irketh; *pūdet*, it shameth; *licet*, it is lawful; *libet* or *libet*, it pleaseth; *tædet*, it wearieeth; *liquet*, it appears; of which the following have a double preterite; *miseret*, *miseruit*, or *misertum est*; *piget*, *pignit*, or *pigitum est*; *pudet*, *puduit*, or *puditum est*; *licet*, *licuit*, or *licitum est*; *libet*, *libuit*, or *libitum est*; *tædit*, *tæduit*, or *tæsum est*, oftener *pertæsum est*. But many other verbs are used impersonally in all the conjugations.

In the first, *Jūvat*, *spectat*, *vācat*, *stat*, *constat*, *præstat*, *restat*, &c.

In the second, *Appāret*, *attīnet*, *perīnet*, *dēbet*, *dōlet*, *nōcet*, *lātet*, *liquet*, *pātet*, *plācet*, *displīcet*, *sēdet*, *sōlet*, &c.

In the third, *Accīdit*, *īncipīt*, *desīnit*, *suffīcit*, &c.

In the fourth, *Convēnit*, *expēdit*, &c.

Also irregular verbs, *Est*, *obest*, *prōdest*, *pōtest*, *intērest*, *supērest*; *sit*, *præterit*, *nequit*, and *nequitur*, *subit*, *confert*, *rēfert*, &c.

Obs. 3. Under impersonal verbs may be comprehended those which express the operations or appearances of nature; as, *Fulgūrat*, *fulminat*, *tōnat*, *grandīnat*, *gēlat*, *plūit*, *ningit*, *lucescit*, *advesperascit*, &c.

Obs. 4. Impersonal verbs are applied to any person or number, by putting that which stands before other verbs after the impersonals, in the cases which they govern: as, *placet mihi, tibi, illi*, it pleases me, thee, him; or I please, thou pleasest, &c.; *pugnatur a me, a te, ab illo*, I fight, thou fightest, he fighteth, &c. So *Curritur, venitur a me, a te, &c.* I run, thou runnest, &c. *Favetur tibi a me*, Thou art favored by me, or I favor thee, &c.

Obs. 5. Verbs are used personally or impersonally, according to the particular meaning which they express, or the different import of the words with which they are joined; thus we can say, *ego placeo tibi*, I please you; but we cannot say, *si places audire*, if you please to hear, but *si placet tibi audire*. So we can say, *multa homini contingunt*, many things happen to a man; but instead of *ego contigi esse domi*, we must either say, *me contigit esse domi*, or *mihi contigit esse domi*, I happened to be at home. The proper and elegant use of Impersonal verbs can only be acquired by practice.

Redundant Verbs.

Those are called *Redundant Verbs*, which have different forms to express the same sense; thus, *assentio* and *assentior*, to agree; *fabrīco* and *fabrīcor*, to frame; *mereo* and *mereor*, to deserve, &c. These verbs, however, under the passive form, have likewise a passive signification.

Several verbs are used in different conjugations.

1. Some are usually of the first conjugation, and rarely of the third; as, *lavo*, *lavas*, *lavāre*; and *lavo*, *lavis*, *lavēre*, to wash.

2. Some are usually of the second, and rarely of the third; as,

Ferveo, *ferves*, and *fervo*, *fervis*, to boil.

Fulgeo, *fulges*, and *fulgo*, *fulgis*, to shine.

Strideo, *strides*, and *strido*, *stridis*, to make a hissing noise, to creak.

Tueor, *tuēris*, and *tuor*, *tuēris*, to defend.

To these add *tergeo*, *terges*; and *tergō*, *tergis*, to wipe, which are equally common.

3. Some are commonly of the third conjugation, and rarely of the fourth; as,

Fodio, *fodis*, *fodēre*, and *fodio*, *fodis*, *fodire*, to dig.

Sallo, *sallis*, *sallēre*, and *sallio*, *sallis*, *sallire*, to salt.

Arcesso, *-is*, *arcessere*, and *arcessio*, *arcessire*, to send for.

Morior, *morēris*, *mori*, and *morior*, *morīris*, *morīri*, to die.

So *Orior*, *orēris*, and *orior*, *oriris*, *orīri*, to rise.

Potior, *potēris*, and *potior*, *potīris*, *potīri*, to enjoy.

There is likewise a verb which is usually of the second conjugation, and more rarely of the fourth, namely, *cio*, *cies*, *ciēre*; and *cio*, *cis*, *ciere*, to rouse; whence *accīre* and *accītus*.

To these we may add the verb *EDO*, to eat, which, though regularly formed, also agrees in several of its parts with *sum*; thus it is varied as far as it falls in with *sum*.

<i>Present Indic.</i>	<i>Present Infin.</i>	<i>Perfect Indic.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>
Edō,	Edēre vel ēssē,	Edī,	Esūm.

So *cōmēdo*, which has sometimes *cōmēstum* in the supine.

*Indicative Mode.**Present.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Ego edō, —	<i>I eat.</i>
2. Tu edīs vel ēs,	<i>Thou eatest.</i>
3. Ille edīt vel ēst,	<i>He eats.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Nos edīmus, —	<i>We eat.</i>
2. Vos editis vel ēstīs,	<i>Ye eat.</i>
3. Illi edūnt, —	<i>They eat.</i>

*Subjunctive.**Imperfect.*

<i>Sing.</i> 1. Ego edērem vel ēssēm,	<i>I might eat.</i>
2. Tu ederēs vel ēssēs,	<i>Thou mightest eat.</i>
3. Ille ederēt vel ēssēt,	<i>He might eat.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1. Nos ederēmus vel ēssēmus,	<i>We might eat.</i>
2. Vos ederētis vel ēssētis,	<i>Ye might eat.</i>
3. Illi ederēnt vel ēssēnt,	<i>They might eat.</i>

Imperative.

<i>Sing.</i> 2. Ede or edito, vel es or ēsto tu,	<i>Eat thou.</i>
3. Edīto vel ēsto ille,	<i>Let him eat.</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 2. Edite or editōte vel ēste or ēstōte vos,	<i>Eat ye.</i>
3. Edūnto — illi,	<i>Let them eat.</i>

Infinitive.

<i>Pres.</i> Edēre vel ēssē,	<i>To eat.</i>
<i>Passive Indic. Pres.</i> Editur vel ēstur,	<i>It is eaten.</i>

The other parts of *edo* are not redundant, and are conjugated like *lēgo*.

It may not be improper here to subjoin a list of those verbs which resemble one another in some of their parts, though they differ in signification. Of these some agree in the present, some in the preterite, and the others in the supine.

1. The following agree in the present, but are differently conjugated :

Aggĕro, -as, *to heap up.*
 Appello, -as, *to call.*
 Compello, -as, *to address.*
 Collĭgo, -as, *to bind.*
 Consterno, -as, *to astonish.*
 Effĕro, -as, *to enrage.*
 Fundo, -as, *to found.*
 Mando, -as, *to command.*
 Obsĕro, -as, *to lock.*
 Volo, -as, *to fly.*

Aggĕro, -is, *to bring together.*
 Appello, -is, *to drive to, to arrive.*
 Compello, -is, *to drive together.*
 Collĭgo, -is, *to gather together.*
 Consterno, -is, *to strew.*
 Effĕro, -fers, *to bring out.*
 Fundo, -is, *to pour out.*
 Mando, -is, *to chew.*
 Obsĕro, -is, *to beset.*
 Volo, -vis, *to will.*

Of this class some have a different quantity ; as,

Cōlo, -as, *to strain.*
 Dīco, -as, *to dedicate.*
 Edūco, -as, *to train up.*
 Lĕgo, -as, *to send on an embassy.*
 Vādo, -as, *to wade.*

Cōlo, -is, *to till.*
 Dīco, -is, *to say.*
 Edūco, -is, *to lead forth.*
 Lĕgo, -is, *to read.*
 Vādo, -is, *to go.*

2. The following verbs agree in the preterite :

Aceo, acui, *to be sour.*
 Cresco, crēvi, *to groan.*
 Frĭgeo, frixi, *to be cold.*
 Fulgeo, fulsi, *to shine.*
 Lūceo, luxi, *to shine.*
 Pāveo, pāvi, *to be afraid.*
 Pendeo, pēpendi, *to hang.*

Acuo, acui, *to sharpen.*
 Cerno, crēvi, *to see.*
 Frigo, frixi, *to fry.*
 Fulcio, fulsi, *to prop.*
 Lūgeo, luxi, *to mourn.*
 Pasco, pāvi, *to feed.*
 Pendo, pēpendi, *to weigh.*

3. The following agree in the supine :

Cresco, crētum, *to grow.*
 Māneo, mansum, *to stay.*
 Sto, statum, *to stand.*
 Succenseo, -censum, *to be angry.*
 Tēneo, tentum, *to hold.*
 Verro, versum, *to sweep.*
 Vinco, victum, *to overcome.*

Cerno, cretum, *to behold.*
 Mando, mansum, *to chew.*
 Sisto, statum, *to stop.*
 Succendo, -censum, *to kindle.*
 Tendo, tentum, *to stretch out.*
 Verro, versum, *to turn.*
 Vīvo, victum, *to live.*

The Obsolete Conjugation.

This chiefly occurs in old writers, and only in particular conjugations and tenses.

1. The ancient Latins made the imperfect of the indicative active of the fourth conjugation in *IBAM*, without the *e* ; as, *audibam*, *scribam*, for *audiēbam*, *scriēbam*.

2. In the future of the indicative of the fourth conjugation, they used *IBO* in the active, and *ībor* in the passive voice ; as, *dormībo*, *dormībor*, for *dormiam*, *dormiar*.

3. The present of the subjunctive anciently ended in *IM* ; as, *edim*, for *edam* ; *duim*, for *dem*.

4. The perfect of the subjunctive active sometimes occurs in *SSIM*, and the future in *SSO* ; as, *levassim*, *levasso*, for *levaverim*, *levavero* ; *capsim*, *capso*, for *caperim*, *capero*. Hence the future of the infinitive was formed in *ASSERE* ; as, *levassere*, for *levaturus esse*.

5. In the second person of the present of the imperative passive, we find *MINO* in the singular, and *minor* in the plural ; as, *famīno*, for *fare* ; and *progrēdimīnor*, for *progrēdimīni*.

6. The syllable *ER* was frequently added to the present of the infinitive passive; as, *farier*, for *fari*; *dicier*, for *dici*.

7. The participle of the future time active, and perfect passive, when joined with the verb *esse*, were sometimes used as indeclinable: thus, *credo inimicos dicturum esse*, for *dicturos*, Cic. *Cohortes ad me missum facias*, for *missas*, Cic. ad Attic. viii. 12.

Derivation and Composition of Verbs.

I. Verbs are derived either from nouns or from other verbs.

Verbs derived from nouns are called *Denominative*; as, *Cæno*, to sup; *laudo*, to praise; *fraudo*, to defraud; *lapīdo*, to throw stones; *opĕror*, to work; *frumentor*, to forage; *lignor*, to gather fuel, &c. from *cæna*, *laus*, *fraus*, &c. But when they express imitation or resemblance, they are called *Imitative*; as, *Patrisso*, *Græcor*, *būbūlo*, *cornīcor*, &c. I imitate or resemble my father, a Grecian, a crow, &c. from *pater*, *Græcus*, *cornix*.

Of those derived from other verbs, the following chiefly deserve attention; namely, *Frequentatives*, *Inceptives*, and *Desideratives*.

1. *FREQUENTATIVES* express frequency of action, and are all of the first conjugation. They are formed from the last supine, by changing *ātu* into *īto*, in verbs of the first conjugation; and by changing *u* into *o*, in verbs of the other three conjugations; as, *clamo*, to cry; *clamīto*, to cry frequently; *terreo*, *terrīto*; *verto*, *verso*; *dormio*, *dormīto*.

In like manner, Deponent verbs form Frequentatives in *or*; as, *minor*, to threaten; *minītor*, to threaten frequently.

Some are formed in an irregular manner; as, *nato* from *no*; *noscito* from *nosco*; *scitor*, or rather *sciscitor* from *scio*; *pavito* from *paveo*; *sector*, from *sequor*; *loquitor*, from *loquor*. So *querito*, *fundito*, *agito*, *fluito*, &c.

From Frequentative verbs are also formed other Frequentatives; as, *curro*, *curso*, *cursito*; *pello*, *pulso*, *pulsito*, or by contraction, *pulto*; *capio*, *capto*, *capito*; *cano*, *canto*, *cantito*; *defendo*, *defenso*, *defensito*; *dico*, *dicto*, *dictito*; *gero*, *gesto*, *gestito*; *jacio*, *jacto*, *jactito*; *venio*, *ventito*; *mutio*, *musso*, (for *mutito*) *mussito*, &c.

Verbs of this kind do not always express frequency of action. Many of them have much the same sense with their primitives, or express the meaning more strongly.

2. *INCEPTIVE Verbs* mark the beginning or continued increase of any thing. They are formed from the second person sing. of the present of the indicative, by adding *co*; as, *caleo*, to be hot, *cales*, *calesco*, to grow hot. So in the other conjugations, *labasco*, from *labo*; *tremisco*, from *tremo*; *obdormisco*, from *obdormio*. *Hisco*, from *hio*, is contracted from *hiasco*. Inceptives are likewise formed from substantives and adjectives; as, *puerasco*, from *puer*; *dulcesco*, from *dulcis*; *juvenesco*, from *juvenis*.

All inceptives are Neuter verbs, and of the third conjugation. They want both the preterite and supine; unless very rarely, when they borrow them from the primitives.

3. *DESIDERATIVE Verbs* signify a desire or intention of doing a thing. They are formed from the latter supine, by adding *rio*, and shortening the *u*; as, *cænātŭrio*, I desire to sup, from *cænatu*. They are all of the fourth conjugation; and want both preterite and supine, except these three, *ēsŭrio*, *-īvi*, *-itum*, to desire to eat; *partŭrio*, *-īvi*, —, to be in travail; *nuptŭrio*, *-īvi*, —, to desire to be married.

There are a few verbs in *LLO*, which are called *Diminutive*; as, *cantillo*, *sorbillo*, *-are*, I sing, I sup a little. To these some add *albico*, and *candico*, *-are*, to be or to grow whitish; also, *nigrico*, *fodico*, and *vellico*. Some verbs in *SSO* are called *Intensive*; as, *Capesso*, *facesso*, *petesso* or *petisso*, I take, I do, I seek earnestly.

Verbs are compounded with nouns, with other verbs, with adverbs, and chiefly with prepositions. Many of these simple verbs are not in use; as, *Fŭto*, *fendo*, *specio*, *gruo*, &c. The component parts usually remain entire. Sometimes a letter is added; as, *prodeo* for *pro-eo*; or taken away; as, *asporto*, *omitto*, *trado*, *pejĕro*, *pergo*, *debeo*, *præbeo*, &c. for *absporto*, *obmitto*, *transdo*, *perjuro*, *perrego*, *dehibeo*, *præhibeo*, &c. So *demo*, *promo*, *sumo*, of *de*, *pro*, *sub*, and *emo*, which anciently signified to take, or to take away. Often the vowel or diphthong of the simple verb, and the last consonant of the preposition, is changed; as, *damno*, *condemno*; *calco*, *conculco*; *lædo*, *collido*; *audio*, *obedio*, &c. *Affĕro*, *aufĕro*, *collaudo*, *implico*, &c. for *adfero*, *abfero*, *conlaudo*, *implico*, &c.

PARTICIPLE.

A Participle is a kind of adjective formed from a verb, which in its signification implies time.

It is so called, because it partakes both of an adjective and of a verb, having in *Latin* gender and declension from the one, time and signification from the other, and number from both. Participles in *English*, like adjectives, admit of no variation.

Participles in *Latin* are declined like adjectives: and their signification is various according to the nature of the verbs from which they come; only participles in *dus*, are always passive, and import not so much future time, as obligation or necessity.

Participles in *ns* are declined like *felix*; as, *amāns*, gen. *amantis*; and those in *us* like *bonus*; as, *doctus*, *-a*, *-um*.

Latin verbs have four Participles, the present and future active; as, *Amans*, loving; *āmātŭrus*, about to love; and the perfect and future passive; as, *amātus*, loved, *amandus*, to be loved.

The *Latins* have not a participle perfect in the active, nor a participle present in the passive voice; which defect must be supplied by a circumlocution. Thus, to express the perfect participle active in *English*, we use a conjunction, and the pluperfect of the subjunctive in *Latin*, or some other tense, according to its connexion with the other words of a sentence; as, he having loved, *quam amavisset*, &c.

Neuter verbs have commonly but two Participles; as, *Sĕdens*, *sessurus*; *stans*, *stātŭrus*.

From some neuter verbs are formed participles of the perfect tense; as, *Erratus, festinatus, juratus, laboratus, vigilatus, cessatus, sudatus, triumphatus, regnatus, decursus, desitus, emeritus, emersus, obitus, placitus, successus, occāsus*, &c. and also of the future in *du*; as, *Jurandus, vigilandus, regnandus, carendus, dormiendus, erubescendus*, &c. Neuter passive verbs are equally various. *Veneo* has no participle; *Fido*, only *fidens* and *fisus*; *soleo*, *solens* and *solitus*; *vapulo*, *vapulans* and *vapulaturus*; *Gaudeo*, *gaudens*, *gavisus* and *gavisurus*; *Audeo*, *audens*, *ausus*, *ausurus*, *audendus*. *Ausus* is used both in an active and passive sense; as, *Ausi omnes, immane nefas, ausoque potiti*. Virg. *Æn.* vi. 624.

Deponent and Common verbs have commonly four Participles; as,

Loquens, speaking; *locutūrus*, about to speak; *locutus*, having spoken; *loquendus*, to be spoken. *Dignans*, vouchsafing; *dignaturus*, about to vouchsafe; *dignatus*, having vouchsafed, being vouchsafed, or having been vouchsafed; *dignandus*, to be vouchsafed. Many participles of the perfect tense from Deponent verbs have both an active and passive sense; as, *Abominatus, conatus, confessus, adortus, amplexus, blanditus, largitus, mentitus, oblitus, testatus, veneratus*, &c.

There are several participles, compounded with *in* signifying *not*, the verbs of which do not admit of such composition; as, *Insciens, insperans, indicens* for *non dicens, inopinans, and necopinans, immērens*; *Illæsus, impransus, inconsultus, incustoditus, immetatus, impunitus, imparatus, incomitatus, incomptus, indemnatu*, *indotatus, incorruptus, interritus, and imperterritus, intestatus, inausus, inopinatus, inultus, incensus* for *non census*, not registered; *infectus* for *non factus, invisus* for *non visus, indictus* for *non dictus*, &c. There is a different *incensus* from *incendo*; *infectus* from *inficio*; *invisus* from *invideo*; *indictus* from *indico*, &c.

If from the signification of a Participle we take away *time*, it becomes an adjective, and admits the degrees of comparison; as,

Amans, loving, *amantior, amantissimus*; *doctus*, learned, *doctior, doctissimus*: or a substantive; as, *Præfectus*, a commander or governor; *consonans*, f. sc. *litera*, a consonant; *continens*, f. sc. *terra*, a continent; *confluens*, m. a place where two rivers run together; *oriens*, m. sc. *sol*, the east; *occidens*, m. the west; *dictum*, a saying; *scriptum*, &c.

There are many words in *ATUS, ITUS*, and *UTUS*, which although resembling participles, are reckoned adjectives, because they come from nouns and not from verbs; as, *alatus, barbatus, cordatus, caudatus, cristatus, auritus, pellitus, turritus*; *astutus, cornutus, nasutus*, &c. winged, bearded, discreet, &c. But *auratus, æratus, argentatus, ferratus, plumbatus, gypsatus, calceatus, clypeatus, galeatus, tunicatus, larvatus, palliatus, lymphatus, purpuratus, prætextatus*, &c. covered with gold, brass, silver, &c. are accounted participles, because they are supposed to come from obsolete verbs. So perhaps *calamistratus*, frizzled, crisped or curled, *crinitus*, having long hair, *peritus*, skilled, &c.

There are a kind of Verbal adjectives in *BUNDUS*, formed from the imperfect of the indicative, which very much resemble Participles in their signification, but generally express the meaning of the verb more fully, or denote an abundance or great deal of action; as, *vitabundus*, the same with *valde vitans*, avoiding much; *Sal. Jug.* 60. and 101; *Liv. xxv.* 13. So *errabundus, ludibundus, populabundus, moribundus*, &c.

GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

GERUNDS are participial words, which bear the signification of the verb from which they are formed; and are declined like a neuter noun of the second declension, through all the cases of the singular number, except the vocative.

There are, both in Latin and English, substantives derived from the verb, which so much resemble the Gerund in their signification, that frequently they may be substituted in its place. They are generally used, however, in a more undetermined sense than the Gerund, and in English have the article always prefixed to them. Thus, with the Gerund, *Delector legendo Ciceronem*, I am delighted with reading Cicero. But with the substantive, *Delector lectione Ciceronis*, I am delighted with the reading of Cicero.

The Gerund and Future Participle of verbs in *io*, and some others, often take *u* instead of *e*; as, *faciundum*, -*di*, -*do*, -*dus*; *experundum*, *potiundum*, *gerundum*, *petundum*, *ducundum*, &c. for *faciendum*, &c.

SUPINES have much the same signification with Gerunds; and may be indifferently applied to any person or number. They agree in termination with nouns of the fourth declension, having only the accusative and ablative cases.

The former Supine is commonly used in an active, and the latter in a passive sense, but sometimes the contrary; as, *coctum non vapulatum*, *dudum conductus fui*, i. e. *ut vapularem*, v. *verberarer*, to be beaten. Plaut.

ADVERB.

An adverb is an indeclinable part of speech, *added to a verb*, adjective, or other adverb, to express some circumstance, quality, or manner of their signification.

All adverbs may be divided into two classes, namely, those which denote *Circumstance*; and those which denote *Quality*, *Manner*, &c.

I. Adverbs denoting CIRCUMSTANCE are chiefly those of *Place*, *Time*, and *Order*.

1. Adverbs of *Place* are five-fold, namely, such as signify,

1. Motion or rest in a place.

Ubi?	Where?
Hic,	Here.
Illic,	} There.
Isthic,	
Ibi,	
Intus,	Within.
Fõris,	Without.
Ubique,	Everywhere.
Nusquam,	Nowhere.
Alĩcubi,	Somewhere.
Alĩbi,	Elsewhere.
Ubivis,	Anywhere.
Ibidem,	In the same place.

2. Motion to a place.

Quo?	Whither?
Huc,	Hither.
Illuc,	} Thither.
Isthuc,	
Intro,	In.
Fõras,	Out.
Eò,	To that place.
Aliò,	To another place.
Aliquo,	To some place.
Eòdem,	To the same place.

3. Motion towards a place.

Quorsum?	Whitherward?
Versus,	Towards.
Horsum,	Hitherward.
Illorsum,	Thitherward.
Sursum,	Upward.
Deorsum,	Downward.
Antrorsum,	Forward.
Retrorsum,	Backward.
Dextrorsum,	Towards the right.
Sinistrorsum,	Towards the left.

4. Motion from a place.

Unde?	Whence?
Hinc,	Hence.
Illinc,	} Thence.
Isthinc,	
Inde,	} From the same place.
Indĩdem,	
Aliunde,	From elsewhere.
Alĩcunde,	From some place.
Sicunde,	If from any place.
Utrĩque,	On both sides.
Sũperne,	From above.
Inferne,	From below.
Cœlitus,	From heaven.
Fundĩtus,	From the ground.

5. Motion through or by a place.	Illac,	}	That way.
Quà? Which way?	Isthac,		
Hàc, This way.	Alià,		Another way.

2. Adverbs of Time are three-fold, namely, such as signify,

1. <i>Some particular time, either present, past, future, or indefinite.</i>		Intërim,	<i>In the mean time.</i>	
		Quotïdie,	<i>Daily.</i>	
Nunc,	Now.	2. <i>Continuance of time.</i>		
Hodie,	To-day.	Diu,	<i>Long.</i>	
Tunc,	}	Quandiu,	<i>How long.</i>	
Tum,		Tamdiu,	<i>So long.</i>	
Hëri,	Yesterday.	Jamdiu,	}	
Dudum,	}	Jamdudum,		<i>Long ago.</i>
Pridem,		Jampridem,		
Pridie,	<i>The day before.</i>			
Nudius tertius,	<i>Three days ago.</i>	3. <i>Vicissitude or repetition of time.</i>		
Nuper,	<i>Lately.</i>	Quoties?	<i>How often?</i>	
Jamjam,	<i>Presently.</i>	Sæpe,	<i>Often.</i>	
Mox,	<i>Immediately.</i>	Rarò,	<i>Seldom.</i>	
Statim,	<i>By and by.</i>	Toties,	<i>So often.</i>	
Protinus,	<i>Instantly.</i>	Aliquoties,	<i>For several times.</i>	
Illico,	<i>Straightway.</i>	Vicissim,	}	
Cras,	<i>To-morrow.</i>	Alternatim,		<i>By turns.</i>
Postridie,	<i>The day after.</i>	Rursus,	}	
Pendie,	<i>Two days hence.</i>	Iterum,		<i>Again.</i>
Nondum,	<i>Not yet.</i>	Subinde,	}	
Quando?	<i>When?</i>	Identidem,		<i>Ever and anon, now and then.</i>
Aliquando,	}	Semel,	<i>Once.</i>	
Nonnunquam,		<i>Sometimes.</i>		Bis,
Interdum,	<i>Ever, always.</i>		Ter,	<i>Thrice.</i>
Semper,		<i>Never.</i>	Quater,	
Nunquam,				

3. Adverbs of Order.

Inde,	Then.	Dënique,	Finally.
Deinde,	After that.	Postremo,	Lastly.
Dehinc,	Henceforth.	Primo, -um,	First.
Porro,	Moreover.	Sëcundò, -um,	Secondly.
Deinceps,	So forth.	Tertiò, -um,	Thirdly.
Dënuo,	Of new.	Quartò, -um,	Fourthly, &c.

II. Adverbs denoting QUALITY, MANNER, &c. are either *Absolute* or *Comparative*.

Those called *Absolute* denote,

1. QUALITY, simply; as, *benè*, well; *malè*, ill; *fortiter*, bravely; and innumerable others that come from adjective nouns or participles.

2. CERTAINTY; as, *pröfectò*, *certè*, *sänè*, *plänè*, *næ*, *utique*, *ita*, *etiam*, truly, verily, yes; *quidni*, why not? *omnino*, certainly.

3. CONTINGENCE; as, *fortè*, *forsan*, *fortassis*, *fors*, haply, perhaps, by chance, peradventure.

4. NEGATION; as, *non*, *haud*, not; *nequäquam*, not at all; *neutiquam*, by no means; *nünime*, nothing less.

5. PROHIBITION; as, *ne*, not.

6. SWEARING; as, *hercle*, *pol*, *edëpol*, *mëcästor*, by Hercules, by Pollux, &c.

7. EXPLAINING; as, *upöte*, *vidëlicet*, *scülicet*, *nimürum*, *nempe*, to wit, namely.

8. SEPARATION; as, *seorsum*, apart; *sëpärätim*, separating; *sëgillatim*, one by one; *virütim*, man by man; *oppidätim*, town by town, &c.

9. JOINING TOGETHER; as, *simul, undè, p̄r̄iter*, together; *gēn̄rāl̄iter*, generally; *ūn̄iversal̄iter*, universally; *p̄l̄erumque*, for the most part.

10. INDICATION or POINTING out; as, *en, ecce, lo*, behold.

11. INTERROGATION; as, *cur, quare, quāobrem*, why, wherefore? *nūm, an*, whether? *quōmōdo, quā*, how? To which add, *Ubi, quō, quorsum, unde, quā, quando, quādiu, quoties*.

Those adverbs which are called *Comparative*, denote,

1. EXCESS; as, *valde, maximè, magnop̄ere, maximopere, summopere, admōdum, oppidō, perquam, longè*, greatly, very much, exceedingly; *nimis, nimium*, too much; *prorsus, penitus, omnino*, altogether, wholly; *magis*, more; *melius*, better; *pejus*, worse; *fortius*, more bravely; and *optimè*, best; *pessimè*, worst; *fortissimè*, most bravely; and innumerable others of the comparative and superlative degrees.

2. DEFECT; as, *ferme, f̄erè, pr̄opemōdum, p̄nè*, almost; *p̄rum*, little; *paulo, paululum*, very little.

3. PREFERENCE; as, *p̄t̄ius, s̄t̄ius*, rather; *p̄t̄issimū, pr̄æcipuè, pr̄æsertim*, chiefly, especially; *imò*, yes, nay, nay rather.

4. LIKENESS or EQUALITY; as, *ita, sic, adeò*, so; *ut, ūti, sicut, sicūti, velūt, velūti, ceu, tanquam, quasi*, as, as if; *quemadmōdum*, even as; *satis*, enough; *it̄idem*, in like manner; *juxta*, alike, equally.

5. UNLIKENESS or INEQUALITY; as, *aliter, secus*, otherwise; *aliōquā* or *aliōquin*, else; *nēdum*, much more or much less.

6. ABATEMENT; as, *sensim, paulatim, p̄dētentim*, by degrees, piecemeal; *viz*, scarcely; *ægre*, hardly, with difficulty.

7. EXCLUSION; as, *tantum, solū, modō, tantummōdo, duntaxat, ēmum*, only.

Derivation, Comparison, and Composition of ADVERBS.

Adverbs are derived, 1. from Substantives, and end commonly in *TIM* or *TUS*; as, *Partim*, partly, by parts; *nominatim*, by name; *generatim*, by kinds, generally; *speciatim, vīcatim, gregatim*; *radicitus*, from the root, &c. 2. From Adjectives: and these are by far the most numerous. Such as come from Adjectives of the first and second declension usually end in *E*; as, *liberè*, freely; *plenè*, fully: some in *O, UM*, and *TER*: as, *falsò, tantum, graviter*: a few in *A, ITUS*, and *IM*; as, *rectè, antiquit̄us, privatim*. Some are used two or three ways, as, *primum*, v. -ò; *purè, -iter*; *certè, -ò*; *cautè, -tim*; *humanè, -iter, -it̄us*; *publicè, publicit̄us*, &c. Adverbs from adjectives of the third declension commonly end in *TER*, seldom in *E*; as, *turpiter, feliciter, acriter, pariter*; *facilè, repente*: one in *O, omnino*. The neuter of Adjectives is sometimes taken adverbially; as, *recens natus*, for *recenter*; *perfidum ridens*, for *perfidè*, *Hor. multa reluctans*, for *multum* or *valde*, *Virg.* So in English we say, *to speak loud, high*, &c. for *loudly, highly*, &c. In many cases a Substantive is understood; as, *primo*, sc. *loco*; *oplatò advenis*, sc. *tempore*; *hàc*, sc. *vià*, &c.

3. From each of the pronominal adjectives *ille, iste, hic, is, idem*, &c. are formed adverbs, which express all the circumstances of place; as, from *ille*, *illic, illuc, illorsum, illinc*, and *illac*. So from *quis, ubi, quo, quorsum, unde*, and *quā*. Also of time; thus, *quando, quādiu*, &c.

4. From verbs and participles; as, *cæsim*, with the edge; *punctim*, with the point; *strictim*, closely; from *cado, pungo, stringo*; *amanter, pr̄operanter, dubitanter*; *distinctè, emendatè*; *meritò, inopinatò*, &c. But these last are thought to be in the ablative, having *ex* understood.

5. From prepositions; as, *intus, intro*, from *in*; *clanculum*, from *clam*; *subtus*, from *sub*, &c.

Adverbs derived from adjectives are commonly compared like their primitives. The *positive* generally ends in *e*, or *ter*; as, *durè, facilè, acriter*: the *comparative* in *ius*; as, *durius, facilius, acrius*: the *superlative* in *ime*; as, *durissimè, facillimè, acerrimè*.

If the comparison of the adjective be irregular or defective, the comparison of the adverb is so too; as, *benè, melius, optimè; malè, pejùs, pessimè; parùm, minùs, minimè, & -ùm; multum, plus, plurimùm; prope, propius, proximè; ocyùs, ocyssime; priùs, primò, -um; nuper, nuperrimè; novè, & noviter, novissimè; merito, meritissimò, &c.* These adverbs also are compared whose primitives are obsolete; as, *sæpè, sæpiùs, sæpissimè; penitùs, penitiùs, penitissime; satis, satiùs; secus, seciùs, &c.* *Magis, maxime; and potius, potissimum,* want the positive.

Adverbs in English are not varied by comparison, except some few of them, particularly irregulars, as *often, oftener, oftenest; well, better, best; much, more, most, &c.*

Adverbs are variously compounded with all the different parts of speech; thus, *postridie, magnopère, maximopere, summopere, tantopere, multimòdis, omnimòdis, quomòdo, quare; of postero die, magno opere, &c. Illicet, scilicet, videlicet, of ire, scire, videre, licet; illico, of in loco; quorsum, of quo verum; comminus, hand to hand, of cum or con and manus; eminus, at a distance, of e and manus; denuo, anew, of de novo; quin, why not, but, of qui ne; cur, of cui rei; pedetentim, step by step, as it were, of pedem tendendo; perendie, for perempto die; nimirum, of ne, i. e. non and mirum; antea, postea, præterea, &c. of ante and ea, &c. Ubivis, quovis, undelicet, quousque, sicut, sicuti, velut, veluti, desuper, insuper, quæmobrem, &c. of ubi and vis, &c. nudiustertius, of nunc dies tertius; identidem, of idem et idem; impræsentiarum, i. e. in tempore rerum præsentium, &c.*

OBS. 1. The adverb is not an essential part of speech. It only serves to express shortly, in one word, what must otherwise have required two or more; as, *sapienter*, wisely, for *cum sapientia*; *hic*, for *in hoc loco*; *semper*, for *in omni tempore*; *semel*, for *una vice*; *his*, for *duabus vicibus*; *Mehercule*, for *Hercules me juvet*, &c.

OBS. 2. Some adverbs of time, place, and order, are frequently used the one for the other; as *ubi*, where or when; *inde*, from that place, from that time, after that, next; *hactenus*, hitherto, thus far, with respect to place, time, or order, &c.

OBS. 3. Some adverbs of time are either *past, present, or future*; as, *jam*, already, now, by and by; *olim*, long ago, some time, hereafter. Some adverbs of place are equally various; thus, *esse peregrè*, to be abroad; *ire peregrè*, to go abroad; *redire peregrè*, to return from abroad.

OBS. 4. Interrogative adverbs of time and place doubled or compounded with *cunque*, answer to the English adjection *so ever*; as *ubique, or ubicunque*, wheresoever; *quòquo, quòcunque*, whithersoever, &c. The same holds also in interrogative words; as, *quotquot, or quotcunque*, how many soever; *quantusquantus, or quantuscunque*, how great soever; *utut, or utcunque*, however or howsoever, &c. In English, the adverbs *here, there, and where*, when joined to certain participles or prepositions, as, *to, of, by, with, in, &c.* have the signification of pronouns; as, *hereof*, the same with *of this*; *thereof*, the same with *of that*; *whereof, of which, &c.*

PREPOSITION.

A Preposition is an indeclinable word, which shows the relation of one thing to another.

There are twenty-eight prepositions in Latin, which govern the accusative; that is, have an accusative after them.

Ad,	To.	Infra,	Beneath.
Apud,	At.	Juxta,	Nigh to.
Ante,	Before.	Ob,	For.
Adversus,	} Against, towards.	Propter,	For, hard by.
Adversum,		Per,	By, through.
Contra,	Against.	Præter,	Besides, except.
Cis,	} On this side.	Pœnes,	In the power of.
Citra,		Post,	After.
Circa,	} About.	Pœne,	Behind.
Circum,		Sœcus,	By, along.
Erga,	Towards.	Sœcundum,	According to.
Extra,	Without.	Supra,	Above.
Inter,	Between, among.	Trans,	On the farther side.
Intra,	Within.	Ultra,	Beyond.

The Prepositions which govern the ablative are fifteen; namely,

A.	} From or by.	De,	Of, concerning.
Ab,		E,	} Of, out of.
Abs.	} Without.	Ex,	
Absque,		Pro,	For.
Cum,	With.	Præ,	Before.
Clam,	} Without the know- ledge of.	Pålám,	} With the knowledge of.
Cõram,		Sine,	Without.
	Before, in the pres- ence of.	Tênus,	Up to, as far as.

These four govern sometimes the accusative, and sometimes the ablative.

In, *In, into.* Sub, *Under.* Sûper, *Above.* Subter, *Beneath.*

Obs. 1. Prepositions are so called, because they are generally placed before the word with which they are joined. Some, however, are put after; as, *cum*, when joined with *me, te, se*, and sometimes with *quo, qui, and quibus*: thus, *mecum, tecum, &c.* *Tenus* is always placed after; as, *mento tenus*, up to the chin. So likewise are *versus* and *usque*; and *ward*, in English; as, *toward, eastward, &c.*

Obs. 2. Prepositions, both in English and Latin, are often compounded with other parts of speech, particularly with verbs, as, *subire*, to undergo. In English they are frequently put after verbs; as, *to go in, to go out, to look to, &c.*

Prepositions are also sometimes compounded together; as, *Ex adversus eum locum*, Cic. *Ex adversum Athenas*, C. Nep. *In ante diem quartum. Kalendarum Decembris distulit*, i. e. *usque in eum diem*, Cic. *Supplicatio indicata est ex ante diem quintum idus Octob. i. e. ab eo die*, Liv. *Ex ante pridie idus Septembris*, Plin. But prepositions compounded together commonly become adverbs or conjunctions; as, *propålám, proçinus, insuper, &c.*

Obs. 3. Prepositions in composition usually retain their primitive signification; as, *adeo*, to go to; *præpono*, to place before. But from this there are several exceptions. 1. *IN* joined with adjectives generally denotes privation; as, *infîdus*, unfaithful; but when joined with verbs, increases their signification; as, *indûro*, to harden greatly. In some words, *in* has two contrary senses; *invocâtus*, called upon or not called upon. So *infrênâtus, immutâtus, insuetus, impensus, inhumatus, intentatus, &c.* 2. *PER* commonly increases the signification; as, *Percârus, percêler, percônis, percuriôsus, perdifficilis, perelegans, pergrâtus, pergrâvis, perhospîtalis, perillustris, perlatus, &c.* very dear, very swift, &c. 3. *PRÆ* sometimes increases; as, *Præclârus, prædives, prædulcis, prædûrus, præpinguis, prævalidus; prævâleo, præpolleo*; and also *EX*; as, *Exclâmo, exaggêro, exaugeo, excalefaceo, extenuo, exhilâro*; but *EX* sometimes denotes privation; as, *Exsanguis*, bloodless, pale; *excors, exanimis, -mo, &c.* 4. *SUB* often diminishes; as, *Subalbidus, subabsurdus, subamârus, subdulcis, subgrandis, subgrâvis, subniger, &c.* a little white or whitish, &c. *DE* often

signifies downward; as, *Decido, decurro, degraŭo, despicio, delābor*: sometimes increases; as, *deimor, demīror*; and sometimes expresses privation; as, *Demens, decolor, deformis, &c.*

OBS. 4. There are five or six syllables, namely, *am, di, or dis, re, se, con*, which are commonly called *Inseparable Prepositions*, because they are only to be found in compound words: however, they generally add something to the signification of the words with which they are compounded; thus,

Am,	round about.	}	as,	{	Ambio,	to surround.	
Di,	asunder.				Divello,	to pull asunder.	
Dis,					Distrāho,	to draw asunder.	
Re,					again.	Rĕlēgo,	to read again.
Se,					aside, or apart.	Sĕpōno,	to lay aside.
Con,					together.	Concreſco,	to grow together.

INTERJECTION.

An Interjection is an indeclinable word *thrown in between* the parts of a sentence, to express some passion or emotion of the mind.

Some Interjections are natural sounds, and common to all languages; as, *Oh! Ah!*

Interjections express in one word a whole sentence, and thus fitly represent the quickness of the passions.

The different passions have commonly different words to express them; thus,

1. JOY; as, *evax!* hey, brave, lo!
2. GRIEF; as, *ab, hei, heu, ehu!* ah, alas, woe is me!
3. WONDER; as, *papæ!* O strange! *vah!* hah!
4. PRAISE; as, *euge!* well done!
5. AVERSION; as, *apāge!* away, begone, avaunt, off, fy, tush!
6. EXCLAIMING; as, *Oh! proh! O!*
7. SURPRISE or FEAR; as, *atat!* ha, aha!
8. IMPRECATION; as, *væ!* woe, pox on't!
9. LAUGHTER; as, *ha, ha, he!*
10. SILENCING; as, *au, 'st, pax!* silence, hush, 'st!
11. CALLING; as, *eho, ehōdum, io, ho!* soho, ho, O!
12. DERISION; as, *hui!* away with!
13. ATTENTION; as, *hem!* ha!

Some interjections denote several different passions; thus, *Vah* is used to express joy, and sorrow, and wonder, &c.

Adjectives of the neuter gender are sometimes used for interjections; as, *Malum!* with a mischief! *Infandum!* O shame! fy, fy! *Misērum,* O wretched! *Nefas!* O the villany!

CONJUNCTION.

A Conjunction is an indeclinable word, which serves to join sentences together.

Thus, *You and I*, and the *boy*, read *Virgil*, is one sentence made up of these three, by the conjunction *and* twice employed; *I read Virgil; You read Virgil; the boy reads Virgil.* In like manner, "*You and I read Virgil, but the boy reads Ovid,*" is one sentence made up of three, by the conjunctions *and* and *but*.

Conjunctions, according to their different meaning, are divided into the following classes:

1. COPULATIVE; as, *et, ac, atque, que*, and; *etiam, quoque, item*, also; *cum, tum*, both, and. Also their contraries, *nec, neque, neu, neve*, neither, nor.

2. DISJUNCTIVE; as, *aut, ve, vel, seu, sive*, either, or.

3. CONCESSIVE; as, *etsi, etiamsi, tametsi, licet, quanquam, quamvis*, though, although, albeit.

4. ADVERSATIVE; as, *sed, verum, autem, at, ast, atqui*, but; *tamen, attamen, veruntamen, verum enimvero*, yet, notwithstanding, nevertheless.

5. CAUSAL; as, *nam, namque, enim*, for; *quia, quippe, quoniam*, because; *quod*, that, because.

6. ILLATIVE or RATIONAL; as, *ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, itaque*, therefore; *quapropter, quocirca*, wherefore; *proinde*, therefore; *cum, quum*, seeing, since; *quandoquidem*, for as much as.

7. FINAL or PERFECTIVE; as, *ut, uti*, that, to the end that.

8. CONDITIONAL; as, *si, sin, if; dum, modo, dummodo*, provided, upon condition that; *siquidem*, if indeed.

9. EXCEPTIVE or RESTRICTIVE; as, *ni, nisi*, unless, except.

10. DIMINUTIVE; as, *saltem, certe*, at least.

11. SUSPENSIVE or DUBITATIVE; as, *an, anne, num*, whether; *ne, annon*, whether, not; *necne*, or not.

12. EXPLETIVE; as, *autem, vero*, now, truly; *quidem, equidem*, indeed.

13. ORDINATIVE; as, *deinde, thereafter; denique*, finally; *insuper*, moreover; *cæterum*, moreover, but, however.

14. DECLARATIVE; as, *videlicet, scilicet, nempe, nimirum, &c.* to wit, namely.

Obs. 1. The same words, as they are taken in different views, are both *adverbs* and *conjunctions*. Thus, *an, anne, &c.* are either *interrogative adverbs*; as, *An scribit?* Does he write? or, *suspensive conjunctions*; as, *Nescio an scribat*, I know not if he writes.

Obs. 2. Some conjunctions, according to their natural order, stand first in a sentence; as, *Ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel, sive, at, sed, verum, nam, quandoquidem, quocirca, quare, sin, siquidem, præterquam, &c.*: some stand in the second place; as, *Autem, vero, quoque, quidem, enim*: and some may indifferently be put either first or second; as, *Etiam, equidem, licet, quamvis, quanquam, tamen, attamen, namque, quod, quia, quoniam, quippe, utpote, ut, uti, ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, itaque, proinde, propterea, si, ni, nisi, &c.* Hence arose the division of them into *Prepositive, Subjunctive, and Common*. To the subjunctive may be added these three, *que, ve, ne*, which are always joined to some other word, and are called *Enclitics*, because, when put after long syllables, they make the accent incline to the foregoing syllable; as in the following verse,

Indoctusque pilæ, discive, trochive, quiescit. Horat.

But when these enclitic conjunctions come after a short vowel, they do not affect its pronunciation; thus,

Arbuteos fætus montanæque fraga legebant. Ovid.

SENTENCES.

A SENTENCE is any thought of mind expressed by two or more words put together; as, *I read. The boy reads Virgil.*

That part of grammar which teaches to put words rightly together in sentences, is called *Syntax* or *Construction*.

Words in sentences have a twofold relation to one another; namely, that of *Concord* or Agreement; and that of *Government* or Influence.

Concord, is when one word agrees with another in some accidents; as in gender, number, person, or case.

Government, is when one word requires another to be put in a certain case, or mode.

GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF SYNTAX.

1. In every sentence there must be a verb and a nominative expressed or understood.

2. Every adjective must have a substantive expressed or understood.

3. All the cases of Latin nouns, except the nominative and vocative, must be governed by some other word.

4. The genitive is governed by a substantive noun expressed or understood.

5. The dative is governed by adjectives and verbs.

6. The accusative is governed by an active verb, or by a preposition; or is placed before the infinitive.

7. The vocative stands by itself, or has an interjection joined with it.

8. The ablative is governed by a preposition expressed or understood.

9. The infinitive is governed by some verb or adjective.

10. The genitive or possessive case in English always depends on some noun; and the objective or accusative case is put after a verb active or a preposition.

All sentences are either SIMPLE or COMPOUND.

Syntax, therefore, may be divided into two parts, according to the general division of sentences.

SIMPLE SENTENCES.

A simple Sentence is that which has but one nominative; and one finite verb, *that is*, a verb in the indicative, subjunctive, or imperative mode.

In a simple sentence there is only one *Subject* and one *Attribute*.

The **SUBJECT** is the word which marks the person or thing spoken of.

The **ATTRIBUTE** expresses what we affirm concerning the subject; as,

The boy reads his lesson: Here, "the boy," is the *Subject* of discourse, or the person spoken of: "reads his lesson," is the *Attribute*, or what we affirm concerning the subject. *The diligent boy reads his lesson carefully at home*. Here we have still the same subject, "the boy," marked by the character of "diligent" added to it; and the same attribute "reads his lesson," with the circumstances of manner and place subjoined, "carefully," "at home."

CONCORD.

The following words agree together in sentences. 1. A substantive with a substantive. 2. An adjective with a substantive. 3. A verb with a nominative.

1. Agreement of one Substantive with another.

RULE I. Substantives signifying the same thing, agree in case; as,

Cicero orator, Cicero the orator.
Urbs Athênæ, The city of Athens.

Cicerōnis oratōris, Of Cicero the orator.
Urbis Athênārum, Of the city Athens.

2. Agreement of an Adjective with a Substantive.

II. An Adjective agrees with a substantive, in gender, number, and case; as,

Bonus vir, a good man.

Boni viri, good men.

Fœmina casta, a chaste woman.

Fœmina castæ, chaste women.

Dulce pomum, a sweet apple.

Dulcia poma, sweet apples.

And so through all the cases and degrees of comparison.

This rule applies also to adjective pronouns and participles; as, *Meus liber*, my book; *ager colendus*, a field to be tilled; Plur. *Mei libri*, *agri colendi*, &c.

OBS. 1. The substantive is frequently understood, or its place supplied by an infinitive; and then the adjective is put in the neuter gender; as, *triste*, sc. *negotium*, a sad thing, Virg.; *Tuum scire*, the same with *Tua scientia*, thy knowledge, Pers. We sometimes, however, find the substantive understood in the feminine; as, *Non posteriores feram*, sup. *partes*, Ter.

Obs. 2. An adjective often supplies the place of a substantive; as, *Certus amicus*, a sure friend; *Bona ferina*, good venison; *Summum bonum*, the chief good; *Homo* being understood to *amicus*, *caro* to *ferina*, and *negotium* to *bonum*. A substantive is sometimes used as an adjective; as, *incola turba vocant*, the inhabitants. *Ovid, Fast.* 3. 582.

Obs. 3. These adjectives, *primus*, *medius*, *ultimus*, *extremus*, *infimus*, *imus*, *summus*, *supremus*, *reliquus*, *cætera*, usually signify the first part, the middle part, &c. of any thing; as, *Media nox*, the middle part of the night; *Summa arbor*, the highest part of a tree.

Obs. 4. In English the adjective generally goes before the noun; as, a wise man, a good horse; unless something depend upon the adjective; as, food convenient for me; or the adjective be emphatical; as, Alexander the Great. And the article goes before the adjective: except the adjectives *all*, *such*, and *many*, and others subjoined to the adverbs, *so*, *as*, and *how*; as, *all the men*; *many a man*; *so good a man*; *as good a man*; *how beautiful a prospect*! or when there are two or more adjectives joined to the noun, as, *a man learned and religious*.

Obs. 5. Whether the adjective or substantive ought to be placed first in Latin, no certain rule can be given. Only if the substantive be a monosyllable and the adjective a polysyllable, the substantive is elegantly put first; as, *vir clarissimus*, *res præstantissima*, &c.

Obs. 6. A substantive, in English, sometimes supplies the place of an adjective; as, *sea-water*, *land-fowl*, *forest-trees*, *a stone-arch*, &c. and even when no hyphen is marked; as, *the London Chronicle*, *the Edinburgh Magazine*.

Obs. 7. Nouns of measure, number, and weight, are sometimes joined in the singular with Numeral Adjectives plural; as, *fifty foot*; *six score*; *ten thousand fathom*; *a hundred head*; *a hundred weight*. We say, *by this means*, *by that means*; or, *by these means*, *by those means*; or, *by this mean*, *by that mean*, as it was used anciently: *So, this forty years*, for *these*; these and those kind of things, for *this* and *that*. *Each*, *every*, *either*, are always joined with the singular number, unless the plural noun convey a collective idea; as, *every twelve years*.

3. Agreement of a Verb with a Nominative.

III. A Verb agrees with its Nominative in number and person; as,

Ego lego, I read.

Tu scribis, Thou writest or you write.

Præceptor docet, the master teaches.

Nos legimus, We read.

Vos scribitis, Ye or you write.

Præceptores docent, Masters teach.

And so through all the modes, tenses, and numbers.

Obs. 1. The nominative of the first and second person in Latin is seldom expressed, unless for the sake of emphasis or distinction; as, *Tu es patronus*, *tu pater*, Ter. *Tu legis*, *ego scribo*.

Obs. 2. An infinitive, or some part of a sentence, often supplies the place of a nominative; as, *Mentiri est turpe*, to lie is base; *Diu non perlitatum tenuit dictatorem*; the sacrifice not being attended with favorable omens, detained the

dictator for a long time, Liv. 7. 8. Sometimes the neuter pronoun *id* or *illud* is added, to express the meaning more strongly; as, *Facere quæ libet, id est esse regem*, Sallust.

Obs. 3. The infinitive mode often supplies the place of the third person of the imperfect of the indicative; as, *Milites fugere*, the soldiers fled, for *fugiebant* or *fugere cæperunt*. *Invidere omnes mihi*, for *invidebant*.

Obs. 4. A collective noun may be joined with a verb either of the singular or of the plural number; as, *Multitudo stat*, or *stant*; the multitude stands, or stand.

¶ A collective noun, when joined with a verb singular, expresses many considered as one whole; but when joined with a verb plural, signifies many separately, or as individuals. Hence, if an adjective or participle be subjoined to the verb, when of the singular number, they will agree both in gender and number with the collective noun; but if the verb be plural, the adjective or participle will be plural also, and of the same gender with the individuals of which the collective noun is composed; as, *Pars erant cæsi: Pars obnixæ trucidunt*, sc. *formicæ*, Virg. *Æn.* iv. 406. *Magna pars raptæ*, sc. *virginis*, Liv. i. 9. Sometimes, however, though more rarely, the adjective is thus used in the singular; as, *Pars arduus*, Virg. *Æn.* vii. 624.

Obs. 5. The neuter pronoun *it* in English, is often the nominative to the verb when we speak either of persons or things; as, *It is I; it is he; it was they; it appears*; in Latin, *Ego sum, ille est, &c.* *It* is sometimes understood; as, *may be* for *it may be*; *as follows* for *as it follows*; *as is thought* for *as it is thought*.

Obs. 6. We often say in English, *You was* instead of *You were*: which is a great inaccuracy in grammar; but so frequently used, particularly in common conversation, that it seems to be in a manner established by custom. So *there's two or three of us for there are*; *there was more sophists for were*; *great pains has been taken for have, &c.*

Accusative before the Infinitive.

¶ IV. The infinitive mode has an accusative before it; as,

Gaudeo te valere,

I am glad that you are well.

Obs. 1. The particle *that* in English, is the sign of the accusative before the infinitive in Latin, when it comes between two verbs, without expressing intention or design. Sometimes the particle is omitted; as, *Aiunt regem adventare*, They say the king is coming, *that* being understood.

Obs. 2. The accusative before the infinitive always depends upon some other verb, commonly on a neuter or substantive verb; but seldom on a verb taken in an active sense.

Obs. 3. The infinitive, with the accusative before it, seems sometimes to supply the place of a nominative; as, *Turpe est militem fugere*, That a soldier should fly is a shameful thing.

Obs. 4. The infinitive *esse* or *fuisse*, must frequently be supplied, especially after participles; as, *Hostium exercitum cæsum fusumque cognovi*, Cic. Sometimes both the accusative and infinitive are understood; as, *Pollicitus suscepturum*, scil. *me esse*, Ter.

Obs. 5. The infinitive may frequently be otherwise rendered by the conjunctions *quod, ut, ne, or quin*; as, *Gaudeo te valere, i. e. quod valeas, or propter tuam bonam valetudinem: Jubeo vos bene sperare, or ut bene speretis; Prohibeo eum exire, or ne exeat; non dubito eum fecisse, or much better, quin fecerit. Scio quod filius amet, Plaut. for filium amare. Miror, si potuit, for eum potuisse, Cic. Nemo dubitat, ut populus Romanus omnes virtute superârit, for populum Romanum superasse, Nep. Ex animi sententia juro, ut ego rempublicam non deseram, for me non deserturum esse, Liv. xxii. 53.*

The same Case after a Verb as before it.

¶ V. Any verb may have the same case after it as before it; *when both words refer to the same thing*; as,

Ego sum discipulus,

Tu vocaris Joannes,

Illa incedit regina,

Scio illum haberi sapientem,

Scio vos esse discipulos,

I am a scholar.

You are named John.

She walks as a queen.

I know that he is esteemed wise.

I know that you are scholars.

So *Redeo iratus, jaceo supplex; Evadent digni*, they will become worthy; *Rempublicam defendi adolescens; nolo esse longus*, I am unwilling to be tedious; *Malim videri timidus, quam parum prudens*, Cic. *Non licet mihi esse negligentem*, Cic. *Natura dedit omnibus esse beatis*, Claud. *Cupio me esse clementem; cupio non putari mendacem; Vult esse medium*, sc. *se*, He wishes to be neuter, Cic. *Disce esse pater; Hoc est esse patrem?* sc. *eum*, Ter. *Id est, dominum, non imperatorem esse*, Sallust.

Obs. 1. This rule implies nothing else but the agreement of an adjective with a substantive, or of one substantive with another; for those words in a sentence which refer to the same object, must always agree together, how much soever disjoined.

Obs. 2. The verbs which most frequently have the same case after them as before them, are,

1. Substantive and neuter verbs; as, *Sum, fio, forem, and existo; eo, venio, sto, sedeo, evado, jaceo, fugio, &c.*

2. The passive of verbs of naming, judging, &c. as, *Dicor, appellor, vocor, nominor, nuncupor*, to which add, *videor, existimor, creor, constituor, salutor, designor, &c.*

These and other like verbs, admit after them only the nominative, accusative, or dative. When they have before them the genitive, they have after them an accusative; as, *Interest omnium esse bonos*, scil. *se*, it is the interest of all to be good. In some cases we can use either the nom. or accus. promiscuously; as, *Cupio, dici, doctus or doctum*, sc. *me dici*; *Cupio esse clemens, non putari mendax; vult esse medius*.

Obs. 3. When any of the above verbs are placed between two nominatives of different numbers, they commonly agree in number with the former; as, *dos est decem talenta*, her dowry is ten talents, Ter. *Omnia pontus erunt*, Ovid. But sometimes with the latter; as, *Amantium iræ amoris integratio est*, The quarrels of lovers is a renewal of love, Ter. So when an adjective is applied to two substantives of different genders, it commonly agrees in gender with that substantive which is most the subject of discourse; as, *Oppidum est appellatum Possidonia*, Plin. Sometimes, however, the adjective agrees with the nearer substantive; as, *non omnis error stultitia est dicenda*, Cic.

OBS. 4. When the infinitive of any verb, particularly the substantive verb *esse*, has the dative before it, governed by an Impersonal verb, or any other word, it may have after it either the dative or the accusative; as, *Licet mihi esse beato*, I may be happy; or, *licet mihi esse beatum*, me being understood; thus, *licet mihi (me) esse beatum*. The dative before *esse* is often to be supplied; as, *licet esse beatum*, one may be happy, scil. *alicui*, or *homini*.

OBS. 5. The poets use certain forms of expression, which are not to be imitated in prose; as, *Retulit Ajax Jovis esse pronēpos*, for *Se esse pronepotem*, Ovid. Met. xii. 141. *Cum pateris sapiens emendatusque vocari*, for *sapientum*, &c. Horat. Ep. 1. 16. 30. *Acceptum refero versibus esse nocens*, Ovid. *Tutumque putavit jam bonus esse socer*, Lucan.

OBS. 6. The verb to be in English, has always a nominative case after it; as, *It was I*; unless it be of the infinitive mode; as, *I took it to be him*. We often use, however, this impropriety in common conversation, *It is me*, *It can't be me*, *It was him*; for *It is I*, *It cannot be I*, *It was he*.

GOVERNMENT.

I. THE GOVERNMENT OF SUBSTANTIVES.

VI. One Substantive governs another in the genitive, (*when the latter substantive signifies a different thing from the former*;) as,

Amor Dei, The love of God.

Lex naturæ, The law of nature.

Domus Cæsaris, The house of Cæsar, or Cæsar's house.

OBS. 1. When one substantive is governed by another in the genitive, it expresses in general the relation of property or possession, and therefore is often elegantly turned into a possessive adjective; as, *Domus patris*, or *paterna*, a father's house; *Filius heri* or *herilis*, a master's son: and among the poets, *Labor Hercules*, for *Herculis*; *Ensis Evandrius*, for *Evandri*.

OBS. 2. When the substantive noun in the genitive signifies a person, it may be taken either in an active or passive sense; thus, *Amor Dei*, The love of God, either means the love of God towards us, or our love towards him: So *caritas patris*, signifies either the affection of a father to his children, or theirs to him. But often the substantive can only be taken either in an active or in a passive sense; thus, *Timor Dei*, always implies *Deus timetur*; and *Providentia Dei*, *Deus providet*. So *Caritas ipsius soli*, affection to the very soil, Liv. ii. 1.

OBS. 3. Both the former and latter substantive are sometimes to be understood; as, *Hectōris Andromæche*, scil. *uxor*; *Ventum est ad Vestæ*, scil. *ædem* or *templum*; *Ventum est tria millia*, scil. *passuum*, three miles.

OBS. 4. We find the dative often used, after a verb for the genitive, particularly among the poets; as, *Ei corpus porrigitur*, His body is extended, Virg. *Æn.* vi. 596.

OBS. 5. Some substantives are joined with certain prepositions; as, *Amicitia*, *inimicitia pax*, cum aliquo; *Amor in* vel *erga*, aliquem; *Gaudium de* re; *Cura de* aliquo; *Mentio illius*, vel *de illo*; *Quies ab armis*; *Fumus ex incendiis*; *Prædator ex sociis*, for *sociorum*, Sallust, &c.

OBS. 6. The genitive in Latin is often rendered in English by several other particles besides *of*; as, *Descensus Averni*, the descent to Avernus; *Prudentia juris*, skill in the law.

SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS are governed in the genitive like substantive nouns; as, *pars mei*, a part of me.

So also adjective pronouns, when used as substantives, or having a noun understood; as, *Liber ejus*, *illius*, *hujus*, &c. The book of him, or his book, &c.

hominis: The book of her, or her book, sc. *fæminæ*; *Libri eorum* v. *earum*, their books; *Cujus liber*, the book of whom, or whose books; *Quorum libri*, whose books, &c. But we always say, *meus liber*, not *mei*; *pater noster*, not *nostri*; *suum jus*, not *sui*.

When a passive sense is expressed, we use *mei*, *tui*, *sui*, *nostri*, *vestri*, *nostrum*, *vestrum*; but we use their possessives when an active sense is expressed; as, *amor mei*, The love of me, that is, the love wherewith I am loved; *Amor meus*, My love, that is, the love wherewith I love. We find, however, the possessives sometimes used passively, and their primitives taken actively; as, *Odium tuum*, Hatred of thee, Ter. Phorm. v. 8. 27. *Labor mei*, My labor, Plaut.

The possessives *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*, have sometimes nouns, pronouns, and participles after them in the genitive; as, *Pectus tuum hominis*, *simpliçis*, Cic. Phil. ii. 43. *Noster duorum eventus*, Liv. *Tuum ipsius studium*, Cic. *Mea scripta*, *timentis*, &c. Hor. *Solius meum peccatum corrigi non potest*, Cic. *Id maxime quemque decet, quod est cujusque suum maxime*. Id.

The reciprocals *SUI* and *SUUS* are used when the action of the verb is reflected as it were upon its nominative; as, *Cato interfecit se*. *Miles defendit suam vitam*; *Dicit se scripturum esse*. We find, however, *is* or *ille* sometimes used in examples of this kind; as, *Deum cognoscimus ex operibus ejus*, Cic. *Persuadent Rauracis, ut una cum iis proficiscantur*, for *una secum*, Cæs.

VII. If the latter Substantive have an Adjective of praise or dispraise joined with it, they may be put in the genitive or ablative; as,

Vir summæ prudentiæ, or *summâ prudentiâ*, A man of great wisdom.
Puer probæ indolis, or *probâ indole*, A boy of a good disposition.

Obs. 1. The ablative here is not properly governed by the foregoing substantive, but by some preposition understood; as, *cum*, *de*, *ex*, *in*, &c. Thus, *Vir summâ prudentiâ*, is the same with *vir cum summa prudentia*.

Obs. 2. In some phrases the genitive is only used; as, *Magni formica laboris*, the laborious ant; *Vir imi subsellii*, *homo minimi pretii*, a person of the lowest rank. *Homo nullius stipendii*, a man of no experience in war. Sallust. *Non multi cibi hospitem accipies, sed multi joci*, Cic. *Ager trium jugerum*. In others only the ablative; as, *Es bono animo*, Be of good courage. *Mira sum alacritate ad litigandum*, Cic. *Capite aperto est*, His head is bare; *obvoluto*, covered. *Capite et supercilio semper est rasis*, Id. *Mulier magna nata*, Liv. Sometimes both are used in the same sentence; as, *Adolescens eximiâ spe, summæ virtutis*, Cic. The ablative more frequently occurs in prose than the genitive.

Obs. 3. Sometimes the adjective agrees in case with the former substantive, and then the latter substantive is put in the ablative; thus, we say, either, *Vir præstantis ingenii*, or *præstanti ingenio*; or *Vir præstans ingenio*, and sometimes *præstans ingenii*. Among the poets, the latter substantive is frequently put in the accusative by a Greek construction, *secundum*, or *quod ad*, being understood by the figure commonly called *Synecdöche*; as, *Miles fractus membra*, i. e. *fractus secundum* or *quod ad membra*, or *habens membra fracta*, Horat. *Os humerosque deo similis*, Virg.

Adjectives taken as Substantives.

VIII. An adjective in the neuter gender without a substantive governs the genitive; as,

Multum pecuniæ, Much money. *Quid rei est?* What is the matter?

Obs. 1. This manner of expression is more elegant than *Multa pecunia*, and therefore is much used by the best writers; as, *Plus eloquentiæ, minus sapien-*

tia, tantum fidei, id negotii; quicquid erat patrum, reos diceret, Liv. Id loci; Ad hoc ætatis, Sallust.

Obs. 2. The adjectives which thus govern the genitive like substantives, generally signify quantity; as, *multum, plus, plurimum, tantum, quantum, minus, minimum, &c.* To which add, *hoc, illud, istud, id, quid, aliquid, quidvis, quidam, &c.* *Plus* and *quid* almost always govern the genitive, and, therefore, by some are thought to be substantives.

Obs. 3. *Nihil* and these neuter pronouns *quid, aliquid, &c.* elegantly govern neuter adjectives of the first and second declension in the genitive; as, *nihil sinceri*, no sincerity; but seldom govern, in this manner, adjectives of the third declension, particularly those which end in *is* and *e*; as, *Nequid hostile timerent, not hostilis*; we find, however, *quicquid civilis, Liv. v. 3.*

Obs. 4. Plural adjectives of the neuter gender also govern the genitive, commonly the genitive plural; as, *Angusta viarum, Opaca locorum, Telluris operata, loca* being understood. So *Amara curarum, acuta belli, sc. negotia, Horat.* An adjective, indeed, of any gender, may have a genitive after it, with a substantive understood; as, *Amicus Cæsaris, Patria Ulyssis, &c.*

Opus and *Usus*.

IX. *Opus* and *Usus*, signifying *need*, require the ablative; as,

Est opus pecuniâ, There is need of money. Usus viribus, Need of strength.

Obs. 1. *Opus* and *usus* are substantive nouns, and do not govern the ablative of themselves, but by some preposition, as *pro* or the like, understood. They sometimes, also, although more rarely, govern the genitive; as, *Lectonis opus est, Quint. Operæ usus est, Liv.*

Obs. 2. *Opus* is often construed like an indeclinable adjective; as, *Dux nobis opus est, We need a general, Cic. Dices nummos mihi opus esse, Id. Nobis exempla opus sunt, Id.*

Obs. 3. *Opus* is elegantly joined with the perfect participle; as, *opus maturato, Need of haste; Opus consulto, Need of deliberation; Quid facto usus est? Ter.* The participle has sometimes a substantive joined with it; as, *Mihi opus fuit Hirtio convento, It behoved me to meet with Hirtius, Cic.*

Obs. 4. *Opus* is sometimes joined with the infinitive, or the subjunctive with *ut*; as, *Siquid forte sit, quod opus sit sciri, Cic. Nunc tibi opus est, ægram ut te adsimules, Plaut. Sive opus est imperitare equis, Horat.* It is often placed absolutely, i. e. without depending on any other word; as, *sic opus est; si opus sit, &c.*

II. GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

1. *Adjectives governing the Genitive.*

X. Verbal adjectives, or such as signify an affection of the mind, govern the genitive; as,

Avidus gloriæ, Desirous of glory.

Ignarus fraudis, Ignorant of fraud.

Memor beneficiorum, Mindful of favors.

To this rule belong, I. Verbal adjectives in AX: as, *capax, edax, ferax, tenax, pertinax, &c.* and certain participial adjectives in NS and TUS; as, *amans, appetens, cupiens, insolens, sciens; consultus, doctus, expertus, insuetus, insolitus, &c.* II. Adjectives expressing various affections of the mind,

1. Desire; as, *avarus, cupidus, studiosus, &c.* 2. Knowledge, ignorance, and doubting; as, *callidus, certus, certior, conscius, gnarus, peritus, prudens, &c.* Ignarus, incertus, inscius, imprudens, imperitus, immemor, rudis; *ambiguus, dubius, suspensus, &c.* 3. Care and diligence, and the contrary; as, *anxius, curiosus, sollicitus, providus, diligens; incuriosus, securus, negligens, &c.* 4. Fear and confidence; as, *formidolosus, pavidus, timidus, trepidus; impavidus, interritus, intrepidus.* 5. Guilt and innocence; as, *noxius, reus, suspectus, compertus; innoxius, innocens, insons.*

To these add many adjectives of various significations; as, *ager animi; ardens, audax, aversus, diversus, egregius, erectus, falsus, felix, fessus, furens, ingens, integer, lætus, præstans animi; modicus voti; integer vitæ; seri studiorum, Hor.* But we say, *ager pedibus, ardens in cupiditatibus, præstans doctrinæ, modicus cultu; Lætus negotio, de re, or propter rem, &c.* and never *ager pedum, &c.*

OBS. 1. Verbals in NS are used both as adjectives and participles; thus, *patiens algoris*, able to bear cold; and *patiens algorem*, actually bearing cold. So *amans virtutis*, and *amans virtutem: doctus grammaticæ*, skilled in grammar; *doctus grammaticam*, one who has learned it.

OBS. 2. Many of these adjectives vary their construction; as, *avidus in pecuniis, Cic.* *Avidior ad rem, Ter.* *Jure consultus & peritus, or juris, Cic.* *Rudis literarum, in jure civili, Cic.* *Rudis arte, ad mala, Ovid.* *Doctus Latine, Latinis literis, Cic.* *Assuetus labore, in omnia, Liv.* *Mensæ herili, Virg.* *Insuetus moribus Romanis, in the dat. Liv.* *Laboris, ad onera portanda, Cæs.* *Desuetus bello, & triumphis, in the dat. or abl. rather the dat. Virg.* *Anxius, sollicitus, securus, de re aliqua; diligens, in, ad, de, Cic.* *Negligens in aliquem, in or de re; Reus de vi, criminibus, Cic.* *Certior factus de re, rather than rei, Cic.*

OBS. 3. The genitive after these adjectives is thought to be governed by *causâ, in re, or in negotio*, or some such word understood; as, *Cupidus laudis, i. e. causâ or in re laudis*, desirous of praise, that is, on account of, or in the matter of praise. But many of the adjectives themselves may be supposed to contain in their own signification the force of a substantive; thus, *studiosus pecuniæ*, fond of money, is the same with *habens studium pecuniæ*, having a fondness for money.

XI. Partitives, and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural; as,

Aliquis philosophorum,
Senior fratrum,
Doctissimus Romanorum,
Quis nostrum?
Una musarum,
Octavus sapientum,

Some one of the philosophers.
 The elder of the brothers.
 The most learned of the Romans.
 Which of us?
 One of the muses.
 The eighth of the wise men.

Adjectives are called *Partitives*, or are said to be placed *partitively*, when they signify a part of any number of persons or things, having after them, in English, *of* or *among*; as, *alius, nullus, solus, &c. quis* and *qui*, with their compounds:

also, Comparatives, Superlatives, and some Numerals; as, *unus, duo, tres; primus, secundus, &c.* To these add *multi, pauci, plurique, medius.*

Obs. 1. Partitives, &c. agree in gender with the substantive which they have after them in the genitive; but when there are two substantives of different genders, the partitive, &c. rather agrees with the former; as, *Indus fluminum maximus*, Cic. Rarely with the latter; as, *Delphinus animalium velocissimus*, Plin. The genitive here is governed by *ex numero*, or by the same substantive understood in the singular number; as, *Nulla sororum*, scil. *soror*, or *ex numero sororum*.

Obs. 2. Partitives, &c. are often otherwise construed with the prepositions, *de, e, ex, or in*; as, *Unus de fratribus*; or by the poets, with *ante* or *inter*; as, *Pulcherrimus ante omnes*, for *omnium*, Virg. *Primus inter omnes*, Id.

Obs. 3. Partitives, &c. govern collective nouns in the genitive singular, and are of the same gender with the individuals of which the collective noun is composed; as, *Vir fortissimus nostræ civitatis*, Cic. *Maximus stirpis*, Liv. *Ultimos orbis Britannos*, Horat. ed. 4. 35. 29.

Obs. 4. Comparatives are used, when we speak of two; Superlatives when we speak of more than two; as, *Major fratrum*, the elder of the brothers, meaning *two*; *Maximus fratrum*, the eldest of the brothers, meaning *more than two*. In like manner, *uter, alter, neuter*, are applied with regard to two; *quis, unus, alius, nullus*, with regard to three or more; as, *Uter vestrum*, Whether or which of you two; *Quis vestrum*, Which of you three; but these are sometimes taken promiscuously the one for the other.

Adjectives governing the Dative.

XII. Adjectives signifying profit or disprofit, likeness or unlikeness, &c. govern the dative; as,

Utilis bello,
Perniciosus reipublicæ,
Similis patri,

Profitable for war.
Hurtful to the commonwealth.
Like to his father.

Or thus, *Any adjective may govern the dative in Latin, which has the signs TO or FOR after it in English.*

To this rule belong:

1. Adjectives of profit or disprofit; as, *Benignus, bonus, commodus, felix, fructuosus, prosper, saluber*.—*Calamitosus, damnosus, dirus, exitiosus, funestus, incommodus, malus, noxius, perniciosus, pestifer*.

2. Of pleasure or pain; as, *Acceptus, dulcis, gratus, gratiosus, jucundus, lætus, suavis*.—*Acerbus, amarus, insuavis, injucundus, ingratus, molestus, tristis*.

3. Of friendship or hatred; as, *Addictus, æquus, amicus, benevolus, blandus, carus, deditus, fidus, fidelis, lenis, mitis, propitius*.—*Adversus, æmulus, asper, crudelis, contrarius, infensus, infestus, infidus, immitis, inimicus, iniquus, invisus, invidus, iratus, odiosus, suspectus, trux*.

4. Of clearness or obscurity; as, *Apertus, certus, compertus, conspicuus, manifestus, notus, perspicuus*.—*Ambiguus, dubius, ignotus, incertus, obscurus*.

5. Of nearness; as, *Finitimus, proprior, proximus, propinquus, socius, vicinus*.

6. Of fitness or unfitness; as, *Aptus, appositus, accommodatus, habilis, idoneus, opportunus*.—*Ineptus, inhabilis, importunus, inconveniens*.

7. Of ease or difficulty; as, *Facilis, levis, obvius, pervius*.—*Difficilis, arduus, gravis, laboriosus, periculosus, inviis*. To these add such as signify propensity or readiness; as, *Pronus, proclivis, propensus, promptus, paratus*.

8. Of equality or inequality; as, *Æqualis, æquævus, par, compar, suppar.*—*Inequalis, impar, dispar, discors.* Also of likeness or unlikeness; as, *Similis, æmulus, geminus.*—*Dissimilis, absonus, alienus, diversus, discolor.*

9. Several adjectives compounded with CON; as, *Cognatus, concolor, concors, confinis, congruus, consanguineus, consentaneus, consonus, conveniens, contiguus, continuus, continens, contiguous*; as, *Mari aër continens est, Cic.*

To these add many other adjectives of various significations; as, *Obnoxius, subjectus, supplex, credulus, absurdus, decorus, deformis, præsto, indecl. at hand, secundus, &c.*—particularly.

Verbals in *BILIS* and *DUS* govern the dative; as,

Amandus vel amabilis omnibus,

To be loved by all men.

So *Mors est terribilis malis*; *Optabilis omnibus pax*; *Adhibenda est nobis diligentia, Cic.*—*Semel, omnibus calcanda est via Iethi, Hor.* Also some participles of the perfect tense; as, *Bella matribus detestata, hated by, Hor.*

Verbals in *DUS* are often construed with the prep. *a*; as, *Deus est venerandus, & colendus a nobis, Cic.* Perfect participles are usually so; as, *Mors Crassi est a multis defleta*, rather than, *multis defleta, Cic.* *A te invitatus, rogatus, proditus, &c. hardly ever tibi.*

OBS. 1. The dative is properly not governed by adjectives, nor by any other part of speech: but put after them, to express the object to which their signification refers.

The particle *to*, in English, is often to be supplied; as, *Similis patri*, Like his father, *to* being understood.

OBS. 2. Substantives have likewise sometimes a dative after them; as, *Ille est pater, dux vel filius mihi*, He is father, leader, or son to me: so, *Præsidium reis, decus amicis, &c. Hor.* *Exitium pecori, Virg.* *Virtutibus hostis, Cic.*

OBS. 3. The following adjectives have sometimes the dative after them, and sometimes the genitive; *Affinis, similis, communis, par, proprius, finitimus, fidus, conterminus, superstes, conscius, æqualis, contrarius*, and *adversus*; as, *Similis tibi, or tui*; *Superstes patri, or patris*; *Consciis facinori, or facinoris.* *Consciis*, and some others, frequently govern both the genitive and dative; as, *Mens sibi conscia recti.* We say, *Similes, dissimiles, pares, disparēs, æquales, communes, inter se*: *Par & communis cum aliquo. Civitas secum ipsa discors; discordes ad alia. Liv.*

OBS. 4. Adjectives signifying usefulness, or fitness, and the contrary, have after them the dative or the accusative with a preposition; as,

Utilis, inutilis, aptus, ineptus, accommodatus, idoneus, habilis, inhabilis, opportunus, conveniens, &c. alicui rei, or ad aliquid. Many other adjectives governing the dative are likewise construed with prepositions; as, *Attentus quæsitis, Hor.* *Attentus ad rem, Ter.*

OBS. 5. Of adjectives which denote friendship or hatred, or any other affection of the mind towards any one. I. Some are usually construed with the dative only; as, *Affabilis, arrogans, asper, carus, difficilis, fidelis, invisus, oratus, offensus, suspectus, ALICUI.* II. Some with the preposition *IN* and the accu-

sative; as, *Acerbus, animatus, beneficus, graciosus, injuriosus, liberalis, mendax, misericors, officiosus, pius, impius, prolixus, severus, sordidus, torvus, vehemens, IN ALIQUEM*. III. Some either with the dative, or with the accus. and the preposition *IN, ERGA, or ADVERSUS* going before; as, *Contumax, criminossus, durus, exitiabilis, gravis, hospitalis, implacabilis*, (and perhaps also *inexorabilis* and *intolerabilis*) *iniquus, sævus, ALICUI or IN ALIQUEM*. *Benevolus, benignus, molestus, ALICUI or ERGA ALIQUEM*. *Mitis, comis, IN or ERGA ALIQUEM* and *ALICUI*. *Pervicax ADVERSUS ALIQUEM*. *Crudelis, IN ALIQUEM*, seldom *ALICUI*. *Amicus, æmulus, infensus, infestus, ALICUI*, seldom *IN ALIQUEM*. *Gratus ALICUI, or IN, ERGA, ADVERSUS, ALIQUEM*. We say, *alienus alicui or alicujus*; but oftener *ab aliquo*, and sometimes *aliquo* without the preposition.

AUDIENS is construed with two datives; as, *Regi dicto audiens erat*, he was obedient to the king, not *regis*; *Dicto audiens fuit jussis magistratum, Nep. Nobis dicto audientes sunt*, not *dictis*, *Cic*.

Obs. 6. Adjectives signifying motion or tendency to a thing, have usually after them the accusative with the preposition *ad* or *in*, seldom the dative; as,

Pronus, propensus, proclivis, celer, tardus, piger, &c. ad iram, or in iram.

Obs. 7. *Propior* and *proximus*, in imitation of their primitive *prope*, often govern the accusative; as, *Propior montem*, scil. *ad*, *Sal*. *Proximus finem*, *Liv*.

Obs. 8. *IDEM* sometimes has the dative, chiefly in the poets; as, *Invitum qui servat, idem facit occidenti*, *Hor*. *Jupiter omnibus idem*, *Virg*. *Eadem illis censemus*, *Cic*. But in prose we commonly find *idem qui, et, ac, atque*, and also *ut, cum*; as, *Peripatetici quondam idem erant qui Academici*, *Cic*. *Est animus erga te, idem ac fuit*, *Ter*. *Dianam & Lunam eandem esse putant*, *Cic*. *Idem faciant, ut, &c*. *In eodem loco mecum*, *Cic*. But it would be improper to say of the same person or thing under different names, *idem cum*; as, *Luna eadem est cum Diana*.

We likewise say, *alius, ac, atque* or *et*; and so sometimes *similis & par*.

3. Adjectives governing the Ablative.

XIII. These Adjectives, *dignus, indignus, contentus, præditus, captus*, and *fretus*; also *natus, satus, ortus, editus*, and the like, govern the ablative; as,

Dignus honore, worthy of honor.

Captus oculis, blind.

Contentus parvo, content with little.

Fretus viribus, trusting to his strength.

Præditus virtute, endued with virtue.

Ortus regibus, descended of kings.

So *generatus, creatus, cretus, prognatus, oriundus, procreatus regibus*.

Obs. 1. The ablative after these adjectives is governed by some preposition understood; as, *Contentus parvo*, scil. *cum*; *Fretus viribus*, scil. *in*, &c. Sometimes the preposition is expressed; as, *Ortus ex concubina*, *Sallust*. *Editus de nymphæ*, *Ovid*.

Obs. 2. *Dignus, indignus*, and *contentus*, have sometimes the genitive after them; as, *dignus avorum*, *Virg*. So *Macte esto*, or *macti estote virtutis* or *virtute*. Increase in virtue, or Go on and prosper; *Juberem macte virtute esse*, sc. *te*, *Liv*. ii. 12. In the last example *macte* seems to be used adverbially.

4. *Adjectives governing the Genitive or Ablative.*XIV. *Adjectives of plenty or want govern the genitive or ablative; as,*

Plenus iræ or *irâ*, Full of anger. *Inops rationis* or *ratione*, Void of reason.

So *non inopes temporis*, *sed prodigi sumus*, Sen. *Lentulus non verbis inops*, Cic. *Dei plena sunt omnia*, Cic. *Maxima quæque domus servis est plena superbis*, Juv. *Res est solliciti plena timoris amor*, Ovid. *Amor & melle & felle est fœcundissimus*, Plaut. *Fecunda virorum paupertas fugitur*, Lucan. *Omnium conciliatorum ejus particeps*, Curt. *Homo ratione particeps*, Cic. *Nihil insidiis vacuum*, Id. *Vacuas cædis habete manus*, Ovid.

Some of these adjectives are construed, 1. With the genitive only; as, *Benignus*, *exsors*, *impos*, *impotens*, *irritus*, *liberalis*, *munificus*, *prælargus*.

2. With the ablative only; *Beatus differtus*, *frugifer*, *mutilis*, *tentus*, *distentus*, *tumitus*, *turgidus*.

3. With the genitive more frequently; *Compos*, *consors*, *egenus*, *exhæres*, *expers*, *fertilis*, *indigus*, *parcus*, *pauper*, *prodigus*, *sterilis*.

4. With the ablative more frequently; *Abundans*, *cassus*, *extorris*, *fœtus*, *frequens*, *gravis*, *gravidus*, *jejunos*, *liber*, *locuples*, *nudus*, *oneratus*, *onustus*, *orbis*, *pollens*, *solutus*, *truncus*, *viduus*, and *captus*.

5. With both promiscuously; *Copiosus*, *dives*, *fœcundus*, *ferax*, *immunis*, *inanis*, *inops*, *largus*, *modicus*, *immodicus*, *nimius*, *opulentus*, *plenus*, *potens*, *refertus*, *satus*, *vacuus*, *uber*.

6. With a preposition; as, *Copiosus*, *firmus*, *paratus*, *imparatus*, *inops*, *instructus*, *à re aliqua*; for *quod ad rem aliquam attinet*, in or with respect to any thing. *Extorris ab solo patrio*, banished; *Orba ab optimatibus concio*, Liv. So *pauper*, *tenuis*, *fœcundus*, *modicus*, *parcus*, *in re aliqua*. *Immunis*, *inanis*, *liber*, *nudus*, *solutus*, *vacuus*, *à re aliqua*. *Potens ad rem*, & *in re*.

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

§ 1. *VERBS governing only one Case.*1. *Verbs which govern the Genitive.*XV. *Sum*, when it signifies possession, property, or duty, governs the genitive; as,

Est regis, It belongs to the king, It is the part or property of a king.

So *Inspientis est dicere*, *non putâram*, It is the part or property of a fool, &c. *Militum est suo duci parere*, It is the part or duty of soldiers, &c. *Laudare se vani*; *vituperare stulti est*, Sen. *Hominis est errare*; *Arrogantis est negligere quid de se quisque sentiat*, Cic. *Pecus est Melibœi*, Virg. *Hæc sunt hominis*, Ter. *Pauperis est numerare pecus*, Ovid. *Temeritas est florentis ætatis*, *prudencia senectutis*, Cic.

¶ *Meum*, *tuum*, *suum*, *nostrum*, *vestrum*, are excepted; as, *Tuum est*, It is your duty. *Scio tuum esse*, I know that it is your duty.

Obs. 1. These possessive pronouns are used in the neuter gender instead of their substantives, *mei*, *tui*, *sui*, *nostri*, *vestri*. Other possessives are also construed in this manner; as, *Est regium*, *est humanum*, the same with *est regis*, *est hominis*. *Et facere et pati fortia*, *Romanum est*, Liv. ii. 12.

OBS. 2. Here some substantives must be understood ; as, *officium, munus, res, negotium, opus, &c.* which are sometimes expressed ; as, *Munus est principum ; Tuum est hoc munus, Cic. Neutiquam officium liberi esse hominis puto, Ter.* In some cases, the preceding substantive may be repeated ; as, *Hic liber est (liber) fratris.* In like manner, some substantive must be supplied in such expressions as these ; *Ea sunt modo gloriosa, neque patrandi belli, scil. causâ or facta, Sall. Nihil tam æquandæ libertatis est, for ad æquandam libertatem pertinet, Liv.*

OBS. 3. We say, *Hoc est tuum munus, or tui muneris : So mos est vel fuit, or moris, or in more, Cic.*

XVI. *Misereor, miseresco, and satago, govern the genitive ; as,*

Miserere civium tuorum,

Pity your countrymen.

Satagit rerum suarum,

{ He has his hands full at home, or has
enough to do about his own affairs.

OBS. 1. Several other verbs among the poets govern the genitive by a Greek construction, particularly such as signify some affection of the mind ; as, *Ango, decipior, desipio, discrucior, excrucio, fallo & fallor, fastidio, invideo, lætor, miror, pendeo, studeo, vereor ;* as, *Ne angas te animi, Plaut. Laborum decipitur, Hor. Discrucior animi, Ter. Pendet mihi animus, pendeo animi vel animo ;* but we always say, *Pendemus animis, not animorum,* are in suspense, *Cic. Justitiæ prius mirer, Virg.* In like manner, *Abstineo, desino, desisto, quiesco, regno ;* likewise, *adipiscor, condico, credo, frustror, furo, laudo, liberor, levo, participo, prohibeo ;* as, *Abstineti irarum ; Desine querelarum ; Regnavit populorum, Hor. Desistere pugna, Virg. Quarum rerum condixit, Liv.*

But all these verbs are for the most part differently construed ; thus, *Angor, desipio, discrucior, fallor, animo. Hoc animum meum excruciat. Fastidio, miror, vereor, aliquem vel aliquid. Lætor aliqua re.* Some of them are joined with the infinitive ; or with *quod, ut, ne,* and the subjunctive.

In like manner, we usually say, *Desino aliquid, & ab aliquo, to give over ; Desisto incepto, de negotio, ab illa mente ; Quiesco a labore ; Regnare in equitibus, oppidis, sc. in, Cic. Per urbes, Virg. Adipisci id ; Frustrari in re ; Furere de aliquo, Cic.*

OBS. 2. The genitive after verbs, in the same manner as after adjectives, is governed by some substantive understood. This substantive is different according to the different meaning of the verbs ; thus, *Misereor fratris, scil. causâ ; Angor animi, scil. dolore or anxietate.*

2. Verbs governing the Dative.

XVII. Any verb may govern the dative in Latin which has the signs TO or FOR after it in English ; as,

*Finis venit imperio,
Animus redit hostibus,
Tibi seris, tibi metis,*

An end is come to the empire, *Liv.*

Courage returns to the enemy, *Id.*

You sow for yourself, you reap for yourself, *Plaut.*

So, *Non nobis solum nati sumus, Cic. Multa malè eveniunt bonis, Id.*

Sol lucet etiam sceleratis, Sen. Hæret lateri lethalis arundo, Virg.

But as the dative after verbs in Latin is not always rendered in English by to or for, and as these particles are not always the sign of the dative in Latin, it will be necessary to be more particular.

I. *Sum, and its compounds, govern the dative ; (except possum) as,*

*Præfuit exercitui,
Adfuit precibus,*

He commanded the army.
He was present at prayers.

¶ *EST* taken for *Habeo*, to have, governs the dative of a person; as,

*Est mihi liber,
Sunt mihi libri,
Dico libros esse mihi,*

A book is to me, that is, I have a book.
Books are to me, i. e. I have books.
I say that I have books.

This is more frequently used than *habeo librum*; *habeo libros*. In like manner *DEEST* instead of *careo*; as, *Liber deest mihi*, I want a book. *Libri desunt mihi*; *Scio libros deesse mihi*, &c.

II. Verbs compounded with *SATIS*, *BENE*, and *MALE*, govern the dative; as,

Satisfacio, satisdo, benefacio, benedico, benevelo, malefacio, maledico, tibi, &c.

III. Many verbs compounded with these nine prepositions, *AD*, *ANTE*, *CON*, *IN*, *INTER*, *OB*, *PRÆ*, *SUB*, and *SUPER*, govern the dative; as,

1. *Accedo, accresco, accumbo, acquiesco, adno, adnato, adequito, adhæreo, adsto, adstipulor, advolvor, affulgeo, allabor, allaboro, annuo, appareo, applaudo, appropinquo, arrideo, aspiro, assentior, assideo, assisto, assuesco, assurgo.*

2. *Antecello, anteeo, antesto, antevertor.*

3. *Colludo, concino, consono, convivo.*

4. *Incumbo indormio, indubito, inhio, ingemisco, inhæreo, insideo, insidior, insto, insisto, insudo, insulto, invigilo, illachrymo, illudo, immineo, immorior, immoror, impendo.*

5. *Intervenio, intermico, intercedo, intercido, interjaceo.*

6. *Obrepo, obductor, obstricto, obstrepro, obmurimuro, occumbo, occurro, occurso, obsto, obisto, obvenio.*

7. *Præcedo, præcurro, præeo, præsideo, præluceo, præniteo, præsto, prævaleo, prævertor.*

8. *Succedo, succumbo, sufficio, suffragor, subcreasco, suboleo, subjacio, subrepo.*

9. *Supervenio, supercurro, supersto.* But most verbs compounded with *SUPER* govern the accusative.

IV. Verbs govern the dative, which signify,

1. To profit or hurt; as,

Proficio, prosum, placeo, commodo, prospicio, caveo, metuo, timeo, consulo, for *prospicio*. Likewise, *Noceo, officio, incommodo, displiceo, insidior*.

2. To favor or assist, and the contrary; as,

Faveo, gratulor, gratificor, grator, ignosco, indulgeo, parco, adulator, plaudo, blandior, lenocinor, palpor, assentor, subparasitor. Likewise, *Auxilior, adminiculator, subvenio, succurro, patrocinor, medior, medicor, optulor.* Likewise, *Dergo, detraho, invideo, æmulor.*

3. To command and obey, to serve and resist; as,

Impero, præcipio, mando, moderor, for modum adhibeo. Likewise, *Pareo, ausculto, obedio, obsequor, obtempero, moremgero, morigeror, obsecundo.* Likewise, *Famulor, servio, inservio, ministro, ancillor.* Likewise, *Repugno, obsto, reluctor, renitor, resisto, refragor, adversor.*

4. To threaten and to be angry ; as,

Minor, comminor, interminor, irascor, succenseo.

5. To trust ; as, *Fido, confido, credo, diffido.*

To these add, *Nubo, excello, hæreo, supplico, cedo, despéro, operor, præstolor, prevaricor, recipio*, to promise ; *renuncio, respondeo*, to answer or satisfy ; *tempero, studeo, vaco*, to apply ; *convicior*.

Exc. *Jubeo, juvo, lædo*, and *offendo*, govern the accusative.

OBS. 1. Verbs governing the dative only are either neuter verbs, or of a neuter signification. Active verbs governing the dative have also an accusative expressed or understood.

OBS. 2. Most verbs governing the dative only have been enumerated, because there are a great many verbs compounded with prepositions, which do not govern the dative, but are otherwise construed ; and still more signifying advantage or disadvantage, &c. which govern the accusative ; as, *Levo, erigo, alo, nutrio, amo, diligo, vexo, crucio, averso*, &c. *alicui*, not *alicui*.

OBS. 3. Many of these verbs are variously construed ; particularly such as are compounded with a preposition ; as,

Anteire, antecedere, antecellere, præcedere, præcurrere, præire, &c. *alicui*, or *alicuique*, to go before, to excel.

Acquiescere, rei, re, v. in re. *Adequitate portæ* ; *Syracusas*.

Adjacere mari, v. mare, to lie near.

Adnare navibus, naves, ad naves, to swim to.

Adversari ei, rarely eum, to oppose.

Advolvi genibus, genua, ad genua, to fall at one's knees.

Advolare ei, ad eum, rostra, to fly up to.

Adflare rei v. homini ; rem v. hominem ; *aliquid alicui*, to breathe upon.

Adulari ei v. eum, to flatter. *Allabi oris* ; *ares ejus*, Virg. ad exta, Liv.

Apparere consuli, to attend ; ad solium Jovis ; *Res apparet mihi*, appears.

Appropinquare Britannia, portam, ad portam, to approach.

Congruere alicui, cum re aliqua, inter se, to agree.

Dominari cunctis oris, Virg. ; in cætera animalia, to rule over, Ovid.

Fidere, *confidere alicui rei*, aliqua, re, in re, to trust to or in.

Ignoscere mihi, culpæ meæ, mihi culpam, to pardon me or my fault.

Impendere alicui, alicuique, in alicuique, to hang over.

Incessit cura, cupidus, timor ei, eum v. in eum, seized.

Incumbere toro : *gladium*, in *gladium*, to fall upon ; *labori ad laudem*, ad studia, in studium, curam, cogitationem, &c. to apply to.

Indulgere alicui id ei ; nimio vestitu, to indulge in, Ter.

Inhiare auro, bona ejus, to gape after. *Inasci agris*, in agris, to grow in.

Inniti rei, re, in re ; in alicuique, to depend on.

Insultare rei & homini, v. hominem ; fores ; *patientiam ejus*, in *miseriam ejus* ; bonos, to insult over.

Latet res mihi, v. me, is unknown to me. *Mederi ei* ; cupiditates, to cure.

Ministrare ei, to serve ; arma ei, to furnish.

Moderari animo, gentibus ; navim, omnia, to rule.

Nocere ei, rarely eum, to hurt, Plaut.

Nubere alicui ; in familiam ; *nupta ei & cum eo*, to marry, Cic.

Obrepere ei & eum, to creep upon ; in animos ; ad honores.

Obstreperare auribus & aures. *Obtrectare ei laudibus ejus*, to detract from.

Obumbrat sibi vinea ; solem nubes, shades. *Palpari alicui et alicuique*.

Pascisci alicui, cum aliquo ; vitam ab eo, Sall. vitam pro laude, Virg.

Præstolari alicui & alicuique, to wait upon.

Procumbere terræ ; genibus ejus, Ovid. ad genua, Liv. ad pedes, to fall.

To these may be added verbs, which, chiefly among the poets, govern the dative, but in prose are usually construed with a preposition ; as, 1. *Contendo, certo, bello, pugno, concurro, coeo, alicui*, for cum aliquo ; 2. *Distare, dissentire, discrepare, dissidere, differre rei alicui*, for a re aliqua. We also say, *Contend.*

unt, pignant, distant, &c. inter se; and contendere, pugnare contra & adversus aliquem.

OBS. 4. Many verbs vary both their signification and construction; as, *Timeo, metuo, formido, horreo tibi, de te, & pro te*, I am afraid for you, or for your safety; but *timeo, horreo, te v. a te*; I fear or dread you as an enemy: So *Consulo prospicio, caveo tibi*, I consult or provide for your safety; but, *consulo te*, I ask your advice; *prospicio hoc*, I foresee this; *Studere aliquid*, to desire; *alicui*, to favor; *alicui rei, rem, & in re*, to apply to a thing: So *Æmulor tibi*, I envy; *te*, I imitate; *Ausculto tibi*, I obey or listen to; *te*, I hear; *Cupio tibi*, I favor; *rem*, I desire; *Fænero, & -or tibi*, I lend you on interest; *abs te*, I borrow; *Metuisti, ne non tibi istuc fæneraret*, should not return with interest, or bring usury, *Ter.* And thus many other verbs, which will be afterwards explained.

OBS. 5. Verbs signifying *Motion* or *Tendency* to a thing are construed with the preposition *ad*; as,

Eo, vado, curro, propero, festino, pergo, fugio, tendo, vergo, inclino, &c. ad locum rem, v. hominem. Sometimes, however, in the poets they are construed with the dative; as, *It clamor cælo*, for *ad cælum*, *Virg.*

3. Verbs governing the Accusative.

XVIII. A Verb signifying actively governs the accusative; as,

Ama Deum, Love God. *Revere parentes,* Reverence your parents.

OBS. 1. Neuter verbs also govern the accusative, when the noun after them has a signification similar to their own; as,

Ire iter or *viâ*; *Pugnare pugnam* or *prælium*; *Currere cursum*; *Canere cantilenam*; *Vivere vitam*; *Ludere ludum*; *Sequi sectam*; *Somniare somnium, &c.* or when they are taken in a metaphorical sense; as, *Corydon ardebat Alexin*, scil. *propter*, i. e. *vehementer amabat*, *Virg.* *Currimus æquor*, scil. *per*, *Id.* So *Comptos arsit adulteri crines*, *Hor.* *Saltare Cyclopa*; *olet hircum*; *Sulcos et vineta crepat mera*, *Hor.* *Vox hominem sonat*; *Sudare mella*, *Virg.* *Si Xerxes Hellesponto juncto, et Athone perfosso, maria ambulavisset, terramque navigasset*, sc. *per*, *Cic.* Or when they have a kind of active sense; as, *Clamare aliquem nomine*, *Virg.* *Callere jura*; *Mædere mortem*; *Horret iratum mare*, *Hor.*

Sometimes instead of the accusative, neuter verbs have an ablative; as, *Ire itinere*; *dolere dolore, vicem ejus*; *gaudere gaudio*; *mori v. obire morte*; *vivere vitâ*; *ardet virgine*, *Horat.* *Ludere aleam, v. -â*; *manare, pluere, rorâre, stillare, sudare, aliquid vel aliquo.* *Erubescere jura*, *Virg.* *origine*, *Tacit.* *equo vehi*, *Curt.*

OBS. 2. Several verbs are used both in an active and neuter sense; as,

Abhorreere famam, to dread infamy, *Liv.* *a litibus*; *ab uxore ducenda, to be averse from*, *Id.* *a meis moribus* *abhorret, is inconsistent with, Cic.*

Abolere monumenta viri, to abolish, *Virg.* *illis Cladis Caudinæ nondum memoria aboleverat, was not effaced from, they had not forgotten, Liv.*

Adolere penates, to burn, to sacrifice to, *Virg.*

Ætas adolevit; adolevit ad ætatem, *Plaut.*

Declinare ictum, to avoid: loco; agmen aliquo, to remove.

Degenerare animos, to weaken; patri, to degenerate from; a virtute majorum.

Durare adolescentes labore, to harden; Res durat ad breve tempus, endures; In ædibus durare nequeo, stay or remain, Plaut.

Inclinare culpam in aliquem, to lay; Hos ut sequar inclinat animus, inclines; acies inclinat vel inclinatur, gives away.

Laborare arma, to forge; morbo, a dolore, e renibus, to be ill; de re aliqua, to be concerned.

Morari iter, *to stop*; in urbe, *to stay*;

Hoc nihil moror, *I do not mind.*

Properare pecuniam hæredi, *Hor. in urbem*; ad unam sedem, *Ov.*

Quadrare acervum, *to square*, *Hor. aliquid ad normam*; alicui, in aliquem, ad multa, *to fit.*

OBS. 3. These accusatives, *hoc, id, quid, aliquid, quicquid, nihil, idem, illud, tantum, quantum, multa, pauca, &c.* are often joined with neuter verbs, having the prepositions *circa* or *propter* understood; as, *Id lacrumat, Id succenset, Ter.*

OBS. 4. The accusative is often understood. *Tum prora avertit, sc. se, Virg. Flumina præcipitant, sc. Id. Quæcunque intenderat, sc. se, turned or directed himself, Sallust. Obiit, sc. mortem, Ter. Cum faciam vitula, sc. sacra, Virg. Or its place supplied by an infinitive or part of a sentence; as, Reddes dulce loqui, reddes ridere decorum; for dulcem sermonem, decorum risum, Hor.*

XIX. Recordor, meminî, reminiscor, and obliviscor, govern the accusative or genitive; as,

Recordor lectionis or lectionem,
Obliviscor injuriæ or injuriam,

I remember the lesson.
I forget an injury.

OBS. 1. These verbs are often construed with the infinitive or some part of a sentence; as, *Memini videre virginem, Ter. Oblitus est, quid paulo ante posuisset, Cic.*

OBS. 2. *Memini*, when it signifies *to make mention*, is joined with the genitive, or the ablative, with the preposition *de*; as, *Memini alicujus, vel de aliquo.* So *recordor*, when it signifies *to recollect*; as, *Velim scire ecquid de te recordere, Cic.*

4. Verbs governing the Ablative.

XX. Verbs of plenty and scarceness for the most part govern the ablative; as,

Abundat divitiis,
Caret omni culpa,

He abounds in riches.
He has no fault.

Verbs of plenty are, *Abundo, affluo, exuberô, redundo, supposito, scateo, &c.*; of want, *Careo, egeo, indigeo, vaco, deficior, destitutor, &c.*

OBS. 1. *Egeo* and *indigeo* frequently govern the genitive; as, *Eget æris, He needs money, Hor. Non tam artis indigent, quam laboris, Cic.*

OBS. 2. The ablative after these verbs is governed by some preposition understood; and sometimes we find it expressed; as, *Vacat a culpa, he is free from fault, Liv.*

XXI. Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor, govern the ablative; as,

Utitur fraude, He uses deceit.

Abutitur libris, He abuses books.

To these add, *gaudeo, creor, nascor, fido, vivo, victito, consto, labôro, for male me habeo, to be ill; pascor, epulor, nitor, &c.*

OBS. 1. *Potior* often governs the genitive; as, *Potiri urbis, Sall.* And we always say *Potiri rerum*, to possess the chief command, never *rebus: imperio* being understood.

Obs. 2. *Potior, fungor, vescor, epulor*, and *pascor*, sometimes have an accusative; as, *Potiri urbem*, Cic. *Officia fungi*, Ter. *Munera fungi*, Tacit. *Pascuntur silvas*, Virg. And in ancient writers *utor, abutor*, and *fruor*; as, *Uti consilium*, Plaut. *Operam abutitur*, Ter. *Depasco* and *depascor* always take an accusative; as, *Depascitur artus*, Virg.

§ 2. VERBS governing two Cases.

1. Verbs governing two Datives.

XXII. *Sum* taken for *affero* (to bring) governs two datives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing; as,

Est mihi voluptati,

It is, or brings a pleasure to me.

Two datives are also put after *habeo*, *do*, *verto*, *relinquo*, *tribuo*, *fore*, *duco*, and some others; as,

Ducitur honori tibi, It is reckoned an honor to you. *Id vertitur mihi vitio*, I am blamed for that. So *Misit mihi muneri*; *Dedit mihi dono*; *Habet sibi laudi*; *Venire, occurrere auxilio alicui*, Liv.

Obs. 1. Instead of the dative, we often use the nominative, or the accusative; as, *Est exitium pecori*, for *exitio*; *Dare aliquid alicui donum*, or *dono*; *Dare filiam ei nuptam*, or *nuptui*. When *dare*, and other active verbs, have two datives after them, they likewise govern an accusative either expressed or understood; as, *Dare crimini ei*, sc. *Id*.

Obs. 2. The dative of the person is often to be supplied; as, *Est exemplo, indicio, præsidio, usui*, &c. scil. *mihi, alicui, hominibus*, or some such word. So *ponere, opponere, pignori*, sc. *alicui*, to pledge. *Canere receptui*, sc. *suis, militibus*, to sound a retreat; *Habere curæ, quæstui, odio, voluptati, religioni, studio, ludibrio, despiciatui*, &c. sc. *sibi*.

Obs. 3. To this rule belong forms of naming; as, *Est mihi nomen Alexandro*, my name is Alexander; or with the nominative, *Est mihi nomen Alexander*; or more rarely with the genitive, *Est mihi nomen Alexandri*.

2. Verbs governing the Accusative and the Genitive.

XXIII. Verbs of accusing, condemning, acquitting, and admonishing, govern the accusative of a person with a genitive of a thing; as,

Arguit me furti,

He accuses me of theft.

Meipsum inertiae condemno,

I condemn myself of laziness.

Illum homicidii absolvunt,

They acquit him of manslaughter.

Monet me officii,

He admonishes me of my duty.

Verbs of accusing are, *Accûso*, *ago*, *appello*, *arcesso*, *inquiro*, *arguo*, *defero*, *insimûlo*, *postûlo*, *alligo*, *astringo*; of condemning, *Damno*, *condemno*, *infamo*, *noto*; of acquitting, *Absolvo*, *libero*, *purgo*; of admonishing, *Moneo*, *admoneo*, *commonefacio*.

Obs. 1. Verbs of accusing and admonishing, instead of the genitive, frequently have after them an ablative with the preposition *de*; as, *Monere aliquem officii*, or *de officio*; *Accusare aliquem furti*, or *de furto*. *De vi condemnati sunt*, Cic.

OBS. 2. *Crimen* and *caput* are put either in the genitive or ablative; but in the ablative usually without a preposition; as, *Damnare, postulare, absolvere eum criminis, v. capitis*; and *crimine v. capite*; also, *Absolve me peccato*, Liv. And we always say, *Plectere, punire aliquem capite*, and not *capitis*, to punish one capitally, or with death.

OBS. 3. Many verbs of accusing, &c. are not construed with the acc. of a person, and the gen. of a thing, but the contrary; thus we say, *Culpo, reprehendo, taxo, traduco, vitupero, calumniar, criminor, excuso*, &c. *avaritiam alicujus*, and not *aliquem, avaritiæ*. We sometimes also find *accuso, incuso*, &c. construed in this manner; as, *Accusare inertiam adolescentium*, for *adolescentes inertia*, Cic. *Culpam arguo*, Liv. We say, *Agere cum aliquo furti*, rather than *aliquem*, to accuse one of theft, Cic.

OBS. 4. Verbs of accusing and admonishing sometimes govern two accusatives, when joined with *hoc, illud, istud, id, unum, multa*, &c. as, *Moneo, accuso te illud*. We seldom find, however, *Errorem te moneo*, but *erroris* or *de errore*; except in old writers, as Plautus.

XXIV. Verbs of valuing, with the accusative, govern such genitives as these, *magni, parvi, nihili*; as,

Æstimo te magni,

I value you much.

Verbs of valuing are, *Æstimo, existimo, duco, facio, habeo, pendo, puto, taxo*. They govern several other genitives; as, *tanti, quanti, pluris, majoris, minoris, minimi, plurimi, maximi, nauci, pili, assis, nihili, teruncii, hujus*.

OBS. 1. *Æstimo* sometimes governs the ablative; as, *Æstimo te magno, per magno, parvo*, scil. *pretio*: and also *nihilo*. We likewise say, *Pro nihilo habeo, puto, duco*.

OBS. 2. *Æqui* and *boni* are put in the genitive after *facio* and *consulo*; as, *Hoc consulo boni, æqui bonique facio*, I take this in good part.

OBS. 3. The genitive after all these verbs is governed by some substantive understood; as, *Arguere aliquem furti*, scil. *re crimine furti*; *Æstimo rem magni*, scil. *pretii*, or *pro re magni pretii*; *Consulo bono*, i. e. *statuo* or *censeo esse factum*, or *munus boni viri*, or *animi*; *Monere aliquem officii*, i. e. *officii causâ*, or *de re*, or *negotio officii*.

3. Verbs governing the Accusative and the Dative.

XXV. Verbs of comparing, giving, declaring, and taking away, govern the accusative and dative; as,

*Compāro Virgilium Homero,
Suum cuique tribuito,
Narras fabulam surdo,
Eripuit me morti,*

I compare Virgil to Homer.
Give every one his own.
You tell a story to a deaf man.
He rescued me from death.

Or rather,—ANY ACTIVE VERB MAY GOVERN THE ACCUSATIVE AND THE DATIVE, (when together with the object of the action, we express the person or thing with relation to which it is exerted,) as,

Legam lectionem tibi, I will read the lesson to you. *Emit librum mihi*, He bought a book for me. *Sic vos non vobis fertis aratra boves*, Virg. *Paupertas*

sæpe suadet mala hominibus, advises men to do bad things, Plaut. *Imperare pecuniam, frumentum naves, arma aliquibus*, to order them to furnish, Cæs.

OBS. 1. Verbs of comparing and taking away, together with some others, are often construed with a preposition; as, *Comparare unam rem cum alia & ad aliam*, or *comparare res inter se*: *Eripuit me morti*, morte, a or *ex morte*: *Mittere epistolam alicui*, or *ad aliquem*: *Intendere telum alicui*, or *in aliquem*: *Inciders æri*, in æs, or in æra, and so in many others.

OBS. 2. Several verbs governing the dative and accusative, are construed differently; as,

Circumdare mœnia oppido, or *oppidum mœnibus*, to surround a city with walls.

Intercludere comœatum alicui, or *aliquem comœatu*, to intercept one's provisions.

Donare, prohibere rem alicui, or *aliquem re*, to give one a present, to hinder one from a thing.

Mactare hostiam Deo, or *Deum hostiâ*, to sacrifice.

Impertire salutem alicui, or *aliquem salute*, to salute one.

Interdixit Galliam Romanis, or *Romanos Galliâ*, he debarred the Romans from Gaul.

Induere, exuere vestem sibi, or *se veste*, to put on, to put off one's clothes.

Levare dolorem alicui; *dolorem alicujus*; *aliquem dolore*, to ease one's distress.

Minari aliquid alicui, or sometimes *alicui aliquo*, Cic. to threaten one with any thing; *Cæsari gladio*, Sall.

Gratulor tibi hanc rem, hac re, in *pro*, & *de hac re*, I congratulate you on this. *Mettus Tullo devictos hostes gratulatur*, Liv.

Restituere alicui sanitatem, or *aliquem sanitati*, to restore to health.

Aspergere labem alicui, or *aliquem labe*, to put an affront on one; *aram sanguine*. *Litare Deum sacris*, & *sacra Deo*, to sacrifice.

Excusare se alicui & apud aliquem, de re; *valetudinem ei*.

Exprobare vitium ei v. in eo, to upbraid.

Occupare pecuniam alicui & apud aliquem, i. e. *pecuniam fœnori locare*; to place at interest, Cic.

Opponere se morti & ad mortem. *Renunciare id ei, & ad eum*, to tell.

OBS. 3. Verbs signifying motion or tendency to a thing, instead of the dative have an accusative after them, with the preposition *ad*; as,

Porto, fero, lego, -as, præcipito, tollo, traho, duco, verto, incito, suscito; also *hortor*, and *invito, voco, provoco, animo, stimulo, conformo, lacesso*; thus, *Ad laudem milites hortatur*; *Ad prætorem hominem traxit*, Cic. But after several of these verbs, we also find the dative; as, *Inferre Deos Latio*, for *in Latium*, Virg. *Invitare aliquem hospitio*, or *in hospitium*, Cic.

OBS. 4. The accusative is sometimes understood; as, *Nubere alicui*, scil. *se*; *Cedere alicui*, scil. *locum*; *Detrahere alicui*, scil. *laudem*; *Ignoscere alicui*, scil. *culpam*. And in English the particle *to* is often omitted; as, *Dedit mihi librum*, He gave me a book, for *to me*.

4. Verbs governing two Accusatives.

XXVI. Verbs of asking and teaching govern two accusatives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing; as,

Poscimus te pacem,
Docuit me grammaticam,

We beg peace of thee.
He taught me grammar.

1. Verbs of asking which govern two accusatives are, *Rogo*,

oro, exoro, obsecro, precor, posco, reposco, flagito, &c. Of teaching, *Doceo, edoceo, dedoceo, erudio.*

Obs. 1. *Celo* likewise governs two accusatives; as, *Celavit me hanc rem*, He concealed this matter from me; or otherwise, *celavit hanc rem mihi*, or *celavit me de hac re*.

Obs. 2. Verbs of asking and teaching are often construed with a preposition; as, *Rogare rem ab aliquo*; *Docere aliquem de re*, to inform; but we do not say, *docere aliquem de grammatica*, but *grammaticam*, to teach. And we always say with a preposition, *Peto, exigo a v. abs te*; *Percontor, scitor, sciscitor, ex or a te*, or *te* without the preposition; *Interrogo, consulto te de re*; *Ut facias te obsecro*; *Exorat pacem divum, for divos, Virg.* *Instruo, instituo, formo, informo, aliquem artibus*, in the abl. without a prep. *Imbuo eum artibus in v. ab artibus.* Also *instruo ad rem, v. in re, ignorantium alicujus.* *Erudire aliquem artes, de v. in re, ad rem.* *Formare ad studium, mentem studiis, studia ejus.*

Obs. 3. The accusative of the thing is not properly governed by the verb, but by *quod ad* or *secundum* understood.

5. Verbs governing the Accusative and the Ablative.

XXVII. Verbs of loading, binding, clothing, depriving, and some others, govern the accusative and the ablative; as,

Onerat naves auro,

He loads the ships with gold.

Verbs of loading are, *Onëro, cumulo, premo, opprîmo, obruo.* Of unloading, *levo, exonëro, &c.* Of binding, *astringo, ligo, alligo, devincio, impedio, irretio, illaqueo, &c.* Of loosing, *solvo, ex solvo, libero, laxo, expedio, &c.* Of depriving, *privo, nudo, orbo, spolio, fraudo, emungo.* Of clothing, *vestio, amicio, induo, cingo, tego, velo, corôno, & calceo.* Of unclothing, *exuo, discingo, &c.*

Obs. 1. The preposition, by which the ablative is governed after these verbs, is sometimes expressed; as, *Solvere aliquem ex catenis*, Cic. Sometimes the ablative is to be supplied; as, *Complet naves, sc. viris*, mans the ships, Virg.

Obs. 2. Several of these verbs likewise govern the genitive; as, *Adolescens-tem suæ temeritatis implet*, Liv. And also vary their construction; as, *Induit, exuit se vestibus, or vestes sibi.*

THE CONSTRUCTION OF PASSIVE VERBS.

XXVIII. When a verb in the active voice governs two cases, in the passive it retains the latter case; as,

Accusor furti,

I am accused of theft.

Virgilius comparatur Homero,

Virgil is compared to Homer.

Docëor grammaticam,

I am taught grammar.

Navis oneratur auro,

The ship is loaded with gold.

So *Scio homines accusatum iri furti*;—*Eos ereptum iri morti, morte, a vel ex morte*;—*pueros doctum iri grammaticam*;—*rem celatum iri mihi vel me*; *me celatum iri de re, &c.*

Sometimes the active has three cases, and then the passive has the two last cases; as, *Habetur ludibrio vis.*

Obs. 1. Passive verbs are commonly construed with the ablative and the preposition *a*; as,

Tu laudaris a me, which is equivalent to *Ego laudo te*. *Virtus diligitur a nobis*; *Nos diligimus virtutem*. *Gaudeo meum factum probari a te*, or *te probare meum factum*: And so almost all active verbs. Neuter and deponent verbs also admit this preposition; as, *Mare a sole collucet*, Cic. *Phalaris non a paucis interiit*, Id. So *Cadere ab hoste*; *Cessare a preliis*; *Mori ab ense*; *Pati furari, aliquid ab aliquo*, &c. Also, *Venire ab hostibus*, to be sold; *Vopulare ab aliquo*, *Exulare ab urbe*. Thus likewise many active verbs; as, *Sumere, petere, tollere, pellere, expectare, emere*, &c. *ab aliquo*.

The prep. is sometimes understood after passive verbs; as, *Deseror conjuge*, Ovid. *Desertus suis*, sc. *a*, Tacit. *Tabulâ distinguitur, unda qui navigat*, sc. *ab unda*, is kept from the water by a plank, Juvenal.

The preposition PER is also used in the same sense with A; as, *Per me defensa est respublica*, or *a me*; *Per me restitutus*; *Per me v. a me factum est*, Cic. But PER commonly marks the instrument, and A the principal efficient cause; as, *Res agitur per creditores, a rege*, sc. *a rege vel a legato ejus*, Cic. Fam. i. 1.

OBS. 2. Passive verbs sometimes govern the dative, especially among the poets; as,

Neque cernitur ulli, for ab ullo, Virg. *Vix audior ulli*, Ovid. *Scriberis Vario*, for *a Vario*, Hor. *Honesta bonis viris quæruntur*, for *a viris*, Cic. VIDEOR, to seem, always governs the dative; as, *Videris mihi*, You seem to me: but we commonly say, *Videris a me*, You are seen by me, although not always; as, *Nulla tuarum audita mihi, neque visa sororum*, for *a me*, Virg.

OBS. 3. *Induor, amicior, cingor, accingor*, also *exuor*, and *discingor*, are often construed with the accusative, particularly among the poets, though we do not find them governing two accusatives in the active voice; as, *Induitur vestem* or *veste*.

OBS. 4. Neuter verbs are for the most part only used impersonally in the passive voice; unless when they are joined with a noun of a similar signification to their own; as, *Pugna pugnata est*, Cic. *Bellum militabitur*, Horat. Passive impersonal verbs are most commonly applied either to a multitude, or to an individual taken indefinitely; as, *Statur, fletur, curritur, vivitur, venit, &c. a nobis, ab illis, &c.* We are standing, weeping, &c. *Bene potest viri a me vel ab aliquo*: I or any person may live well. *Provisum est nobis optime a Deo*; *Reclamatum est ab omnibus*, all cried out against it, Cic.

They also govern the same cases as when used personally; as, *Ut majoribus natu assurgatur, ut supplicam misereatur*, Cic. Except the accusative, for in these phrases, *Itur Athenas, pugnatum est biduum dormitur totam noctem*, the accusative is not governed by the verb, but by the prepositions *ad* and *per* understood. We find, however, *Tota mihi dormitur hyems*; *Noctes vigilantur amare*; *Oceanus raris ab orbe nostro navibus auditur*, Tacit.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

XXIX. An Impersonal Verb governs the dative; as,

Expedit reipublicæ,

It is profitable for the state.

Verbs which, in the active voice, govern only the dative, are used impersonally in the passive, and likewise govern the dative; as,

Favet mihi, I am favored, and not *Ego faveor*. So *Nocetur mihi, imperatur mihi, &c.* We find, however, *Hæc ego procurare imperor*; *Ego cur invideo*, for *imperatur, invidetur mihi*, Hor.

OBS. 1. These verbs, *Potest, cæpit, incipit, desinit, debet,*

and *solet*, are used impersonally, when joined with impersonal verbs ; as,

Non potest credi tibi, You cannot be believed ; *Mihi non potest noceri*, I cannot be hurt ; *Negat jucundè posse vivi sine virtute*, Cic. *Per virtutem potest iri ad astra*. *Aliorum laudi & gloriæ invideri solet*, The praise and glory of others use to be envied, Id. *Neque a fortissimis infirmissimo generi resisti posse*, Sallust.

Obs. 1. Various verbs are used both personally and impersonally ; as, *Venit in mentem mihi hæc res*, vel *de hac re*, vel *hujus rei*, scil. *memoria*, This thing came into my mind. *Est curæ mihi hæc res*, vel *de hac re*. *Doleo vel dolet mihi id factum esse*.

Obs. 3. The neuter pronoun *it* is always joined with impersonal verbs in English ; as, *It rains, it shines, &c.* And in the Latin an infinitive is commonly subjoined to impersonal verbs, or the subjunctive with *ut*, forming a part of a sentence which may be supposed to supply the place of a nominative ; as, *Nobis non licet peccare*, the same with *peccatum* ; *Omnibus bonis expedit rempublicam esse salvam*, i. e. *salus reipublicæ expedit omnibus bonis*, Cic. *Accidit, evenit, contigit ut ibi essemus*. These nominatives *hoc, illud, id, idem, quod, &c.* are sometimes joined to impersonal verbs ; as, *idem mihi licet*, Cic. *Eadem licent*, Catull.

Obs. 4. The dative is often understood ; as, *Faciat quod libet*, sc. *sibi*, Ter. *Stat casus renovare, omnes*, sc. *mihi*, I am resolved, Virg.

Exc. I. *REFERT* and *INTEREST* require the genitive ; as,

Refert patris, It concerns my father. *Interest omnium*, It is the interest of all.

¶ But *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*, are put in the accusative plural neuter ; as,

Non mea refert,

It does not concern me.

Obs. 1. Some think *mea, tua, sua, &c.* to be in the ablat. sing. fem. We say either *cujus interest*, and *quorum interest* ; or *cujâ interest*, from *cujus, -a, -um*.

Obs. 2. *Refert* and *interest* are often joined with these nominatives, *id, hoc, illud, quid, quod, nihil, &c.* also with common nouns ; and with these genitives, *Tanti, quanti, magni, permagni, parvi, pluris* ; as, *Hoc parvi refert* ; *Illud mea magni interest*, Cic. *Usque adeo magni refert studium*, Lucret. *Incessus in grâvida refert*, Plin.

They are frequently construed with these adverbs, *Tantum, quantum, multum, plus, plurimum, infinitum, parum, maximè, vehementer, minime, &c.* as, *Faciam, quod maximè reipublicæ interesse judicabo*, Cic. Sometimes instead of the genit. they take the accusative with the prep. *ad* ; as, *Quid id ad me, aut ad meam rem refert, Persæ quid rerum gerant?* Of what importance is it ? &c. Plaut. *Magni ad honorem nostrum interest*, Cic. rarely the dative ; as, *Dic quid referat intra naturæ fines viventi, &c.* Hor. Sometimes they are placed absolutely ; as, *Magnopere interest opprimi Dolabellam*, it is of great importance, Cic. *Permultum interest, qualis primus aditus sit*, Id. *Adeone est fundata leviter fides, ut ubi sim, quam qui sim, magis referat*, Liv. *Plurimum enim intererit, quibus artibus, aut quibus hunc tu moribus instituas*, Juv.

Obs. 3. The genitive after *refert* and *interest* is governed by some substantive understood, with which the possessives *mea, tua, sua, &c.* likewise agree ; as, *Interest Ciceronis*, i. e. *est inter negotia Ciceronis* ; *Refert patris*, i. e. *refert se, hæc res ad negotia patris* ; So *interest mea, est inter negotia mea*.

Exc. II. These five, *MISERET, PCENITET, PUDET, TÆDET*, and *PIGET*, govern the accusative of a person with the genitive of a thing ; as,

Miseret me tui, I pity you.

Tædet me vitæ, I am weary of life.

Pænitet me peccati, I repent of my sin.

Pudet me culpæ, I am ashamed of my fault.

Obs. 1. The genitive here is properly governed either by *negotium* understood, or by some other substantive of a signification similar to that of the verb with which it is joined; as, *Miseret me tui*, that is, *negotium* or *miseratio tui miseret me*.

Obs. 2. An infinitive or some part of a sentence may supply the place of the genitive; as, *Pænitet me peccasse*, or *quod peccaverim*. The accusative is frequently understood; as, *Scelerum si bene pænitet*, scil. *nos*, Horat.

Obs. 3. *Miseret*, *pænitet*, &c. are sometimes used personally, especially when joined with these nominatives, *hoc*, *id*, *quod*, &c. as, *Ipse sui miseret*, Lucr.; *Nonne hæc te pudent*, Ter. *Nihil, quod pænitere possit, facias*, for *cujus te pænitere possit*, Cic.

We sometimes find *miseret* joined with two accusatives; as, *Menedemi vicem miseret me*, scil. *secundum* or *quod ad*, Ter.

Obs. 4. The preterites of *miseret*, *puget*, *tædet*, and *piget*, when used in the passive form, govern the same cases with the active; as, *Miseritum est me tuarum fortunarum*, Ter. We likewise find *miserescit* and *miseretur* used impersonally; as, *Miserescit me tui*, Ter.; *Misereatur te fratrum*; *Neque me tui, neque tuorum liberorum misereri potest*, Cic.

Exc. III. *DECET*, *DELECTAT*, *JUVAT*, and *OPORTET*, govern the accusative of a person with the infinitive; as,

Delectat me studere,
Non decet te rixari,

It delights me to study.
It does not become you to scold.

Obs. 1. These words are sometimes used personally; as, *Parvum parva decet*, Hor. *Est aliquid, quod non oporteat, etiamsi liceat*, Cic. *Hæc facta ab illo oportebant*, Ter.

Obs. 2. *Decet* is sometimes construed with the dative; as, *Ita nobis decet*, Ter.

Obs. 3. *Oportet* is elegantly joined with the subjunctive mode, *ut* being understood; as,

Sibi quisque consulat oportet, Cic. Or with the perfect participle, *esse* or *fuisse* being understood; as, *Communicatum oportuit*; *mansum oportuit*; *Adolescenti morem gestum oportuit*, The young man should have been humored, Ter.

Obs. 4. *Fallit*, *fugit*, *præterit*, *latet*, when used impersonally, also govern the accusative with the infinitive; as, *In lege nullâ esse ejusmodi caput, non te fallit*; *De Dionysia fugit me ad te antea scribere*, Cic.

NOTE. *Attinet*, *pertinet*, & *spectat*, are construed with *ad*; *Ad rempublicam pertinet, me conservari*, Cic. And so personally, *Ille ad me attinet*, belongs, Ter. *Res ad arma spectat*, looks, points, Cic.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE INFINITIVE.

XXX. One verb governs another in the infinitive; as,

Cupio discere,

I desire to learn.

Obs. 1. The infinitive is often governed by adjectives; as, *Horatius est dignus legi*, Quintil. And sometimes depends

on a substantive; as, *Tempus equum, fumantia solvere colla*, Virg.

Obs. 2. The word governing the infinitive is sometimes understood; as *Me ne incepto desistere victam*, scil. *deceat*, or *par est*, Virg. *Videre est*, one may see. *Dicere non est*, scil. *copia*, or *facultas*, Horat. And sometimes the infinitive itself is to be supplied; as, *Socratem fidibus decuit*, scil. *canere*, Cic. So, *Discere*, *scire fidibus*.

Obs. 3. The infinitive was not improperly called by the ancients, *Nomen verbi*, the name or noun of the verb, because it is both joined with an adjective like a substantive; as, *Velle suum cuique est*, Every one has a will of his own; and likewise supplies the place of a noun, not only in the nominative, but also in all the oblique cases; as, 1. In the nominative, *Latrocinari, fraudare, turpe est*, Cic. *Didicisse fideliter artes, emollit mores*, Ovid. 2. In the genitive, *Peritus cantare, for cantandi or cantus*, Virg. 3. In the dative, *Paratus servire, for servituti*, Sall. 4. In the accusative, *Da mihi fallere, for artem fallendi*, Horat. *Quod faciam superest, præter amare, nihil*, Ovid. 5. In the vocative, *O vivere nostrum, ut non sentientibus effluis!* for *vita nostra*. 6. In the ablative, *Dignus amari, for amore, or qui ametur*, Virg.

Obs. 4. Instead of the infinitive, a different construction is often used after verbs of doubting, willing, ordering, fearing, hoping; in short, after any verb which has a relation to futurity; as, *Dubitatur ita facere*, or more frequently, *an, num, or utrum ita facturus sit*; *Dubitavit an faceret necne*; *Non dubito quin fecerit*. *Vis me facere, or ut faciam*. *Metuit tangi, or ne tangatur*. *Spero te venturum esse, or fore ut venias*. *Nunquam putavi fore ut ad te supplex venirem*, Cic. *Existimabant futurum fuisse ut oppidum amitteretur*, Cæs.

Obs. 5. *To*, which in English is the sign of the infinitive, is omitted after *bid, dare, need, make, see, hear, feel*, and some others; as, *I bid him do it*: and in Latin may often be rendered otherwise than by the infinitive; as, *I am sent to complain, Mittor, questum, or ut querar, &c.* Ready to hear, *Promptus ad audiendum*; Time to read, *Tempus legendi*: Fit to swim, *Aptus natando*; Easy to say, *Facile dictu*; I am to write, *Scripturus sum*; A house to let, or more properly, to be let, *Domus locanda*; He was left to guard the city, *Relictus est ut tueretur urbem*.

To in English is often taken absolutely; as, *To confess the truth*; *To proceed*; *To conclude*; that is, *That I may confess the truth, &c.*

THE CONSTRUCTION OF PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

XXXI. Participles, Gerunds, and Supines, govern the case of their own verbs; as,

Amans virtutem, Loving virtue.

Carens fraude, Wanting guile.

Obs. 1. Passive Participles often govern the dative, particularly when they are used as adjectives; as,

Suspectus mihi, suspected by me; *Suspiciores regibus*, Sall. *Invisus mihi*, hated by me, or hateful to me; *Indies invisor*, Suet. *Occulta, et maribus non invisa solum, sed etiam inaudita sacra*, unseen, Cic.

EXOSUS, PEROSUS, and often also, *PERTÆSUS*, govern the accusative; as, *Tædas exosa jugales*, Ovid. *Plebs consulum nomen haud secus quam regum perosa erat*, Liv. *Pertæsus ignaviam suam; semet ipse*, displeased with, Suet. *vitam*, weary of, Justin. *levitatis*, Cic.

Verbals in *BUNDUS* govern the cases of their own verbs; as, *Gratulabundus patriæ*, Just. *Vitabundus castra hostium*, Liv. So sometimes also nouns; as, *Justitia est obtemperatio scriptis legibus*, Cic. *Insidia consuli*, Sall. *Domum reditionis spe sublatâ*, Cæs. *Spectatio ludos*, Plaut.

OBS. 2. These verbs, *do, reddo, volo, curo, facio, habeo, comperio*, with the perfect participle, form a periphrasis similar to what we use in English; as, *Comptum habeo*, for *comperi*, I have found, Sall. *Effectum dabo*, for *efficiam*; *Inventum tibi curabo, et adductum tuum Pamphilum*, i. e. *inveniam et adducam*, Ter. Sometimes the gerund is used with *ad*; as, *Tradere ei gentes diripiendas*, or *ad diripiendum*, Cic. *Rogo, accipio, do aliquid utendum*; or *ad utendum*; *Misit mihi librum legendum*, or *ad legendum*, &c.

OBS. 3. These verbs, *curo, habeo, mando, loco, conduco, do, tribuo, mitto*, &c. are elegantly construed with the participle in *dus*, instead of the infinitive; as, *Funus faciendum curavi*, for *fieri*, or *ut fieret*; *Columnas, ædificandas locavit*, Cic.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF GERUNDS.

XXXII. Gerunds are construed like substantive nouns; as,

Studendum est mihi,

Tempus studendi,

Aptus studendo,

Scio studendum esse mihi,

I must study.

Time of study.

Fit for studying.

I know that I must study.

But more particularly :

I. The Gerund in *DUM* with the verb *est* governs the dative; as,

Legendum est mihi, I must read. *Moriendum est omnibus*, All must die.

So *Scio, legendum est mihi; moriendum esse omnibus*, &c.

OBS. 1. This gerund always imports obligation or necessity, and may be resolved into *oportet, necesse est*, or the like, and the infinitive or the subjunctive, with the conjunction *ut*; as, *Omnibus est moriendum*, or *Omnibus necesse est mori*, or *ut moriantur*; or *Necesse est ut omnes moriantur*. *Consulendum est tibi a me*, I must consult for your good; for *Oportet ut consulam tibi*, Cic.

OBS. 2. The dative is often understood; as, *Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano*, sc. *tibi*, Juv. *Hic vincendum, aut moriendum, milites est*, sc. *vobis*, Liv. *Deliberandum est diu, quod statuendum est semel*, sc. *tibi vel alicui*, P. Syr.

II. The gerund in *DI* is governed by substantives or adjectives; as,

Tempus legendi, Time of reading. *Cupidus discendi*, Desirous of learning.

OBS. This gerund is sometimes construed with the genitive plural; as, *Facultas agrorum condonandi*, for *agros*, Cic. *Copia spectandi comædiarum*, for *comædias*, Ter. But chiefly with pronouns; as, *In castra venerunt sui purgandi causâ*, Cæs. *Vestri adhortandi causa*, Liv. *Ejus videndi cupidus*, sc. *fœminæ*, Ter. The gerund here is supposed to govern the genitive like a substantive noun.

III. The gerund in *DO* of the dative case is governed by adjectives signifying usefulness or fitness; as,

Charta utilis scribendo,

Paper useful for writing.

OBS. 1. Sometimes the adjective is understood; as, *Non est solvendo*, scil. *par*, or *habilis*, He is not able to pay. *Is finis censendo factus est*, Liv.

OBS. 2. This gerund is sometimes governed also by verbs: as, *Adesse scribendo*, Cic. *Aptat habendo ensem*, for wearing, Virg.

IV. The gerund in *DUM* of the accusative case is governed by the preposition *ad* or *inter*; as,

Promptus ad audiendum,
Attentus inter docendum,

Ready to hear.
 Attentive in time of teaching.

Obs. This gerund is also governed by some other prepositions; as, *Ante domandum*, Virg. *Ob absolvendum*, Cic. *Circa movendum*, Quinctil. Or it depends on some verb going before, and then with the verb *esse* governs the dative case; as, *Scio moriendum esse omnibus*, I know that all must die. *Esse* is often understood.

V. The gerund in *DO* of the ablative case, is governed by the prepositions *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in*; as,

Pœna a peccando absterret, Punishment frightens from sinning.

* Or without a preposition, as the ablative of manner or cause; as,

Memoria excolendo augetur, The memory is improved by exercising it.
Dēfessus sum ambulando, I am wearied with walking.

Obs. The gerund, in its nature, very much resembles the infinitive. Hence the one is frequently put for the other; as, *Est tempus legendi*, or *legere*: only the gerund is never joined with an adjective; and is sometimes taken in a passive sense; as, *Cum Tisidum vocaretur ad imperandum*, i. e. *ut ipsi imperatur*, to receive orders, Sall. *Nunc ades ad imperandum, vel ad parendum potius*; *Sic enim antiqui loquebantur*, Cic. i. e. *ut tibi imperetur*. *Urit videndo*, i. e. *dum videtur*, Virg.

The gerund, in English, becomes a substantive by prefixing the article to it, and then it is always to be construed with the preposition *of*; as, *He is employed in writing letters*; or, *in the writing of letters*; but it is improper to say, *in the writing letters*, or *in writing of letters*.

Gerunds turned into participles in *dus*.

XXXVI. Gerunds governing the accusative are elegantly turned into participles in *dus*, which, like adjectives, agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case; as,

By the Gerund.		By the Participle or Geruntive.
<i>Petendum est mihi pacem,</i>	} or more frequently {	<i>Pax est petenda mihi.</i>
<i>Tempus petendi,</i>		<i>Tempus petendæ pacis.</i>
<i>Ad petendum pacem,</i>		<i>Ad petendam pacem.</i>
<i>A petendo pacem,</i>		<i>A petenda pace.</i>

Obs. 1. In changing gerunds into participles in *dus*, the participle and the substantive are always to be put in the same case in which the gerund was; as,

Genitive. *Inita sunt consilia urbis delendæ, civium trucidandorum, nominis Romani extinguendi*, Cic.

Dat. *Perpetiendi labori idoneus*, Colum. *Capessendæ reipublicæ habilis*, Tac. *Area firma templis ac porticibus sustinendis*, Liv. *Oneri ferendo est*, sc. *aptus v. habiles*, Ovid. *Natus miseris ferendis*, Ter. *Literis dandis vigilare*, Cic. *Locum oppido condendo capere*, Liv.

Acc. and Abl. *Ad defendendam Romam ab oppugnanda Capua duces Romanos abstrahere*, Liv. *Orationem Latinam legendis nostris efficiens plenior*, Cic.

Obs. 2. The gerunds of verbs which do not govern the accusative, are never changed into the participle, except those of *medeor*, *utor*, *abutor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, and *potior*; as, *Spes potiundi urbe, or potiundi urbis*; but we always say, *Cupi-dus subveniendi tibi*, and never *tui*.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF SUPINES.

1. *The Supine in um.*

XXXVII. The supine in *um* is put after a verb of motion; as,

Abiit deambulatum,

He hath gone to walk.

So *Ducere cohortes prædatum*, Liv. *Nunc venis irrisum dominum; Quod in rem tuam optimum facta arbitror, te id admonitum venio*, Plaut.

OBS. 1. The supine in *um* is elegantly joined with the verb *eo*, to express the signification of any verb more strongly; as, *It se perditum*, the same with *id agit*, or *operam dat, ut se perdat*, He is bent on his own destruction, Ter. This supine, with *iri* taken impersonally, supplies the place of the infinitive passive; as, *An credebas illam sine tuâ operâ iri deductum domum?* which may be thus resolved, *An credebas iri* (a te vel ab aliquo) *deductum* (i. e. ad deducendum) *illam domum*, Ter.

OBS. 2. The supine in *um* is put after other verbs besides verbs of motion; as, *Dedit filiam nuptum; Cantatum provocemus*, Ter. *Revocatus defensum patriam; Divisit copias hiematum*, Nep.

OBS. 3. The meaning of this supine may be expressed by several other parts of the verb; as, *Venit oratum opem*; or 1. *Venit opem orandi causâ*, or *opis orandæ*. 2. *Venit ad orandum opem*, or *ad orandam opem*. 3. *Venit opi orandæ*. 4. *Venit opem oraturus*. 5. *Venit qui*, or *ut opem oret*. 6. *Venit opem orare*. But the third and the last of these are seldom used.

2. *The Supine in u.*

XXXVIII. The supine in *u* is put after an adjective noun; as,

Facile dictu,

Easy to tell, or to be told.

So *Nihil dictu fœdum, visuque hæc limina tangat; intra quæ puer est*, Juv. *Difficilis res est inventu versus amicus; Fas v. nefas est dictu; Opus est scitu*, Cic.

OBS. 1. The supine in *u*, being used in a passive sense, hardly ever governs any case. It is sometimes, especially in old writers, put after verbs of motion; as, *Nunc absonatu redeo*, from getting provisions, Plaut. *Primus cubitu surgat* (villicus) from bed, *postremus cubitum eat*, Cato.

OBS. 2. This supine may be rendered by the infinitive or gerund with the preposition *ad*; as, *Difficile cognitu, cognosci*, or *ad cognoscendum; Res facilis ad credendum*, Cic.

OBS. 3. The supines being nothing else but verbal nouns of the fourth declension, used only in the accusative and ablative singular, are governed in these cases by prepositions understood; the supine in *um* by the preposition *ad*, and the supine in *u* by the preposition *in*.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF INDECLINABLE WORDS.

I. *The Construction of Adverbs.*

XXXIX. Adverbs are joined to verbs, and participles to adjectives, and to other adverbs; as,

Bene scribit,

He writes well.

Servius egregiè fidelis,

A slave remarkably faithful.

Fortiter pugnans,

Fighting bravely.

Satis bene,

Well enough.

Obs. 1. Adverbs are sometimes likewise joined to substantives; as,

Homerus plane orator; plane noster, verè Metellus, Cic. So, Hodie mane; cras mane, heri mane; hodie vesperi, &c. tam mane, tam vespere.

Obs. 2. The adverb for the most part in Latin, and always in English, is placed near to the word which it modifies or affects.

Obs. 3. Two negatives, both in Latin and English, are equivalent to an affirmative; as,

Nec non senserunt, Nor did they not perceive, i. e. *Et senserunt*, And they did perceive; *Non poteram non exanimari metu*, Cic. Examples, however, of the contrary of this sometimes occur in good authors, both English and Latin. Thus two or three negative particles are placed before the subjunctive mode to express a stronger negation. *Neque tu haud dicas tibi non prædictum*, And do not say that you were not forewarned, Ter.

But what chiefly deserves attention in Adverbs, is the degree of comparison and the mode with which they are joined. 1. *Apprimè, admòdum, vehementer, maximè perquam, valdè, oppidò, &c.* and *per* in composition, are usually joined to the positive; as, *Utrique nostrum gratum admodum feceris*, You will do what is very agreeable to both of us, Cic. *Perquam puerile*, very childish; *oppidò pauci*, very few; *perfacile est, &c.* In like manner, *Parum, multum, nimium, tantum, quantum, aliquantum*; as, *In rebus apertissimus nimium longi sumus; parum firmus multum bonus*, Cic. Adverbs in *um* are sometimes also joined to comparatives; as, *Forma viri aliquantum amplior humanà*, Liv.

QUAM is joined to the positive or superlative in different senses; as, *Quam difficile est!* How difficult it is! *Quam crudelis, or Ut crudelis est!* How cruel he is! *Flens quam familiariter*, very familiarly, Ter. *So quam severè*, very severely, Cic. *Quam latè*, very widely, Cæs. *Tum multa, quam, &c.* as many things as, &c. *Quam maximas potest copias armis*, as great as possible, Sall. *Quam maximas gratias agit quam primum, quam sæpissime*, Cic. *Quam quisque pessimè fecit, tam maximè tutus est*, SALL.

FACILE, for *haud dubiè*, undoubtedly, clearly, is joined to the superlatives or words of a similar meaning; as, *Facilè doctissimus, facilè princeps, v. præcipuus*. **LONGE**, to comparatives or superlatives, rarely to the positive; as, *Longè eloquentissimus Plato*, Cic. *Pedibus longe melior Lycus*, Virg.

2. CUM, when, is construed with the indicative or subjunctive, oftener with the latter; **DUM**, whilst, or how long, with the indicative; as, *Dum hæc aguntur; Egrotò, dum anima est, spes esse dicitur*, Cic. *Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos*, Ovid. **DUM** and **DONEC**, for *usquedum*, until, sometimes with the indicative, and sometimes with the subjunctive; as, *Operior, dum ista Cognosco*, Cic. *Haud desinam, donec perfecero*, Ter. **So QUOAD**, for *quamdiu*, quantum, quatenus, as long, as much, as far as; thus, *Quoad Catilina fuit in urbe; Quoad tibi æquum videbitur; quoad possem & liceret; quoad progredi potuerit amentia*, Cic. But **QUOAD**, until, oftener with the subjunctive; as, *Thessalonicae esse statueram, quoad aliquid ad me scriberes*, Cic. but not always; *Non faciam finem rogandi, quoad nunciatum erit te fecisse*, Cic. The pronoun *ejus*, with *facere* or *fieri*, is elegantly added to *quoad*; as, *Quoad ejus facere poteris; Quoad ejus fieri, possit*, Cic. *Ejus* is thought to be here governed by *aliquid*, or some such word understood. *Quoad corpus, quoad animam*, for *secundum*, or *quoad attinet ad corpus vel animam*, as to the body or soul, is esteemed by the best grammarians not to be good Latin.

3. POSTQUAM or **POSTEAQUAM**, after, is usually joined with the indic. **ANTEQUAM**, **PRIUSQUAM**, before: **SIMUL**, **SIMULAC**, **SIMULATIQUE**, **SIMULUT**, as soon as; **UBI**, when, sometimes with the Ind. and sometimes with the Subj.; as, *Antequam dico or dicam*, Cic. *Simulac persensit*, Virg. *Simul ut videro Curionem*, Cic. *Hæc ubi dicta dedit*, Liv. *Ubi semel quis pejeraverit, ei credi postea non oportet*, Cic. *So NÆ*, truly; as, *Næ ego homo sum infelix*, Ter. *Næ tu, si id fecisses, melius famæ consuluisse*, Cic. But **NE**, not, with the imperative, or more elegantly with the subjunctive; as, *Ne jura*,

Plaut. *Ne post conferas culpam in me*, Ter. *Ne tot annorum felicitatem in unius horæ dederis discrimen*, Liv.

4. QUASI, CEU, TANQUAM, PERINDE, when they denote resemblance, are joined with the indicative; *Fuit olim, quasi ego sum, senex*, Plaut. *Adversi rupto ceu quondam turbine venti configunt*, Virg. *Hæc omnia perinde sunt, ut aguntur*. But when used ironically, they have the subjunctive; as, *Quasi de verbo, non de re laboretur*, Cic.

5. UTINAM, & SI, UT for *utinam*, I wish, take the subjunctive; as, *Utinam ea res ei voluptati sit*, Cic. *O mihi præteritos referat si Jupiter annos*, Virg. *Ut illum dii deaque perdant*, Ter.

6. UT, when, or after, takes the indicative; as, *Ut discessit, venit, &c.* ¶ Also for *quam*, or *quomodo*, how! as, *Ut valet! Ut falsus animi est! Ut sæpe summa ingenia in occulto latent!* Plaut. ¶ Or when it simply denotes resemblance; as, *Ut tute es, ita omnes censes esse*, Plaut. ¶ In this sense it sometimes has the subjunctive; as, *Ut sementem feceris, ita metes*, Cic.

7. QUIN, for CUR NON, takes the indic. ; as, *Quin continetis vocem indicem stultitiæ vestræ?* Cic. ¶ For IMO, nay or but, the indic. or imperat. as, *Quin est paratum, argentum; quin in hoc audi*, Ter. ¶ For UT NON, QUI, QUÆ, QUOD NON, or QUO MINUS, the subjunctive; as, *Nulla tam facilis res, quin difficilis fiet quum invitatus facias*, Ter. *Nemo est, quin maleat; Facere non possum, quin ad te mittam*, I cannot help sending; *Nihil abest, quin sim miserri-mus*, Cic.

THE GOVERNMENT OF ADVERBS.

XL. Some Adverbs of time, place, and quantity, govern the genitive; as,

Pridie ejus diēi,
Ubique gentium,
Satis est verborum,

The day before that day.
Everywhere.
There is enough of words.

1. Adverbs of time governing the genit. are, *Interea, postea, inde, tunc*; as, *Interea loci*, in the mean time; *postea loci*, afterwards; *inde loci*, then; *tunc temporis*, at that time. 2. Of place, *Ubi* and *quo* with their compounds, *ubique, ubicunque, ubivis, ubiubi, &c.* Also *Eo, huc, uccine, unde, usquam, nusquam, longe, ibidem*; as, *Ubi, quo, quovis, &c.* also, *usquam, nusquam, unde terrarum, vel gentium; longè gentium; ibidem loci, eo audaciæ, vecordiæ miseriarum, &c.* to that pitch of boldness, madness, misery, &c. 3. Of quantity, *Abunde, affatim, largiter, nimis, satis, parum, minimè*; as, *Abundè gloriæ affatim divitiarum, largiter auri satis eloquentiæ, sapientiæ parum est illi, vel habet*. He has enough of glory, riches, &c. *Minimè gentium*, by no means.

Some add *ergo* and *instar*; as, *Ergo virtutis*, for the sake of virtue, Cic. *Instar montis*, like a mountain, Virg. But these are properly nouns.

Obs. 1. These adverbs are thought to govern the genitive, because they imply, in themselves, the force of a substantive; as, *Potentia gloriæque abundè adeptus*, the same with *abundantiam gloriæ*; or *res, locus, or negotium*, and a preposition, may be understood; as, *Interea loci*, i. e. *inter ea negotia loci*; *Ubi terrarum*, for *in quo loco terrarum*.

Obs. 2. We usually say, *pridie, postridie ejus diei, seldom diem*; but *pridie, postridie Kalendas, Nonas, Idus, ludos Apollinares, natalem ejus, absolutionem ejus, &c.* rarely *Kalendarum, &c.*

Obs. 3. *En* and *ecce* are construed either with the nominative or accusative; as,

En hostis, or hostem; Ecce miserum hominem, Cic. Sometimes a dative is added; as, *Ecce tibi Strato*, Ter. *Ecce duas* (scil. aras) *tibi, Daphni*, Virg. In like manner is construed *hem* put for *ecce*; as, *Hem tibi Davum*, Ter. But in all these examples some verb must be understood.

XLI. Some derivative adverbs govern the case of their primitives ; as,

*Omnium optimè loquitur,
Convenienter naturæ,
Venit obviam ei,
Proximè castris or castra,*

He speaks the best of all.
Agreeably to nature.
He came to meet him.
Next the camp.

II. THE CONSTRUCTION OF PREPOSITIONS.

¶ 1. The Prepositions *ad*, *apud*, *ante*, &c. govern the accusative ; as,

AD astra, *to the stars* ; religari ad asserem, *to be bound to a plank* ; ad diem veniam, solvam, &c. *at or on* ; ad portam, ostium, fores, *at, before* ; ad urbem, Tiberim, *near, at* ; ad templa supplicatio, *in* ; ad summum, *at most, or to the top* ; ad summam, *on the whole*, Cic. ; ad ultimum, extremum, *at last, finally* ; ad v. in speciem, *to appearance* ; mentis ad omnia capacitas ; annus fatalis ad interitum ; lenius ad severitatem, *for, with respect to*, Cic. ; ad vivum, sc. corpus, *to the quick* ; ad judicem agere, *before* ; nihil ad Cæsarem, *in comparison of* ; numero ad duodecim, *to the number of* ; omnes ad unum, *to a man* ; ad hoc, *besides* ; ad vulgi opinionem, *according to* ; homo ad unguem factus, *an accomplished man* ; herbæ ad lunam messæ, *by the light of*, Virg. ; ad tempus venit, *at* ; Ira brevis est & ad tempus, *for* ; ad tempus consilium capiam, *according to*, Cic. ; ad decem annos, *after* ; annos, ad quinquaginta natus, *about*, Cic. ; nebula erat ad multum diei, *for a great part of the day*, Liv. ad pedes jacere, proculvi, procumbere, & ad genua ; ad manus esse, *at* ; ad manus venire, *to come to a close engagement* ; ad libellam debere, *to a farthing, no more and no less* ; ad amussim, *exactly* ; ad hæc visa auditaque, *upon seeing and hearing these things*, Liv.

AD seems sometimes to be taken adverbially ; as, Ad duo millia casa sunt ; ad mille hominum amissum est : ad ducenti perierunt, *about*, Liv.

APUD forum, *at* ; apud me cœnabis, *at my house* ; apud senatum, iudices, v. aliquem dicere, *before* ; apud majores nostros, *among* ; apud Xenophontem, *in the book of* ; Est mihi fides, vel valeo apud illum, *I have credit with him* ; facio te apud illum deum, Ter.

ANTE diem, focum, &c. *before*.

ADVERSUS, v. -um ; **CONTRA** hostes, *against* ; adversus infimos justitia est servanda, *toward* ; adversum hunc loqui, *to*, Ter. Lerina adversum Antipolim, *over against*, Plin.

CIS vel **CITRA** flumen, *on this side* ; citra necessitatem, *without* ; Edo citra cruditatem, bibe citra ebrietatem, Senec.

CIRCUM & **CIRCA** regem, *about* ; Varia circa hæc opinio, Plin.

ERGA amicos, *towards*. **EXTRA** mures ; Extra jocum, periculum, noxiam, sortem, *without* ; nemo extra te, *besides* ; extra conjurationem, *not concerned in*, Sall.

INFRA tectum, *below the roof*.

INTER fratres, *among* ; inter & super cœnam, *during, in the time of* ; inter hæc parata, *during these preparations*, Sall. Inter tot annos, *in*, Cic. Inter diem, whence ; interdiu, *in the day-time* ; inter se amant, *they love one another* ; Quasi non norimus nos inter nos, Ter.

INTRA privatos parietes, intra paucos annos, *within* ; intra famam est, *less than report*, Quinct.

JUXTA macellum, *near the shambles*.

OB lucrum, *for gain* ; ob oculos, *before* ; ob industriam for de industria, *on purpose*, Plaut.

PENES quem, or quem penes, *in the power of* ; Penes te es ? *Are you in your senses ?* Hor.

PER agros, *through* ; per vim, per scelus, *by* ; per anni tempus, per ætatem licet, *for, by reason of*.

PONE caput, *behind*.

POST hoc tempus, *after* ; post tergum, *behind* ; post homines natos, post hominum memoriam, *since the world began*.

PRÆTER te nemo, *nobody besides, or except* ; præter casam fugere, *beyond* ; præter legem, morem, æquum & bonum, spem, opinionem, &c. *contrary*

to, against, beyond; præter cæteros excellere, lamentari, above; præter ripam ire, along, near; præter oculos, before, Cic.

PROPTER virtutem, for, on account of; propter æquæ rivi, near, hard by, Virg.

SECUNDUM facta & virtutes tuas, according to, Ter. secundum littus, secundum aurem vulneratus est, near to; in actione secundum vocem vultus plurimum valet; secundum patrem tu es proximus, after, next to; Prætor secundum me decrevit sententiam dedit, for, in my favor, Cic.

SECUS viam, by, along.

¶ 2. The Prepositions *a*, *ab*, *abs*, &c. govern the ablative;

as,

A patre, ab omnibus, abs te, by or from; a puero, vel pueris, a pueritia, in cubilibus, teneris unguibus, &c. from a child, ever since childhood; ab ovo usque ad mala, from the beginning to the end of supper; a manu, sc. servus, an amanuensis or clerk; ad manum, a waiting man; a pedibus, a footman; a latere principis, an attendant. So a secretis, rationibus, consiliis, cyathis, &c. a secretary, accountant, &c.; fores a nobis, for nostris. Injuria ab illo, for illius, Ter. a cæna, after; Secundus, tertius a Romulo; ictus ab latere, on or in; a senatu stare, for, in defence of; ab oculis doleo, Plaut. ab ingenio improbus, a pecunia & militibus imparatus, as to, with respect to, Cic. Est calor a sole; omissiores ab re, too careless about money; a villa mercenarius vidi, Ter.

ABSQUE causa, without; absque te esset, recte ego mihi vidissem, i. e. si tu non esses, nisi tu esses, but for you, had it not been for you, Ter. Absque is chiefly used by comic writers; sine, by orators.

CLAM patre & patrem, without the knowledge of.

CORAM omnibus, before, in presence of.

CUM exercitu, with, testis mecum est annulus, in my possession, Ter. cum prima luce, at break of day; cum imperio esse, in; cum primis, in primis, in the first place; cum metu dicere, cum lætitia vivere, cum cura, &c. Cic. We say, mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum, rarely cum me, cum te, &c. and quocum or cumquo, quibuscum or cum quibus.

DE lana caprina rixantur, about, concerning; De tanto patrimonio nihil relictum est, of; de loco superiore,

SUPRA terram, above.

TRANS mare, over, beyond.

ULTRA oceanum, beyond.

To prepositions governing the accusative are commonly added CIRCITER, PROPE, USQUE, and VERSUS; as, Circiter meridiem, about mid-day; prope muros, near the walls; usque Puteolos, Tharsum usque, as far as; Orientem versus, towards the east. But in these *ad* is understood; which we find sometimes expressed; as, Prope ad annum, Nep. Ab ovo usque ad mala, Hor. Ad oceanum versus, Cæs. In Italiam versus, Cic.

from; de die, by day; de nocte, by night; de integro, anew, afresh; de v. ex improviso, unexpectedly; de v. ex industria, on purpose; de meo, at my expense; Id de lucro putato esse, clear gain, Ter. de v. ex compacto agere, by agreement; de transverso, crosswise, athwart; de v. ex ejus sententia, consilio, according to; qua v. hac de causa, for; homo de plebe; templum de marmore, of; descripto dicere, to read a speech; de filio emit, from, Cic. De servis fidelissimus; de ipsius exercitu non amplius hominum mille cecidit, Nep. Robur de exercitu, Liv. Adolescens de summo loco, Plaut. De procul aspicere, Id.

E foro, ex ædibus, from, out of; e contrario, v. contraria parte, on the contrary; e regione, over against; e republica, e re alicujus, for the good of; statim e somno, ex fuga, ex tanta properantia, aliud ex alio malum, from, after; e vestigio, out of hand, immediately; poculum ex auro; ex equo pugnare, on horseback; facere pugnam ex commodo, on advantageous ground, Sall.; diem ex die expectare, from day to day, day after day; ex ordine, in order; magna ex parte, for the most part; ex super vacuo, superfluously; ex tua dignitate v. virtute, ex decreto senatus, e natura, according to; so vulgus ex veritate pauca, ex opinione multa æstimat; ex v. de more, ad v. in morem alicujus: Ex animo, from the heart; Insolentia ex prosperis rebus, e via languere, ex doctrina nobilis, on account of; ex usu est tibi, of advantage; ex eo die, since; ex amicis certis certissimus, of, or among; ex pedibus laborare, to be

ill of the gout, Cic. *E re nata*, as the matter stands, Ter. *Commenta mater est, esse ex alio viro, nescio quo, puerum natum*, by, Id.

PRO gloria certare, *for*; *Rati noctem pro se, favorable to them*, Sall. *Hoc est pro me*, Cic. *pro templo, tribunali, concione, rostris, castris, foribus, before*; *pro sua dignitate, sapientia, &c. pro potestate cogere, pro tempore, re, loco, suo jure, according to*; *est pro præfatore, pro te molam, comes fecundus pro vehiculo est, for, instead of*; *pro viribus, pro parte virili, pro sua quisque parte v. facultate, to one's ability or power*; *Parum tibi pro eo, quod a te habeo, reddidi, in comparison of, considering*, Cic. *pro ut, pro eo ae, pro eo ut mereor, as I deserve*; *pro se quisque, uterque, &c. for his own part*; *pro rata parte, pro portione, in proportion*; *pro cive se gerit; agere pro victoribus; pro suo uti; pro rupto fœdus habet, for as; so pro certo, infecto, comperto, nihilo, concesso, &c. habeo, duco. Pro occiso, relictus est*, Cic.

PRÆ se pugionem tulit, *before*; *speciem præ se boni viri fert, pretends*

to be, Ter. *præ lacrymis non possum scribere, for, because of*; *illum præ me contempsi, in comparison of*; *So the adv. præut; as, præut hujus rabies quæ dabit, Ter.*

PALAM populo, omnibus, *before, with the knowledge of*.

SINE labore, *without*; *sine ulla causa, pompa, molestia, querela, impensa, &c.; homo sine re, fide, spe, fortunis, sede, &c. Cic.*

Capulo TENUS, *up to the hilt. Tenus* is construed with the genitive plural, when the word wants the sing.; as, *Cumarum tenus*, as far as *Cuma*; or when we speak of things, of which we have by nature only two; as, *Oculorum, aurium, narium, labrorum, lumborum, crurum tenus, up to. We also find Corcyræ tenus, & ostiis tenus, Liv. Colchis tenus, Flor. Pectoribus tenus, Ovid.*

To prepositions governing the abl. is commonly added **PROCUL**; as, *Procul domo*, far from home; but here *a* is understood, which is also often expressed; as, *Procul a patria*, Virg. *Procul ab ostensione, Quinct. Culpa est procul a me*, Ter.

3. PREPOSITIONS governing the Acc. and Abl.

XLIV. The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter*, govern the accusative, when motion to a place is signified; but when motion or rest in a place is signified, *in* and *sub* govern the ablative; *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative.

IN, when it signifies *into*, governs the accusative; when it signifies *in* or *among*, it governs the ablative; as,

IN urbem ire, *into*; *amor in patriam, in te benignus, towards*; *in lucem, until day*; *in eam sententiam, to that purpose, on that head*; *In rem tuam est, for your advantage*; *in utramque partem disputare, on both sides, for and against*; *litura in nomen, on, Cic. potestas in filium, over*; *in aliquem dicere, against*; *mirum in modum, after*; *in pedes stare, in arem dormire, on*; *in os laudare, to, before*; *in v. inter patres lectus, into the number of*; *in vulgus probari, spargere, &c. among*; *crescit in dies, in singulos dies, omnes in dies, every day*; *in diem posterum, proximum, decimum, against*; *in diem vivere, to live from hand to mouth, not to*

think of to-morrow; *Est in diem, will happen sometime after*, Ter. *Induciæ in duos menses datæ, in hunc diem, annum, &c. for*; *Ternis assibus in pedem, v. in singulos pedes, transegit, he bargained for three shillings a foot, or for every foot*; *So in jugerum, militem, capita, naves, &c. In medimna singula, H. S. quinos denos dedisti, Cic.*

IN portu navigo, *in tempore, in*; *esse in potestate, v. in potestatem, honore v. honorem, mente v. mentem*; *in manu v. manibus esse; habere, tenere, in one's power, on hand*; *in amicis, among*; *in oculis, before*; *Occisus est in provinciam, for in provincia, Sall. In pueritia, adoles-*

centia, senectute, absentia, *for* puer or pueri, *when a boy or boys*, &c. Hoc in tempore, Nep. In loco fratris diligere, *for* ut fratrem, Ter.

SUB terras ibit imago, sub aspectum cadit, *under*; sub ipsum funus, *near*, just before, Hor. sub lucem, ortum lucis, noctem, vesperam, brumam, i. e. incipiente luce, &c. *at the dawn of day*, &c. sub idem tempus, *about*; sub eas literas recitatae sunt tuae, sub festos dies, *after*, Cic.

SUB muro, rege, pedibus, &c. *under*;

sub urbe, *near*, Ter. sub ea conditione, v. -em, *on or with*.

SUPER Numidiam, *above, beyond*; super ripas, *upon*; super hæc; super morbum etiam fames affixit, *besides*, Liv. super arbore, fronde super viridi, *upon*; super hac re scribere, his accensa super, *concerning*; alii super cœnam, super vinum & epulas, *for* inter, *during*, Curt. Nec super ipse suâ molitur laude laborem, *for*, Virg.

SUBTER terram vel terra, *under*.

OBS. 1. Prepositions in English have always after them the accusative or objective case. And when prepositions in English or Latin do not govern a case, they are reckoned adverbs.

Such are Ante, circa, clam, cœram, contra, infra, intra, juxta, palam, pone, post, propter, secus, subter, supra, ultra. But in most of these, the case seems to be implied in the sense; as, Longo post tempore venit, sc. post id tempus. Adversus, juxta, propter, secus, secundum, & clam, are by some thought to be always adverbs, having a preposition understood when they govern a case. So other adverbs also are construed with the acc. or abl.; as, Intus cellam, *for* intra, Liv. Intus templo divam, sc. in, Virg. Simul his, sc. cum, Hor.

OBS. 2. A and E are only put before consonants; AB and EX, usually before vowels, and sometimes also before consonants; as,

A patre, a regione; ab initio, ab rege; ex urbe, ex parte; abs before q and t; as, abs te, abs quivis homine, Ter. Some phrases are used only with e; as, e longinquo, e regione, e vestigio, e remea est, &c. Some only with ex; as, Ex compacto, ex tempore, magna ex parte, &c.

OBS. 3. Prepositions are often understood; as, Devenere locos, scil. ad; It portis, sc. ex, Virg. Nunc id prodeo, scil. ob vel propter, Ter. Maria aspera juro, scil. per, Virg. Ut se loco movere, non possent, scil. e vel de, Cæs. Vina promens dolio, scil. ex, Hor. Quid illo facias? Quid me fiet? sc. de, Ter. And so in English, Show me the book; Get me some paper, that is, to me, for me. We sometimes find the word to which the preposition refers suppressed; as, Circum concordia, sc. ædem, Sall. Round St. Paul's, namely, church; Campum Stellatæm divisit extra sortem ad viginti millibus civium, i. e. civium millibus ad viginti millia, Suet. But this is most frequently the case after prepositions in composition; thus, Emittere servum, scil. manu, Plaut. Evomere virus, scil. ore, Cic. Educere copias, scil. castras, Cæs.

XLV. A preposition in composition often governs the same case, as when it stands by itself; as,

Adæamus scholam,
Exeamus scholâ,

Let us go to the school.
Let us go out of the school.

OBS. 1. The preposition with which the word is compounded is often repeated; as, Adire ad scholam; Exire ex schola; Adgredi aliquid, or ad aliquid; ingredi orationem vel in orationem; inducere animum & in animum; evadere undis & ex undis; decedere de suo jure, decedere viâ, vel de viâ; expellere, ejicere, exterminare, extrudere, exturbare urbe, & ex urbe. Some do not repeat the preposition; as, Affari, alloqui, allatrare, aliquem, not ad aliquem. So Alluere urbem; accollere flumen; circumvenire aliquem; præterire injuriam; abdicare se magistratu (also abdicare magistratum;) transducere exercitum fluvium, &c.

Others are only construed with the preposition; as, *Accurrere ad aliquem, adhortari ad aliquid, incidere in morbum, avocare a studiis, avertere ab incepto, &c.*

Some admit other prepositions; as, *Abire, demigrare loco*; & *a, de, ex loco*; *abstrahere aliquem a, de, vel e conspectu*; *Desistere sentiâ, a vel de sententia*; *Excidere manibus, de vel e manibus, &c.*

OBS. 2. Some verbs compounded with *e* or *ex* govern either the ablative or accusative; as,

Egredi urbe or *urbem*, sc. *extra*; *egredi extra vallum*, Nep. *Evadere insidiis* or *insidias*. *Patrios excedere muros*, Lucan. *Sceleratâ excedere terrâ*, Virg. *Elabi ex manibus*; *pugnam, vincula*, Tac.

OBS. 3. This rule does not take place, unless when the preposition may be disjoined from the verb, and put before the noun by itself; as, *Alloquor patrem*, or *loquor ad patrem*.

III. THE CONSTRUCTION OF INTERJECTIONS.

XLVI. The interjections *O*, *heu*, and *proh*, are construed with the nominative, accusative, or vocative; as,

O vir bonus or *bone*! *O good man*! *Heu me miserum*! *Ah wretched me*!

So, *O vir fortis atque amicus*! Ter. *Heu vanitas humana*! Plin. *Heu miserande puer*! Virg. *O præclarum custodem ovium* (ut aiunt) *lupum*! Cic.

XLVII. *Hei* and *væ* govern the dative; as,

Hei mihi! *Ah me*!

Væ vobis! *Woe to you*!

OBS. 1. *Heus* and *ohe* are joined only with the vocative; as, *Heus Syre*, Ter. *Ohe libelle*! Martial. *Proh* or *pro*, *ah*, *vah*, *hem*, have generally either the accusative or vocative; as, *Proh hominum fidem*? Ter. *Proh Sancte Jupiter*! Cic. *Hem astutias*! Ter.

OBS. 2. Interjections cannot properly have either concord or government. They are only mere sounds excited by passion, and have no just connexion with any other part of a sentence. Whatever case, therefore, is joined with them, must depend on some other word understood, except the vocative, which is always placed absolutely; thus, *Heu me miserum*! stands for *Heu! quam me miserum sentio*! *Hei mihi*! for *Hei! malum est mihi*! *Proh dolor*! for *Proh! quantus est dolor*! and so in other examples.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF CIRCUMSTANCES.

The circumstances which, in Latin, are expressed in different cases, are, 1. The *Price of a thing*. 2. The *Cause, Manner, and Instrument*. 3. *Place*. 4. *Measure and Distance*. 5. *Time*.

1. PRICE.

XLVIII. The price of a thing is put in the ablative; as,

Emi librum duobus assibus,
Constitit talento,

I bought a book for two shillings.
It cost a talent.

So *Asse carum est*; *vile viginti minis*; *auro venale, &c.* *Nocet emptâ dolore voluptas*, Hor. *Spem pretio non emam*, Ter. *Plurimi auro veneunt honores*, Ovid.

¶ These genitives, *tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris*, are excepted; as,

Quanti constitit, How much cost it? *Asse et pluris*, A shilling and more.

OBS. 1. When the substantive is added, they are put in the ablative; as, *parvo, pretio impenso pretio vendere*, Cic.

OBS. 2. *Magno, permagno, parvo, paululo, minimo, plurimo*, are often used without the substantive; as, *Permagno constitit*, scil. *pretio*, Cic. *Heu quanto regnis nox stetit una tuis?* Ovid, Fast. ii. 812. We also say, *Emi carè, carius, carissimè; bene, melius, optimè; male, pejùs, viliùs, vilissimè; Valde carè æstimas; Emit domum prope dimidio carius, quam æstimabat*, Cic.

OBS. 3. The ablative of price is properly governed by the preposition *pro* understood, which is likewise sometimes expressed; as, *Dum pro argenteis decem aureus unus valeret*, Liv.

2. MANNER AND CAUSE.

XLIX. The cause, manner, and instrument, are put in the ablative; as,

Palleo metu,
Fecit suo more,
Scribo calamo,

I am pale for fear.
He did it after his own way.
I write with a pen.

So *Ardet dolore; pallescere culpâ; æstuarè dubitatione; gestire voluptate vel secundis rebus: Confectus morbo; affectus beneficiis, gravissimo supplicio; insignis pietate; deterior licentiâ: Pietate filius, consiliis pater, amore frater*; hence *Rex Dei gratiâ. Paritur pax bello*, Nep. *Procedere lento gradu; Acceptus regio apparatus: Nullo sono convertitur annus*, Juv. *Jam veniet tacito curva senectæ pede*, Ovid. *Percutere securi, defendere saxis, configere, sagittis, &c.*

OBS. 1. The ablative is here governed by some preposition understood. Before the manner and cause, the preposition is sometimes expressed; as, *De more matrum locuta est*, Virg. *Magno cum metu; Hac de causa: Præ mærore, formidine, &c.* But hardly ever before the instrument; as, *Vulnerare aliquem gladio*, not *cum gladio*, unless among the poets, who sometimes add *a* or *ab*; as, *Trajectus ab ense*, Ovid.

OBS. 2. When any thing is said to be in company with another, it is called the ablative of *Concomitancy*, and has the preposition *cum* usually added, as, *Obsedit curiam cum gladiis: Ingressus est cum gladio*, Cic.

OBS. 3. Under this rule are comprehended several other circumstances, as the matter of which any thing is made, and what is called by grammarians the *ADJUNCT*, that is, a noun in the ablative joined to a verb or adjective, to express the character or quality of the person or thing spoken of; as, *Capitolium saxo quadrato constructum*, Liv. *Floruit acumine ingenii*, Cic. *Pollet opibus, valet armis, viget memoria famâ nobilis, &c. Æger pedibus*. When we express the matter of which any thing is made, the preposition is usually added; as, *Templum de marmore*, seldom *marmoris*; *Poculum ex auro factum*, Cic.

3. PLACE.

The circumstances of place may be reduced to four particulars. 1. The place *where*, or *in which*. 2. The place *whither*, or *to which*. 3. The place *whence*, or *from which*. 4. The place *by*, or *through which*.

AT or IN a place is put in the genitive, unless the noun be of the third declension, or of the plural number, and then it is expressed in the ablative.

To a place is put in the accusative; FROM or BY a place, in the ablative.

But these cases will be more exactly ascertained by reducing the circumstances of place to particular questions.

1. The Place WHERE.

L. When the question is made by *Ubi*? Where? the name of a town is put in the genitive; as,

Vivit Romæ,
Mortuus est Londini,

He lived at Rome.
He died at London.

¶ But if the name of a town be of the third declension or plural number, it is expressed in the ablative; as,

Habitat Carthagine,
Studuit Parisiis,

He dwells at Carthage.
He studied at Paris.

OBS. 1. When a thing is said to be done, not in the place itself, but in its neighborhood, or near it, we always use the preposition *ad* or *apud*; as, *Ad* or *apud Trojam*, At or near Troy.

OBS. 2. The name of a town, when put in the ablative, is here governed by the preposition *in* understood; but if it be in the genitive, we must supply *in urbe*, or *in oppido*. Hence, when the name of a town is joined with an adjective or common noun, the preposition is generally expressed; thus, we do not say, *Natus est Romæ urbis celebri*: but either *Romæ in celebri urbe*, or *in Romæ celebri urbe*; or *in Roma celebri urbe*, or sometimes *Romæ celebri urbe*. In like manner, we usually say, *Habitat in urbe Carthagine*, with the preposition. We likewise find, *Habitat Carthagini*, which is sometimes the termination of the ablative, when the question is made by *ubi*?

2. The Place WHITHER.

LI. When the question is made by *Quo*? Whither? the name of a town is put in the accusative; as,

Venit Romam,
Profectus est Athenas.

He came to Rome.
He went to Athens.

OBS. 1. We find the dative also used among the poets, but more seldom; as, *Carthagini nuncios mittam*, Horat.

OBS. 2. Names of towns are sometimes put in the accusative, after verbs of telling and giving, where motion to a place is implied; as, *Romam erat nunciatum*, The report was carried to Rome, Liv. *Hæc nunciant domum Albani*, Id. *Messanam literas dedit*, Cic.

3. The Place WHENCE.

LII. When the question is made by *Unde*? Whence? or *Qua*? By or through what place? the name of a town is put in the ablative; as,

*Discessit Corintho,
Laodicæa iter faciebat,*

He departed from Corinth.
He went through Laodicea.

When motion *by* or *through* a place is signified, the preposition *per* is commonly used; as, *Per Thebas iter fecit*, Nep.

Domus and *Rus*.

LIII. *Domus* and *rus* are construed the same way as names of towns; as,

*Manet domi,
Domum revertitur,
Domo arcessitus sum,
Vivit rure, or more frequently ruri,
Rediit rure,
Abiit rus,*

He stays at home.
He returns home.
I am called from home.
He lives in the country.
He is returned from the country.
He is gone to the country.

OBS. 1. *Humi*, *militiæ*, and *belli*, are likewise construed in the genitive, as names of towns; thus,

Domi et militiæ, or *belli*, At home and abroad. *Jacet humi*, He lies on the ground.

OBS. 2. When *Domus* is joined with an adjective, we commonly use a preposition; as, *In domo paternâ*, not *domi paternæ*; So, *Ad domum paternam*; *Ex domo paternâ*. Unless when it is joined with these possessives, *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester, regius*, and *alienus*; as, *Domi meæ vixit*, Cic. *Regiam domum comportant*, Sall.

OBS. 3. When *domus* has another substantive in the genitive after it, the preposition is sometimes used, and sometimes not; as, *Deprehensus est domi, domo, or in domo Cæsaris*.

LIV. To names of countries, provinces, and all other places, except towns, the preposition is commonly added; as,

When the question is made by
Ubi? Natus in Italia, in Latio, in urbe, &c.
Quo? Abiit in Italiam, in Latium, in, or ad urbem, &c.
Unde? Rediit ex Italia, e Latio, ex urbe, &c.
Qua? Transiit per Italiam, per Latiam, per urbem, &c.

OBS. 1. A preposition is often added to names of towns; as, *In Roma*, for *Romæ*; *ad Romam*, *ex Roma*, &c.

Peto always governs the accusative as an active verb, without a preposition; as, *Petivit Egyptum*, He went to Egypt.

OBS. 2. Names of countries, provinces, &c. are sometimes construed without the preposition, like names of towns; as, *Pompeius Cypri visus est*, Cæs. *Cretæ jussit considerare Apollo*, Virg. *Non Libyæ*, for *in Libyæ*; *non antè Tyro*, for *Tyri*, Id. *Æn. iv. 36. Venit Sardiniam*, Cic. *Romæ, Numidiæque facinora ejus memorat*, Sall.

4. MEASURE AND DISTANCE.

LV. Measure or distance is put in the accusative, and sometimes in the ablative; as,

Murus est decem pedes altus,

The wall is ten feet high.

*Urbs distat triginta millia, or triginta } The city is thirty miles distant.
 millibus passuum,
 Iter, or itinere unius diei, } One day's journey.*

OBS. 1. The accusative or ablative of measure is put after adjectives and verbs of dimension; as, *Longus, latus, crassus, profundus, and altus*: *Patet, porrigitur, eminet, &c.* The names of measure are, *pes, cubitus, ulna, passus, digitus*, an inch; *palmus*, a span, a hand-breadth, &c. The accusative or ablative of distance is used only after verbs which express motion or distance; as, *Eo, curro, absum, disto, &c.* The accusative is governed by *ad* or *per* understood, and the ablative by *a* or *ab*.

OBS. 2. When we express the measure of more things than one, we commonly use the distributive number; as, *Muri sunt denos pedes alti*, and sometimes *denum pedum*, for *denorum*, in the genitive, *ad mensuram* being understood. But the genitive is only used to express the measure of things in the plural number.

OBS. 3. When we express the distance of a place where any thing is done, we commonly use the ablative; or the accusative with the preposition *ad*; as, *Sex millibus passuum ab urbe consedit*, or *ad sex millia passuum*, Cæs. *Ad quintum milliarium v. milliare consedit*, Cic. *Ad quintum lapidem*, Nep.

OBS. 4. The excess or difference of measure and distance is put in the ablative; as,

Hoc lignum excedit illud digito. Toto vertice supra est, Virg. *Britanniæ longitudo ejus latitudinem ducentis quadraginta milliariis superat.*

5. TIME.

LVI. When the question is made by *Quando*? When? time is put in the ablative; as,

Venit horâ tertiâ,

He came at three o'clock.

¶ When the question is made by *Quamdiu*? How long? time is put in the accusative or ablative, but oftener in the accusative; as,

*Mansit paucos dies,
 Sex mensibus abfuit,*

He staid a few days.

He was away six months.

* Or thus, Time when is put in the ablative, time how long is put in the accusative.

OBS. 1. When we speak of any precise time, it is put in the ablative; but when continuance of time is expressed, it is put for the most part in the accusative.

OBS. 2. All the circumstances of time are often expressed with a preposition; as, *In præsentia*, or *in præsentia*, scil. *tempore*; *in vel ad præsens*; *Per decem annos*; *Surgunt de nocte*; *ad horam destinatum*; *Intra annum*; *Per idem tempus*, *ad Kalendas soluturos ait*, Suet. The preposition *ad* or *circa*, is sometimes suppressed, as in these expressions, *hoc, illud, id, isthuc, ætatis, temporis, horæ, &c.* for *hac ætate, hoc tempore, &c.* And *ante*, or some other word; as, *Annos natus unum & viginti*, sc. *ante*. *Siculi quotannis tributa conferunt*, sc. *tot annis, quot vel quotquot sunt*, Cic. *Prope diem*, sc. *ad*, soon; *Oppidum paucis*

diebus, quibus eo ventum est, expugnatum, sc. *post eos dies*, Cæs. *Ante diem tertium Kalendas Maias accepi tuas literas*, for *die tertio ante*, Cic. *Qui dies futurus esset in ante diem octavum Kalendas Novembris*, Id. *Ex ante diem quintum Kal. Octob.* Liv. *Lacedæmonii septingentos jam annos amplius unis moribus et nunquam mutatis legibus vivunt*, sc. *quam per*, Cic. We find, *Primum stipendium meruit annorum decem septemque*, sc. *Atticus* ; for *septemdecim annos natus*, seventeen years old, Nep.

OBS. 3. The adverb *ABHINC*; which is commonly used with respect to past time, is joined with the accusative or ablative without a preposition ; as, *factum est abhinc biennio* or *biennium*, It was done two years ago. So likewise are *post* and *ante* ; as, *Paucos post annos* : but here, *ea* or *id*, may be understood.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

A compound sentence is that which has more than one nominative, or one finite verb.

A compound sentence is made up of two or more simple sentences or *phrases*, and is commonly called a *Period*.

The parts of which a compound sentence consists, are called *Members* or *Clauses*.

In every compound sentence there are either several subjects and one attribute, or several attributes and one subject, or both several subjects and several attributes : that is, there are either several nominatives applied to the same verb, or several verbs applied to the same nominative, or both.

Every verb marks a judgment or attribute, and every attribute must have a subject. There must, therefore, be in every sentence or period, as many prepositions as there are verbs of a finite mode.

Sentences are compounded by means of relatives and conjunctions ; as,

Happy is the man who loveth religion, and practiseth virtue.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF RELATIVES.

LVII. The relative *Qui, Quæ, Quod*, agrees with the antecedent in gender, number, and person ; and is construed through all the cases, as the antecedent would be in its place ; as,

	Singular.	Plural.
<i>Vir qui,</i>	The man who.	<i>Viri qui.</i>
<i>Fœmina quæ,</i>	The woman who.	<i>Fœminæ quæ.</i>
<i>Negotium quod,</i>	The thing which.	<i>Negotia quæ.</i>
<i>Ego qui scribo,</i>	I who write.	<i>Nos qui scribimus.</i>
<i>Tu qui scribis,</i>	Thou who writest.	<i>Vos qui scribitis.</i>
<i>Vir qui scribit,</i>	The man who writes.	<i>Viri qui scribunt.</i>
<i>Mulier quæ scribit,</i>	The woman who writes.	<i>Mulieres quæ scribunt.</i>
<i>Animal quod currit,</i>	The animal which runs.	<i>Animalia quæ currunt.</i>
<i>Vir quem vidi,</i>	The man whom I saw.	<i>Viri quos vidi.</i>
<i>Mulier quam vidi,</i>	The woman whom I saw.	<i>Mulieres quas vidi.</i>
<i>Animal quod vidi,</i>	The animal which I saw.	<i>Animalia quæ vidi.</i>

<i>Vir cui paret,</i>	The man whom he obeys.	<i>Viri quibus paret.</i>
<i>Vir cui est similis,</i>	The man to whom he is like.	<i>Viri quibus est similis.</i>
<i>Vir a quo,</i>	The man by whom.	<i>Viri a quibus.</i>
<i>Mulier ad quam,</i>	The woman to whom.	<i>Mulieres ad quas.</i>
<i>Vir cujus opus est,</i>	The man whose work it is.	<i>Viri quorum opus est.</i>
<i>Vir quem misëror,</i>	} The man whom I pity.	
<i>cujus miseror, vel miseresco,</i>		
<i>cujus me miseret,</i>		
<i>cujus vel cuja interest, &c.</i>		whose interest it is, &c.

¶ If no nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be the nominative to the verb.

¶ But if a nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be of that case, which the verb or noun following, or the preposition going before, usually governs.

Thus the construction of the relative requires an acquaintance with most of the foregoing rules of syntax, and may serve as an exercise on all of them.

OBS. 1. The relative must always have an antecedent expressed or understood, and therefore may be considered as an adjective placed between two cases of the same substantive, of which the one is always expressed, generally the former; as,

Vir qui (vir) legit; vir quem (virum) amo: Sometimes the latter; as, *Quam quisque nôrit artem, in hac (arte) se exerceat,* Cic. *Eunuchum, quem dedisti nobis, quas turbas dedit,* Ter. sc. *Eunuchus.* Sometimes both cases are expressed; as, *Erant omnino duo itinera, quibus itineribus domo exire possent,* Cæs. Sometimes, though more rarely, both cases are omitted; as, *Sunt, quos hoc genus minime juvat, for sunt homines, quos homines, &c.* Hor.

OBS. 2. When the relative is placed between two substantives of different genders, it may agree in gender with either of them, though most commonly with the former; as,

Vultus quem dixere chaos, Ovid. *Est locus in carcere, quod Tullianum appellatur,* Sall. *Animal, quem vocamus hominem,* Cic. *Cogito id quod res est,* Ter. If a part of a sentence be the antecedent, the relative is always put in the neuter gender; as, *Pompeius se afflixit, quod nihil est summo dolori,* scil. *Pompeium se affligere,* Cic. Sometimes the relative does not agree in gender with the antecedent, but with some synonymous word supplied; as, *Scelus qui for scelestus,* Ter. *Abundantia earum rerum, quæ mortales prima putant,* scil. *negotia,* Sall. *Vel virtus tua me vel vicinitas, quod ego in aliqua parte amicitiae puto, facit ut te moneam,* scil. *negotium,* Ter. *In omni Africâ, qui agebant; for in omnibus Afriis,* Sallust, Jug. 89. *Non diffidentiâ futuri, quæ imperavisset,* for quod, Ib. 100.

OBS. 3. When the relative comes after two words of different persons, it agrees with the first or second person rather than the third; as, *Ego sum vir, qui facio,* scarcely *facit.* In English it sometimes agrees with either; as, *I am the man, who make or maketh.* But when once the person of the relative is fixed, it ought to be continued through the rest of the sentence; thus it is proper to say, "I am the man who takes care of your interest," but if I add, "at the expense of my

own," it would be improper. It ought either to be, "his own," or "who take." In like manner, we may say, "I thank you, who gave, who did love," &c. But it is improper to say, "I thank thee, who gave, who did love:" it should be, "who gavest, who didst love." In no part of the English syntax are inaccuracies committed more frequently than in this. Beginners are particularly apt to fall into them, in turning Latin into English. The reason of it seems to be our applying *thou* or *you*, *thy* or *your*, promiscuously, to express the second person singular, whereas the Latins almost always expressed it by *tu* and *tuus*.

Obs. 4. The antecedent is often implied in a possessive adjective; as,

Omnes laudare fortunas meas, qui haberem gnatum tali ingenio præditum, Ter. Sometimes the antecedent must be drawn from the sense of the foregoing words; as, *Carne pluit, quem imbrem aves rapuisse feruntur*; i. e. *pluit imbrem carne, quem imbrem*, &c. Liv. *Si tempus est ullum jure homines necandi, quæ multa sunt*, scil. *tempora*, Cic.

Obs. 5. The relative is sometimes entirely omitted; as, *Urbs antiqua fuit*; *Tyrî tenuere coloni*, scil. *quam* or *eam*, Virg. Or if once expressed, is afterwards omitted, so that it must be supplied in a different case; as, *Bocchus cum peditibus, quos filius ejus adduxerat, neque in priore pugna adfuerat, Romanos invadunt*; for *quique in priore pugna non adfuerant*, Sall. In English the relative is often omitted, where in Latin it must be expressed; as, *The letter I wrote*, for *the letter which I wrote*; *The man I love*, to wit, *whom*. But this omission of the relative is generally improper, particularly in serious discourse.

Obs. 6. The case of the relative sometimes seems to depend on that of the antecedent; as, *Cum aliquid agas eorum, quorum consuesti*, for *quæ consuesti agere*, or *quorum aliquid agere consuesti*, Cic. *Restitue in quem me accepisti locum for in locum*, in quo, Ter. And. iv. 1. 53. But such examples rarely occur.

Obs. 7. The adjective pronouns, *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, and *idem*, in their construction resemble that of the relative *qui*; as, *Liber ejus*, His or her book; *Vita eorum*, Their life, when applied to men; *Vita earum*, Their life, when applied to women. By the improper use of these pronouns in English, the meaning of sentences is often rendered obscure.

Obs. 8. The interrogative or indefinite adjectives, *qualis*, *quantas*, *quotus*, &c. are also sometimes construed like relatives; as, *Facies est, qualem decet esse sororum*, Ovid. But these have commonly other adjectives, either expressed or understood, which answer to them; as, *Tanta est multitudo quantum urbs capere potest*; and are often applied to different substantives; as, *Quales sunt cives, talis est civitas*, Cic.

Obs. 9. The relative *who* in English is applied only to persons, and *which* to things and irrational animals; but formerly *which* was likewise applied to persons, as, *Our Father, which art in heaven*: and *whose*, the genitive of *who*, is also used sometimes, though perhaps improperly, for *of which*. *That* is used indifferently for persons and things. *What*, when not joined with a substantive, is only applied to things, and includes both the antecedent and the relative, being the same with *that which*, or *the thing which*; as, *This is what he wanted*; that is, *the thing which he wanted*.

Obs. 10. The Latin relative often cannot be translated literally into English, on account of the different idioms of the two languages; as, *Quod cum ita esset*, When that was so; not, Which when it was so, because then there would be two nominatives to the verb *was*, which is improper. Sometimes the accusative of the relative in Latin must be rendered by the nominative in English; as,

Quem dicunt me esse? Who do they say that I am? *not* whom. *Quem dicunt adventare?* Who do they say is coming?

Obs. 11. As the relative is always connected with a different verb from the antecedent, it is usually construed with the subjunctive mode, unless when the meaning of the verb is expressed positively; as, *Audire cupio, quæ legeris*, I want to hear, what you have read; that is, what perhaps or probably you may have read; *Audire cupio, quæ legisti*, I want to hear, what you (*actually or in fact*) have read.

To the construction of the Relative may be subjoined that of the ANSWER TO A QUESTION.

The answer is commonly put in the same case with the question; as,

Qui vocare? Geta, sc. *vocor*. *Quid quæris?* *Librum*, sc. *quæro*. *Quotâ horâ venisti?* *Sextâ*. Sometimes the construction is varied; as, *Cujus est liber?* *Meus*, *not mei*. *Quanti emptus est?* *Decem assibus*. *Damnatusne es furti?* *Imo alio crimine*. Often the answer is made by other parts of speech than nouns; as, *Quid agitur?* *Statur*, sc. *a me, a nobis*. *Quis fecit?* *Nescio*: *Aliunt Petrum fecisse*. *Quomodo vales?* *Bene, male*. *Scriptistine?* *Scripti, ita, etiam, immo, &c.* *An vidisti?* *Non vidi, non minime, &c.* *Chærea tuam vestem detraxit tibi?* *Factum. Et eâ est indutus?* *Factum*, Ter. Most of the Rules of Syntax may thus be exemplified in the form of questions and answers.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF CONJUNCTIONS.

LVIII. The conjunctions *et, at, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel*, and some others, couple like cases and modes; as,

Honora patrem et matrem,
Nec legit nec scribit,

Honor father and mother.
He neither reads nor writes.

Obs. 1. To this rule belong particularly the copulative and disjunctive conjunctions; as likewise *quam, nisi, præterquam, an*; and also adverbs of likeness; as, *ceu, tanquam, quasi, ut, &c.* as,

Nullum præmium a vobis postulo, præterquam hujus diei memoriam, Cic. *Gloria virtutem tanquam, umbra sequitur*, Id.

Obs. 2. These conjunctions properly connect the different members of a sentence together, and are hardly ever applied to single words, unless when some other word is understood. Hence if the construction of the sentence be varied, different cases and modes may be coupled together; as,

Interest mea et reipublicæ; Constitit asse et pluris; Sive es Romæ, sive in Epiro; Decius cum se devoveret, et in mediam aciem irruebât, Cic. *Vir magni ingenii summæque industriâ; Neque per vim, neque insidiis*, Sall. *Tecum habita, & nôris, quam sit tibi curta supellex*, Pers.

Obs. 3. When *et, aut, vel, sive, or nec*, are joined to different members of the same sentence, without connecting it particularly to any former sentence, the first *et* is rendered in English

by *both* or *likewise*; *aut* or *vel*, by *either*; the first *sive*, by *whether*; and the first *nec*, by *neither*; as,

Et legit, et scribit: so *tum legit, tum scribit*; or *cum legit, tum scribit*. He both reads and writes; *Sive legit, sive scribit*. Whether he reads or writes; *Jacere quâ vera, quâ falsa*. *Increpare quâ consules ipsos, quâ exercitum*, to upbraid both the consuls and the army, Liv.

LIX. Two or more substantives singular coupled by a conjunction, (as, *et, ac, atque, &c.*) have an adjective, verb, or relative plural; as,

Petrus et Joannes, qui sunt docti, Peter and John, who are learned.

OBS. 1. If the substantives be of different persons, the verb plural must agree with the first person rather than the second, and with the second rather than the third; as, *Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus*. If you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well, *Cic.* In English, the person speaking usually puts himself last; thus, *You and I read*; *Cicero and I are well*: but in Latin, the person who speaks is generally put first; thus, *Ego et tu legimus*.

OBS. 2. If the substantives are of different genders, the adjective or relative plural must agree with the masculine rather than the feminine or neuter; as, *Pater et mater, qui sunt mortui*; but this is only applicable to beings which may have life. The person is sometimes implied; as, *Athenarum et Cratippi, ad quos, &c.* *Propter summam doctoris auctoritatem et urbis, quorum alter, &c.* *Cic.* Where *Athenæ & urbs* are put for *the learned men* of Athens. So in substantives; as, *Ad Ptolemæum Cleopatramque reges legati missi*, i. e. the king and queen, Liv.

OBS. 3. If the substantives signify things without life, the adjective or relative plural must be put in the neuter gender; as, *Divitiæ, decus, gloria, in oculis sita sunt*, Sall.

The same holds, if any of the substantives signify a thing without life; because when we apply a quality, or join an adjective to several substantives of different genders, we must reduce the substantive to some certain class under which they may all be comprehended, that is, to what is called their *Genus*. Now the *Genus*, or class which comprehends under it both persons and things, is that of substances or beings in general, which are neither masculine nor feminine. To express this, the Latin grammarians use the word *Negotia*.

OBS. 4. The adjective or verb frequently agrees with the nearest substantive or nominative, and is understood to the rest; as,

Et ego et Cicero meus flagitabit, Cic. *Sociis et rege recepto, Virg.* *Et ego in culpa sum, et tu*, Both I am in the fault and you; or, *Et ego et tu es in culpa*, Both I and you are in the fault. *Nihil hic nisi carmina desunt*; or *nihil hic deest nisi carmina*. *Omnia, quibus turbare solita erat civitas, domi discordia, foris bellum exortum*; *Duo millia et quadringenti cæsi*, Liv. This construction

is most usual, when the different substantives resemble one another in the sense; as, *Mens, ratio, et consilium, in senibus est*, Understanding, reason, and prudence, is in old men. *Quibus, ipse meique ante Larem proprium vescor, for vescimur*, Horat.

OBS. 5. The plural is sometimes used after the preposition *cum* put for *et*; as,

Remo cum fratre Quirinus jura dabunt, Virg. The conjunction is frequently understood; as, *Dum ætas, metus, magister prohibebant*, Ter. *Frons, oculi, vultus sæpe mentiuntur*, Cic.

The different examples comprehended under this rule are commonly referred to the figure *Syllepsis*.

LX. The conjunctions *ut, quo, licet, ne, utinam*, and *dummodo*, are for the most part joined to the subjunctive mode; as,

Lego ut discam,
Utinam sapires,

I read that I may learn.
I wish you were wise.

OBS. 1. All interrogatives, when placed indefinitely, have after them the subjunctive mode.

Whether they be adjectives; as, *Quantus, qualis, quotus, quotuplex, uter*; Pronouns; as, *quis & cujus*; Adverbs, as, *Ubi, quo, unde quo, quorsum, quamdiu, quamdudum, quampridem, quoties, cur, quare, quamobrem, num, utrum, quomodo, qui, ut, quam, quantopere*; or conjunctions, as, *ne, an, anne, annon*: Thus, *Quis est? Who is it? Nescio quis sit*; I do not know who it is. *An venturus est? Nescio, dubito, an venturus sit*; *Viden ut alta stet nive candidum, Soracte?* Hor. But these words are sometimes joined with the indicative; as, *Scio quid ego*, Plaut. *Haud scio, au amat*, Ter. *Vide avaritia, quid facit*, Id. *Vides quam turpe est*, Cic.

¶ In like manner the relative *QUI* in a continued discourse; as, *Nihil est quod Deus efficere non possit. Quis est qui utilia fugiat?* Cic. Or when joined with *QUIPPE* or *UTPOTE*: *Neque Antonius procul aberat, utpote qui sequeretur*, &c. Sall. But these are sometimes, although more rarely, joined with the indicative. So *Est qui sunt qui, est quando v. ubi, &c.* are joined with the indicative or subjunctive.

NOTE. *Haud scio an recte dixerim*, is the same with *dico, affirmo*, Cic.

So in English, *if, though, unless, except, whatever, whether, or*; also, *so, before, ere, till, &c.* have after them the subjunctive mode; as, *If thou let this man go: If thou be the Son of God; Although my house be not so; Though he slay me; Though he fall, &c. Unless he wash his feet; I will not let thee go except thou bless me; Except it were given from above; Whether it were I or they; Whosoever he be; Whatever be our fate, &c.* So likewise *that*, expressing the motive or end; *lest* and *that* annexed to a command preceding; and *if* with *but* following it; as, *Let him that standeth take heed lest he fall; Beware that thou bring not my son thither; If he do but touch the hills, they shall smoke.*

The nominative case following the verb sometimes supplies the place of *if* or *though*; as, "Had he done this, he had escaped," i. e. if he had done this: "Charm he never so wisely,"

or rather, ever so wisely, i. e. *how wisely soever* ; for, *though* he charm, &c.

OBS. 2. When any thing doubtful or contingent is signified, conjunctions and indefinites are usually construed with the subjunctive ; but when a more absolute or determinate sense is expressed, with the indicative mode ; as, *If he is to do it, Although he was rich, &c.*

OBS. 3. ETSI, TAMETSI, and TAMENETSI, QUANQUAM, in the beginning of a sentence, have the indicative, but elsewhere they also take the subjunctive. ETIAMSI and QUAMVIS commonly have the subjunctive, and UT, although, always has it ; as, *Ut quæras non reperies*, Cic. QUONIAM, QUANDO, QUANDOQUIDEM, are usually construed with the indicative ; SI, SIN, NE, NISI, SIQUIDEM ; QUOD, and QUIA, sometimes with the indicative, and sometimes with the subjunctive. DUM, for, *dummōdo*, provided, has always the subjunctive ; as, *Oderint dum metuant*, Cic. And QUIPPE, for *nam*, always the indic. ; as, *Quippe velor fatis*.

OBS. 4. Some conjunctions have their correspondent conjunctions belonging to them ; so that, in the following members of the sentence, the latter answers to the former : thus, when *etsi*, *tametsi*, or *quamvis*, although, are used in the former member of a sentence, *tamen*, yet or nevertheless, generally answers to them in the latter. In like manner, *Tam—quam* ; *Adeo* or *ita*,—*ut* : in English, *As,—as* or *so* ; as, *Etsi sit liberalis, tamen non est profusus*, Although he be liberal, yet he is not profuse. So *prius* or *ante*,—*quam*. In some of these, however, we find the latter conjunction sometimes omitted, particularly in English.

OBS. 5. The conjunction *ut* is elegantly omitted after these verbs, *Volo, nolo, malo, rogo, precor, censeo, suadeo, licet, oportet, necesse est*, and the like ; and likewise after these imperatives, *Sine, fac, or facito* ; as, *Ducas volo hodie uxorem ; Nolo mentiare ; Fac cogites*, Ter. In like manner *ne* is commonly omitted after *cave* ; as, *Cave facias*, Cic. *Post* is also sometimes understood ; thus, *Die octavo, quam creatus erat*, Liv. 4. 47, scil. *post*. And so in English, *See you do it ; I beg you would come to me*, scil. *that*.

OBS. 6. *Ut* and *quod* are thus distinguished ; *ut* denotes the final cause, and is commonly used with regard to something future ; *quod* marks the efficient or impulsive cause, and is generally used concerning the event or thing done ; as, *Lego ut discam*, I read that I may learn ; *Gaudeo quod legi*, I am glad that or because I have read. *Ut* is likewise used after these intentive words, as they are called, *Adeo, ita, sic, tam, talis, tantus, tot, &c.*

OBS. 7. After the verbs *timeo, vereor*, and the like, *ut* is taken in a negative sense for *ne non*, and *ne* in an affirmative sense ; as,

Timeo ne faciat, I fear he will do it ; *Timeo ut faciat*, I fear he will not do it. *Id paves ne ducas in illam, tu autem ut ducas*, Ter. *Ut sis vitalis, metuo*, Hor. *Timeo ut frater vivat*, will not ;—*ne frater moriatur*, will. But in some few examples, they seem to have a contrary meaning.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF COMPARATIVES.

LXI. The comparative degree governs the ablative; as,

Dulcior melle, sweeter than honey. *Præstantior auro*, better than gold.

OBS. 1. The sign of the ablative in English is *than*. The positive with the adverb *magis*, likewise governs the ablative: as, *magis dilecta luce*, Virg.

The ablative is here governed by the preposition *præ* understood, which is sometimes expressed; as, *Fortior quæ cæteris*. We find the comparative also construed with other prepositions; as, *immanior ante omnes*, Virg.

OBS. 2. The comparative degree may likewise be construed with the conjunction *quam*, and then, instead of the ablative, the noun is to be put in whatever case the sense requires; as,

Dulcior quam mel, scil. est. *Amo te magis quam illum*, I love you more than him, that is, *quam amo illum*, than I love him. *Amo te magis quam ille*, I love you more than he, i. e. *quam ille amat*, than he loves. *Plus datur a me quam illo*, sc. ab.

OBS. 3. The conjunction *quam* is often elegantly suppressed after *amplius* and *plus*; as,

Vulnerantur amplius sexcenti, Cæs. scil. *quam*. *Plus quingentos colaphos infregit mihi*, he has laid on me more than five hundred blows, Ter. *Castra ab urbe haud plus quinque millia passuum locant*, sc. *quam*, Liv.

Quam is sometimes elegantly placed between two comparatives; as,

Triumphus clarior quam gravior, Liv. Or the prep. *pro* is added; as, *Prælium atrocius, quam pro numero pugnantium editur*, Liv.

The comparative is sometimes joined with these ablatives, *opinione*, *spe*, *æquo*, *justo*, *dicto*; as,

Credibili opinione major, Cic. *Credibili fortior*, Ovid, Fast. iii. 618. *Gravius æquo*, Sall. *Dicto citius*, Virg. *Majora credibili tulimus*, Liv. They are often understood; as, *Liberius vivebat*, sc. *justo*, too freely, Nepos.

Nihil is sometimes elegantly used for *nemo* or *nulli*; as,

Nihil vidi quidquam lætius, for *neminem*, Ter. *Crasso nihil perfectius*, Cic. *Asperius nihil est humili, cum surgit in altum*. So *quid nobis laboriosius*, for *quis*, &c. Cic. We say, *inferior patre nulla re*, or *quam pater*. The comparative is sometimes repeated or joined with an adverb; as, *Magis magisque, plus plusque, minus minusque, carior cariorque*; *Quotidie plus, indies magis, semper candidior candidiorque*, &c.

OBS. 4. In English, the relative *who* after *than* is always put in the accusative case; as, He is a man, *than whom* there is none better: but here if we substitute a pronoun in place of the relative, the pronoun must be put in the nominative; as, There is none better than *he*, not, than *him*. In like manner, it is improper to say, He is better than *me*, than *us*, than *her*, than *them*, &c. It should be, He is better than *I*, than *we*,

than *she*, than *they*, &c. the auxiliary verb being understood to each of them.

Obs. 5. The relation of equality or sameness is likewise expressed in English by conjunctions; as, *Est tam doctus quam ego*. He is as learned as I. *Animus erga te idem est ac fuit*. *Ac* and *atque* are sometimes, though more rarely, used after comparatives; as, *Nihil est magis verum atque hoc*, Ter.

Obs. 6. The excess or defect of measure is put in the ablative after comparatives; and the sign in English is *by*, expressed or understood; (*or more shortly*, the difference of measure is put in the ablative;) as,

Est decem digitis altior quam frater, He is ten inches taller than his brother, or by ten inches. *Altero tanto major est fratre*, i. e. *duplo major*, he is as big again as his brother, or twice as big. *Sesquiped minor*, a foot and a half less; *Altero tanto*, aut *sesquimajor*, as big again, or a half bigger, Cic. *Ter tanto peior est*; *Bis tanto amici sunt inter se, quam prius*, Plaut. *Quinques tanto amplius quam quantum licitum sic civitatibus imperavit*, five times more, Cic. To this may be added many other ablatives, which are joined with the comparative to increase its force; as, *Tanto, quanto, quo, eo, hoc, multo, paulo, nimio*, &c. thus, *Quo plus habent, eo plus cupiunt*, The more they have, the more they desire. *Quanto melior, tanto felicior*, The better, the happier. *Quoque minor spes est, hoc magis ille cupit*, Ovid, Fast. ii. 766. We frequently find *multo, tanto, quanto*, also joined with superlatives; *Multo pulcherrimam eam haberemus*, Sall. *Multoq; id maximum fuit*, Liv.

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

LXII. A substantive and a participle are put in the ablative, when their case depends on no other word; as,

Sole oriente, fugiunt tenebræ,

Opere peracto, ludemus,

{ The sun rising, or while the sun riseth
darkness flies away.

{ Our work being finished, or when our
work is finished, we will play.

So, *Dominante libidine, temperantiæ nullus est locus*; *Nihil amicitia præstabilis est, excepta virtute*; *Oppressa libertate patriæ, nihil est quod speremus, amplius*; *Nobilium vitâ victuque mutato, mores mutari civitatum puto*, Cic. *Parumper silentium et quies fuit, nec Etruscis, nisi cogerentur, pugnam inituris, et dictatore arcem Romanam respectante, ut ab auguribus, simul aves rite admissent, ex composito tolleretur signum*, Liv. *Bellice, depositis clypeo paulisper et hastâ, Mars, ades*, Ovid, Fast. iii. 1.

Obs. 1. This ablative is called *Absolute*, because it does not depend upon any other word in the sentence.

For if the substantive with which the participle is joined, be either the nominative to some following verb, or be governed by any word going before, then this rule does not take place; the ablative absolute is never used, unless when different persons or things are spoken of; as, *Milites, hostibus victis, redierunt*. The soldiers, having conquered the enemy, returned. *Hostibus victis*, may be rendered in English several different ways, according to the meaning of the sentence with which it is joined; thus, 1. *The enemy conquered, or being con-*

quered : 2. When or after the enemy is or was conquered : 3. By conquering the enemy : 4. Upon the defeat of the enemy, &c.

Obs. 2. The perfect participles of deponent verbs are not used in the ablative absolute ; as, *Cicero locutus hæc consedit*, never *his locutis*. The participles of common verbs may either agree in case with the substantive before them, like the participles of deponent verbs, or may be put in the ablative absolute, like the participles of passive verbs ; as, *Romani adepti libertatem floruerunt* ; or *Romani, libertate adepti, floruerunt*. But as the participles of common verbs are seldom taken in a passive sense, we therefore rarely find them used in the ablative absolute.

Obs. 3. The participle *existente* or *existentibus*, is frequently understood ; as, *Cæsare duce*, scil. *existente*. *His consulibus*, scil. *existentibus*. *Invitâ Minervâ*, sc. *existente*, against the grain ; *Crassa Minervâ*, without learning, Hor. *Magistrâ ac duce naturâ* ; *vivis fratribus* ; *te hortatore* ; *Cæsare impulsore*, &c. Sometimes the substantive must be supplied ; as, *Nondum comperto, quam regionem hostes petissent*, i. e. *cum nondum compertum esset*, Liv. *Tum demum palam facto*, sc. *negotio*, Id. *Excepto quod non simul esses, cætera lætus*, Hor. *Parto quod avebas*, Id. In such examples *negotio* must be understood, or the rest of the sentence considered as the substantive, which, perhaps, is more proper. Thus we find a verb supply the place of a substantive ; as, *Vale dicto*, having said farewell, Ovid.

Obs. 4. We sometimes find a substantive plural joined with a participle singular ; as, *Nobis presente*, Plaut. *Absente nobis*, Ter. We also find the ablative absolute, when it refers to the same person with the nominative to the verb ; as, *me duce ad hunc voti finem, me milite, veni*. Ovid, Amor. ii. 12. 12. *Lætos fecit se consule fastos*, Lucan, v. 384. *Populo spectante fieri credam, quicquid me conscio faciam*. Senec. de Vit. Beat. c. 20. But examples of this construction rarely occur.

Obs. 5. The ablative called *absolute* is governed by some preposition understood ; as, *a, ab, cum, sub, or in*. We find the preposition sometimes expressed ; as, *Cum diis jurantibus*, Liv. The nominative likewise seems sometimes to be used absolutely ; as, *Perniciosa libidine paulisper usus, infirmitas naturæ accusatur*, Sall. Jug. 1.

Obs. 6. The ablative absolute may be rendered several different ways ; thus, *Superbo regnante*, is the same with *cum, dum, or quando Superbus regnabat*. *Opere peracto*, is the

same with *Post opus peractum*, or *Cum opus est peractum*. The present participle, when used in the ablative absolute, commonly ends in *e*.

OBS. 7. When a substantive is joined with a participle in English independently of the rest of the sentence, it is expressed in the nominative; as, *Illo descendente*, He descending. But this manner of speech is seldom used except in poetry.

APPENDIX TO SYNTAX.

I. VARIOUS SIGNIFICATION AND CONSTRUCTION OF VERBS.

[The Verbs are here placed in the same order as in Etymology.]

FIRST CONJUGATION.

ASPIRARE ad gloriam & laudem, *to aim at*; in curiam, *to desire to be admitted*, Cic.; equis Achillis, *to wish for*; labori ejus, *to favor*; amorem dictis, *sc. ei, to infuse*, Virg.

DESPERARE sibi de se; salutem, salutem, *de salute, to despair of*.

LEGARE aliquem ad alium, *to send as an ambassador*; aliquem sibi, *to make his lieutenant*; pecuniam alicui, *i. e. testamento relinquere*. N. B. Publice legantur homines; qui inde legati dicuntur: privatim allegantur; unde allegati.

DELEGARE æs alienum fratri, *to leave him to pay*; laborem alteri, *to lay upon*; aliquid ad aliquem, *i. e. in eum transferre*, Cic.

LEVARE metum ejus & ei, eum metu, *to ease*.

MUTARE locum, solum, *to be banished*; aliquid aliqua re; bellum pro pace, *to exchange*; vestem, *i. e. sordidam togam induere*, Liv. vestem cum aliquo, Ter. fidem, *to break*.

OBNUNCIARE comitiis vel concilio, *i. e. comitia auspiciis impedire, to hinder, by telling bad omens, and repeating these words*, ALIO DIE; Consuli v. magistratui, *i. e. prohibere ne eum populo agat*, Cic.

PRONUNCIARE pecuniam pro reo, *to promise*; aliquid edicto, *to order*; sententias, *to sum up the opinions of the senators*, Cic.

RENUNCIARE aliquid, de re, alicui, ad aliquem, *to tell*; consulem, *to declare, to name*; vitæ amicitiam ei, *to give up*; muneri, hospitio, *to refuse*; repudium, *to divorce*.

OCCUPARE aliquem, *to seize*; se in aliquo negotio, *to be employed*; se ad negotium, Plaut. pecuniam alicui v. apud aliquem grandi scœnore, *to give at interest*, Cic. occupat facere bellum,

transire in agrum hostium, *begins first, anticipates*, Liv.

PRÆOCCUPARE saltum, portas Cici-liæ, *to seize beforehand*, Nep.

PRÆJUDICARE aliquem, *to condemn one from the precedent of a former sentence or trial*, Cic.

ROGARE aliquem id, & de ea re; id ab eo; salutem, & pro salute, Cic. legem, *to propose*; hence, UTI ROGAS dicere, *to pass it*; militem sacramento, *to administer the military oath*; Roget quis? *if any one should ask*. Comitia rogandis consulibus, *for electing*, Liv.

ABROGARE legem, *seldom legi, to disannul a law, to repeal, or to change in part*; multam, *to take off a fine*; imperium ei, *to take from*.

ARROGARE id sibi, *to claim*.

DEROGARE aliquid legi v. de lege, *to repeal or take away some clause of a law*; lex derogatur, Cic. fidem ei, v. de fide ejus, *to hurt one's credit*; ex æquitate; sibi, alicui, *to derogate or take from*.

EROGARE pecuniam in classem, in vestes, *to lay out money on*.

IRROGARE multam ei, *to impose*.

OBROGARE legi, *to enact a new law contrary to an old*.

PROROGARE imperium, provinciam alicui, *to prolong*; diem ei ad solvendum, *to put off*.

SUBROGARE aliquem in locum alterius, *to substitute*; legi, *to add a new clause, or to put one in place of another*.

SPECTARE orientem, ad orientem, *to look towards*; aliquem ex censu, annum alicujus ex suo, *to judge of*.

SUPERARE hostes, *to overcome*; montes, *to pass*; superat pars cepti, *sc. operis, remains*; Captæ superavimus urbi, *survived*, Virg.

TEMPERARE iras, ventos, *to moderate*; orbem, *to rule*; mihi sibi, *to re-*

strain, to forbear; alicui, *to spare*; cædibus, a lacrymis, *to abstain from*.

VACARE curâ, culpa, morbo, munere militiæ, &c. a labore, *to be free from*; animo, sc. in, *to be at ease*; philosophiæ, in v. ad rem, *to apply to*; vacat locus, *is empty*; si vacas, v. vacat tibi, *if you are at leisure*.

VINDICARE mortem ejus, *to revenge*; ab interitu, exercitum fame, *to free*; id sibi, & ad se, *to claim*; libertatem ejus, *to defend*; se in libertatem, *to set at liberty*.

DARE animam, *to die*; animos, *to encourage*; manus, *to yield*; manum ei, *to shake hands*, Plaut.; jura, *to prescribe laws*; literas alicui ad aliquem, *to give one a letter to carry to another*; terga, fugam, v. se in fugam, in pedes, *to fly*; hostes, in fugam, *to put to flight*; operam, *to endeavor*; operam philosophiæ, literis, palæstræ, *to apply to*; operam honoribus, *to seek*, Nep. veniam ei, *to grant his request*, Ter. gemitus, lacrymas, amplexus, cantus, ruinam, fidem, jusjurandum, &c. *to groan, weep, embrace, sing, fall, &c. cognitores honestos, to give good vouchers for one's character*, Cic. aliquid mutuum, v. utendum, *to lend*; pecuniam fœnori, & collocare, *to place at interest*; se alicui ad docendum, Cic. multum suo ingenio, *to think much of*; se ad aliquid, *to apply to*; se auctoritati senatûs, *to yield*; fabulam, scripta foras, *to publish*, Cic. effectum, *to perform*; senatum, *to give a hearing of the senate*; actionem, *to grant leave to prosecute*; præcipitem, *to tumble headlong*; aliquid paternum, *to act like one's father*; lectos faciendos, *to bespeak*, Ter. litem secundum aliquem, *to determine a lawsuit in favor of one*; aliquem exitio, morti, neci, letho, rarely lethum alicui, *to kill*; aliquid alicui dono, v. muneri, *to make a present*; crimini, vitio, laudi, *to accuse, blame, praise*; pœnas, *to suffer*; nomen militiæ, v. in militiam, *to list one's-self to be a soldier*; se alicui, *to be familiar with*, Ter. Da te mihi hodie, *be directed by me*, Id. aures, *to listen*; oblivioni, *to forget*; civitatem ei, *to make one free of the city*; dicta, *to speak*; verba alicui, *to impose on, to cheat*; se in viam, *to enter on a journey*; viam ei, *to give place*; jus gratiæ, *to sacrifice justice to interest*; se turpiter, *to make a shabby appearance*; fundum vel domum alicui, mancipio, *to convey the property of, to warrant the title to*; Vitæque mancipio nulli datur, omnibus usu, Lucr. servos in quæstionem, *to*

give up slaves to be tortured; primas, secundas, &c. (sc. partes) actioni, *to ascribe every thing to delivery*, Cic. Dat ei bibere, Ter. comas diffundere ventis, *to let them flow loose*, Virg. Da mihi v. nobis, *tell us*, Cic. Ut res dant se, *as matters go*; solertem dabo, *I'll warrant him expert*, Ter.

SATISDARE judicatum solvi, *to give security that what the judge has determined shall be paid*, Cic.

STARE contra aliquem; ab, cum, v. pro aliquo, *to side with, to be of the same party*; judicio ejus, *to follow*; in sententia; pacto, conditionibus, conventis, *to stand to, to make good an agreement*; re judicatâ, *to keep to what has been determined*; stare, v. constare animo, *to be in his senses*; Non stat par me quo minus pecunia solvatur, *It is not owing to me that, &c. multorum sanguine ea Tænis victoria stetit, cost*, Liv. Mihi stat alere morbum desinere, *I am resolved*, Nep.

ADSTARE mense, *to stand by*; ad mensam, in conspectu.

CONSTARE ex multis rebus, animo et corpore, *to consist of*; secum, *to be consistent with*, Cic. liber constitit v. stetit mihi duobus assibus, *cost me*; non constat ei color, *his color comes and goes*; auri ratio constat, *the sum is right*, Constat impers. *It is evident, certain, or agreed on*; mihi, inter omnes, de hac re.

EXTARE aquis, *to be above*, Ovid. ad memoriam posteritatis, *to remain*, Cic. sepulchra extant, Liv.

INSTARE victis, *to press on the vanquished*; rectam viam, *to be in the right way*; currum Marti, *to make speedily*, Virg. instat factum, *insists that it was done*, Ter.

OBSTARE ei, *to hinder*.

PRÆSTARE multa, *to perform*; alicui, v. aliquem virtute, *to excel*; silentium ei, *to give*; auxilium, *to grant*, Juv. impensas, *to defray*; iter tutem, *to procure*; se incolumem, *to preserve*; se virum, i. e. præbere, exhibere; amorem, v. benevolentiam alicui, *to show*; culpam, v. damnum, i. e. in se transferre, *to take on one's-self*; præstabo de me eum facturum, *I will be answerable*. In iis rebus repetendis, quæ mancipi sunt, is periculum judicii præstare debet, qui se nexu obligavit, *in recovering, or in an action to recover those things which are transferable, the seller ought to take upon himself the hazard of a trial*, Cic. N. B. Those things were called, Res mancipi, (contracted for

mancipii, i. e. quas emptor manu cape-
ret, *the property of which might be trans-
ferred from one Roman citizen to ano-
ther; as houses, lands, slaves, &c.*

Præstat impers. i. e. *it is better;*
Præsto esse alicui, adv. *to be present, to*

assist; Libri prostant venales, *the
books are exposed to sale.*

ACCUBARE alicui in convivio, *to
recline near;* apud aliquem. Incubare
ovis & ova, *to sit upon;* stratis & super
strata.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

HABERE spem, febrim, finem, bo-
num exitum, tempus, consuetudinem,
voluntatem nocendi, opus in manibus,
v. inter manus, *to have;* gratiam & gra-
tum, *to have a grateful sense of a favor;*
judicium, *to hold a trial;* honorem ei,
to honor; in oculis, *to be fond of,* Ter.
fidem alicui, *to trust or believe;* curam
de v. pro eo; rationem alicujus, *to
pay regard to, to allow one to stand can-
didate for an office;* rationem, v. rem
cum aliquo, *to have business with;* satis,
to be satisfied; orationem, concionem
ad populum, *to make a speech;* aliquem
odio, in odium, *to hate;* ludibrio, *to
mock;* religioni, *to have a scruple about
it:* So, habere aliquid quæstui, honori,
prædæ, voluptati, &c. sc. sibi; se bene
v. graviter, *to be well or ill;* se parce et
duriter, *to live,* Ter. aliquid compertum
cognitum, perspectum, exploratum,
certum v. procerto, *to know for certain;*
aliquem contemptui, despicatui, -um, v.
in despicatum, *to despise;* excusatum,
to excuse; susque deque, *to scorn, to
slight;* Ut res se habet, *stands, is;* re-
bus ita se habentibus, *in this state of
affairs;* Hæc habeo, v. habui dicere de,
&c. Non habeo necesse scribere, quid
sim facturus, Cic. Habe tibi tuas res,
a form of divorce.

ADHIBERE diligentiam, celeritatem,
vim, severitatem in aliquem, *to use;* in
convivium v. consilium, *to admit;* re-
medium vulneri, curationem morbo, *to
apply;* vinum ægrotis, *to give;* aures
versibus, *to hear with taste;* cultum &
preces diis, *to offer,* Cic. Exhibere mo-
lestiam alicui, *to cause trouble.*

JUBERE legem, *to vote for, to pass;*
regem, *to choose;* aliquem salvere, *to
wish one health;* esse bono animo, &c.
Uxorem suas res sibi habere jussit, *di-
vorced,* Cic.

DOCEO te hanc rem, & de hac re
Doctus, adj. utriusque linguæ; Latinis
& Græcis literis; Latinè; & Græcè; ad
militiam.

MISCERE aliquid alicui, cum ali-
quo, ad aliquid; vinum aqua, Plin.
cuncta sanguine, Tacit. sacra profanis,
Hor. humana divinis, Liv.

VIDERE rem v. de re; sibi, de ist-
hoc, *to take care of,* Ter. plus, *to be*

more wise, Cic. De hoc tu videris,
consider, be answerable for, Cic. Videor
videre, *methinks I see;* visus sum au-
dire, *methought I heard;* mihi visus est
dicere, *he seemed;* Quid tibi videtur?
What think you? Si tibi videtur, *if you
please;* videtur fecisse, *guilty, &c.*

INVIDERE honorem ei, v. honori ejus;
ei, vel eum, *to envy.*

PROVIDERE & prospicere id, *to fore-
see;* ei, *to provide for;* in posterum;
rei frumentariæ, rem v. de re.

SEDERE ad dextram ejus; in equo,
to ride; toga bene sedet, *fits;* Sedet
hoc animo, *is fixed,* Virg.

ASSIDERE ei: Adherbalem, *to sit by,*
Sall. Assidet insano, *is near or like to,*
Hor.

DISSIDERE, cum aliquo, *to disagree.*

INSIDERE equo, & in equo, *to sit
upon;* locum, Liv. in animo, memoriâ,
to be fixed.

PRÆSIDERE urbi, imperio, *to com-
mand,* Cic. exercitum, Italiam, Tacit.

SUPERSEDERE labore, litibus; pug-
næ, loqui, *to forbear, to give over.*

PENDERE promissis, ab v. ex ali-
quo, *to depend;* de, ex, ab & in arbore;
Opera pendent interrupta, Virg.

IMPENDERE malum nobis, nos, v. in
nos, *threatens.*

SPONDERE & despondere filiam
alicui, *to betroth.*

DESPONDERE domum alicujus sibi, *to
be sure of,* Cic. animo & -is, *to promise,
to hope;* animum & -os, *to despair,* Liv.

RESPONDERE ei, literis ejus, his, ad
hæc, ad nomen, *to answer;* votis ejus,
to satisfy his wishes; ad spem.

SUADERE ei pacem, v. de pace;
legem, *to speak in favor of.*

DOLERE causam ejus; de, ab, ex,
in, pro, re; dolet mihi cor, v. hoc dolet
cordi meo; caput dolet a sole.

VALERE gratiâ apud aliquem, *to be
in favor with one;* lex valet, *is in force;*
quid verbum valeat, non video, *signi-
fies; valet decem talenta, or oftener
talentis, is worth;* vale vel valeas,
farewell; ironically, away with you.

EMINERE aliqua re, vel in aliqua
re, inter omnes; super cætera, Liv. su-
per utrumque, Hor. *to be eminent, to
excel;* ex aqua, v. aquam, super undas,

to be above. Imminere alicui, to hang over, to threaten; in occasionem, exitio alicujus, to seek, to watch for.

TENERE promissum; se domi, opido, castris, sc. in, to keep; modum, ordinem, to observe; rem, dicta, lectionem, to understand, to remember; linguam, but not suam, silentium, se in silentio, to be silent; ora, to keep the countenance fixed; secundum locum, imperii, to hold, Nep. jura civium, to enjoy, Cic. causam, to gain; mare, to be in the open sea, to hold, to be master of; terram, portum, metam, montes, to reach; risum lacrymas, to restrain; se ab accusando, quin accuset, Cic. Ventus tenet, blows; teneri legibus, jurejurando, &c. to be bound by; leges tenent eum, bind; teneri in manifesto furto, to be seized; tenet fama, prevails.

ABSTINERE maledictis, v. a, to abstain; publico, to live retired, Tacit. animum a scelere, ægrum a cibo, to keep from; jus belli ab aliquo, not to treat rigorously, Liv. Id. ad me, ad religionem, &c. pertinet, concerns me; crimen ad te pertinet, Cic. But it is not proper to say, Liber ad me, ad fratrem pertinet, for mei fratris est, belongs to; venæ ad vel in omnes corporis partes pertinet, reach.

SUSTINERE personam judicis, nomen consulatûs, to bear the character; assensionem, v. se ab assensu, to withhold assent; rem in noctem, to defer.

MANERE apud aliquem; in castris; ad urbem; in urbe; proposito, sententiâ, in sententia, statu suo, &c. adventum hostium, to expect, Liv. promissis, to stand to, to keep, Virg. Omnes una manet nox, awaits, Horat. Manent

ingenia senibus, modo permaneat studium & industria, Cic. Munera vobis certa manent, Virg.

MERERE tandem; bene, male de aliquo; stipendia, equo, pedibus, to serve as a soldier; fustuarium, to be beaten to death.

HÆRERE lateri; tergis, v. in terga hostium, Liv. curru, Virg. alicui in visceribus, Cic. Hæret mihi aqua, I am in doubt; Vide, ne hæreas, lest you be at a loss, Cic. -

ADHÆRERE & adhærescere justitiæ; ad turrin; in me. Inhærere rei, & in re.

MOVERE castra, to decamp; bella, to raise; aliquem tribu, to remove a Roman citizen from a more honorable to a less honorable tribe; e senatu, to degrade a senator; risum vel jocum, alicui, to cause laughter; stomachum ei, to trouble, Cic.

FAVERE ore, vel linguis, sc. mihi, attend in silence, or abstain from words of a bad omen.

CAVERE aliquid, aliquem, vel ab aliquo, to guard against, to avoid; alicui, to provide for, to advise as a lawyer does his client; aliquid alicui, Cic. sibi ab aliquo vel per aliquem de re aliqua, to get security on; mihi prædibus & chirographo cautum est, I have got security by bail and bond; veteranis cautum esse volumus, Cic. Cave facias, sc. ne, see you don't do it; mihi cavendum, vel mea cautio est, I must take care.

CONNIVERE ad fulgura, Suet., to wink; in hominum sceleribus, to take no notice of, Cic.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Verbs in IO.

FACERE initium, finem, pausam, finem vitæ; pacem, amicitiam; testamentum, nomen, fossam; pontem in flumine, in Tiberim, to make; divortium cum uxore, Cic. bellum regi, Nep. se hilarem, to show, Ter. se divitem, miserum, pauperem, to pretend, Cic. æs alienum, v. contrahere, confare, to contract debt; animos, to encourage; damnum, detrimentum, jacturam, to lose; naufragium, to suffer; sumptum, to spend; gratum alicui, to oblige; gratiam delicti, to pardon a fault; gratiam legis, to dispense with; justa vel funus alicui, to perform one's funeral rites; rem, to make an estate; pecuniâ, divitias ex metallis; fœdus, v. in-

ire, icere, ferire, percutere, jungere, sancire, firmare, &c. to make a league; moram alicui, to delay; verba, to speak; audientiam sibi, Cic. negotium, et facessere, to trouble; aliquid missum, to pass over; aliquem missum, to dismiss or excuse; ad aliquid, rarely alicui, to be fit or useful; ratum, to ratify; planum, to explain; palam suis, to make known, Nep. stipendium pedibus, v. equo, & merere, to serve in the army; sacra, sacrificium, v. rem divinam, to sacrifice; reum, to impeach; fabulam, carmen, versus, &c. to write a play, &c. copiam consilii ei, to offer advice; copiam vel potestatem dicendi legatis, to grant leave; fidem, to procure or

give credit; periculum, to make trial; potestatem sui, to expose himself, Nep. aliquem loquentem, v. loqui, to suppose or represent, Cic. piraticam, sc. rem, to be a pirate; argentariam, medicinam, mercaturam, &c. to be a usurer, a physician, &c. versuram, to contract a new debt, to discharge an old one, to borrow money at great interest, Cic. cum v. ab aliquo, to side with, contra v. adversus, to oppose; nomen v. nomina, to borrow money; and also, to settle accounts, i. e. rationes acceptarum, sc. pecuniarum & expensarum inter se conferre; nomen in litura, to write it where something was before, Cic. pedem, v. pedes, to trim the sails, Virg. Fac ita esse, suppose it is so; obvius fieri, alicui, to meet; ne longum, v. longa faciam, ut breve faciam, not to be tedious; equus non facit, will not move, Cic. Fac velle, sc. me, suppose me to be willing, Virg. Æn. iv. 540.

AFFICERE aliquem laude, honore, præmio, & ignominia, penâ, morte, leto, &c. to praise, honor, &c. to disgrace, punish, &c. Affectus ætate, morbo, weakened.

CONFICERE bellum, to finish; orationes, to compose, Nep. cibum, to chew; argentum, to raise, to get; also to spend, Cic. cum aliquo de re, to conclude a bargain; exercitus hostium, to destroy; alterum Curiatium, to kill, Liv. Qui stipendiis confectis erant, i. e. emeriti, had served out their time, Cic.

DEFICERE animo, to faint; ab aliquo, to revolt; tempus deficit mihi vel me, fails; Defici viribus, ratione, &c. to be deprived of.

INFICERE se vitro, to stain; Infectus, part. stained; infectus, adj. not done. Inficior, -atus, -ari, to deny.

OFFICERE alicui, to hinder or hurt; Diogene apricanti, to stand betwixt him and the sun; auribus, visui, to stop or obstruct; Umbra terræ soli officiens noctem efficit, Cic.

PRÆFICERE aliquem exercitui, to set over. Proficere alicui, to profit, to do good; in philosophia, & progressus facere, to make progress.

REFICERE muros, templa, ædes, rates, res, to repair; animum, vires, saucios, se, jumenta, to refresh, to recover.

SUFFICERE laboribus, ictibus, to be able to bear; arma v. vires alicui, to afford; Valerius in locum Collatini suffectus est, was substituted, Liv. Filius patri suffectus, Tacit. Oculos suffecti sanguine & igne, sc. secundum, having their eyes red and inflamed, Virg.

SATISFACERE alicui, in v. de aliqua

re, to satisfy; fidei, promisso, to perform.

JACERE aliquem in præceps; contumelias in eum, to throw; fundamenta, & ponere, to lay; talos, to play at dice; anchoram, to cast.

ADJICERE, to add: oculos alicui rei, to covet; animum studiis, to apply; sacerdotibus creandis, Liv.

CONJICERE se in pedes, v. fugam, to fly; cætera, to conjecture.

INJICERE manus ei, to lay on; spem, ardorem, suspicionem, pavorem, alicui, to inspire; admirationem sui cuivis ipso aspectu, Nep.

OBJICERE se hostibus, in v. ad omnes casus, to oppose or expose; crimen ei, to lay to one's charge.

REJICERE tela in hostes, to throw back; iudices, mala, to reject; rem ad senatum, Romam, to refer; rem ad Idus Febr. to delay, Cic.

SUBJICERE, ova gallinæ, to set a hen; se imperio alicujus, to submit; testamenta, to forge; testes, to suborn; partes v. species generibus, ex quibus emanant, to put or class under; aliquid ei, to suggest; libellum ei, i. e. in manus dare; odio civium, to expose; bona Pompeii v. fortunas hastæ vel voci & sub voce præconis, to expose to public sale, Cic. sub hasta venire, to be sold, Liv.

TRAJICERE, copias, v. exercitum, fluvium, Hellespontum, vel trans fluvium, to transport; Marius cum parva navicula in Africam trajectus est, passed or sailed over. Trajectus ferro, pierced.

CAPERE conjecturam, consilium, dolorem, fugam, specimen, spem, sedem, &c. to guess, consult, grieve, fly, essay, hope, sit, &c. augurium, v. auspiciu, & agere, to take an omen; exemplum de aliquo; locum castris; terram, to alight; insulam, summa, sc. loca, to reach; spolia ex nobilitate, to gain, Sall. de republica nihil præter gloriam, Nep. magistratum, to receive or enjoy; virginem Vestalem, to choose; amentiam, spiritus, superbiam alicujus, to bear, to contain; aliquem, consilio, perfidia, to catch; nec te Troja capit, Virg. Ædes vix nos capiunt, the house hardly contains us. Altero oculo capitur, blind of one eye; capitur locis, he is delighted with, Virg.

ACCIPERE pecuniam, vulnus, cladem, injuriam ab aliquo, to receive; Orbis terrarum divitias accipere nolo pro patriæ caritate, Nep. binas literas eodem exemplo, two copies of the same letter, Cic. clamorem de Socrato, to hear; id in bonam partem, to take in

good part, to understand in a good sense; omnia ad contumeliam, aliter, aliorum, ac, atque, Ter. rudem v. rude donari, to be discharged as a gladiator; aliquem bene, v. male, to treat: eum male acceptum in Midiam hiematum coegit redire, roughly handled, Nep. rogationem, to approve the bill; nomen, i. e. ad pretendum admittere, to allow to stand candidate; omen, to esteem good; satisfactionem, v. excusationem, Cæs. Acceptus plebi, apud plebem, popular.

CONCIPIERE verba juramenti, to prescribe the form of an oath; conceptis verbis jurare, inimicitias cum aliquo, to bear enmity to one; aquam, to gather, to form the head of an aqueduct, Frontinus.

EXCIPERE eum hospitio, to entertain; fugientes, to catch; extremum spiritum cognatorum; sanguinem paterâ, to keep or gather; notis, & scribere, to write in short-hand; motus futuros, to perceive; Hos homines excipio, I except; virtutem excipit immortalitas; turbulentior annus excepit, succeeded; sic excepit regia Juno, replied, Virg.

INCIPIERE, occipere, to begin. Percipere fructus, to reap.

PRÆCIPERE futura, to foresee; gaudia, spem victoriæ, to anticipate; pecuniam mutuam, to take before the time, Cæs. lac, to dry up, Virg. alicui id, v. de ea re, to order; artem ei, to teach.

RECIPERE aliquid, to receive; urbem, to recover; eum fectis, to entertain; se v. pedem, to retreat; se domum, to return; se, mentem, animum, to come to one's-self again, to recover spirits; in se, to take charge; alicui, to promise; se ad fugem, to amend; senem sessum, to give a seat to, Cic.

RAPERERE vel trahere in pejorem partem, to take a thing in the worst sense; in jus, to bring before a judge; partes inter se, to share, Liv. Sub divum, to reveal, Horat.

UO.

EXUERE vestes sibi, se vestibus; jugum sibi, se jugo, to cast off; fidem, sacramentum, to break; mentem, to change, Virg. hostem castris, to beat from.

RUERE ad interitum, in ferrum; cæteros, Ter. spumas, to drive or toss, Virg.

LUERE pœnas capitis, to suffer; æs alienum, to pay, Curt. culpam suam vel alterius, morte, sanguine, to expiate, to atone, or suffer for.

FLUERE amicitias remissione usûs, to drop gradually, Cic.

STATUERE stipendium iis de publico, to appoint; exemplum in hominem, vel -ne, to make one a public example; aliquem capite in terram, to set or place, Ter.

CONSTITUERE coloniam, to settle; agmen paulisper, to make, to stop or halt, Sall. in digitis, to count on one's fingers, Cic. urbem, to build, Ovid. Is hodie venturum ad me constituit domum, appointed, resolved, Ter. Si utilitas amicitiam constituit, tollet eadem, makes, constitutes, Cic. Corpus bene constitutum, a good constitution, Id.

DESTITUERE aliquem, to forsake; spem, to deceive; propositum, to give over, Ovid. deos pactâ mercede, to defraud, Hor.

INSTITUERE aliquem secundum hæredem filio, to appoint, Cic. collegium fabrorum, sacra, to institute, to found, Plin. aliquem doctrinâ Græcis literis, to instruct; naves, to build, Cæs. sermonem, to enter upon, Id. animum æ cogitandum, to settle; antequam pro Murcena dicere instituo, I begin, Cic.

PRÆSTITUERE petitori, qua actione illum uti oporteat, to prescribe to the prosecutor, what form of process he should use, Cic. tempus ei, to determine.

RESTITUERE exules; virginem suis, to restore; oppida vicosque, to repair; aciem inclinatum, to rally; prælium, to renew, Liv.

SUBSTITUERE aliquem in locum ejus, pro altero, to substitute or put in the place of, Cic.

STRUERE epulas, to prepare; insidias, mendacium, to contrive; odium, crimen alicui, vel in aliquem, to raise against.

BO.

SCRIBERE sua manu, bene, velociter, epistolam alicui, v. ad aliquem; bellum, v. de bello; milites, to enlist; supplementum militibus, to recruit them; hæredem, to make one his heir; dicam ei, to raise an action against one; nummos, to give a bill of exchange; de rebus suis scribi cupivit, Cic. Decemvir legibus scribendis, Liv.

ASCRIBERE aliquem civitati, in civitatem, v. -e, to make free.

DESCRIBERE aliquem, to describe and not to name; partes Italiæ, pecuniam, populum ordinibus, to distribute, to divide; vectigal civitatibus, i. e. impere; jura, i. e. dare v. constituere; censores binos in singulas civitates, i. e. facere, Cic.

INSCRIBERE literas alicui, to correct a

letter ; *librum*, to *entitle or name* ; *ædes mercede*, to *put a ticket on one's house to let*, Ter.

PROSCRIBERE bona alicujus, *ædes suas, auctionem*, to *publish to be sold*, to *set to sale* ; *aliquem*, to *banish*, to *outlaw*.

RESCRIBERE alicujus literis v. ad literas, alicui ad aliquid, to *write an answer* ; *pecuniam*, to *pay money by bill* ; *legionem ad equum*, to *set foot-soldiers on horseback*, Cæs.

SUBSCRIBERE exemplum literarum, to *write below* ; *causæ*, to *join or take part in an accusation* ; *Cæsaris iræ*, to *favor*, Ovid.

CO.

DICERE aliquid, v. de aliqua re, ex aliquo loco, alicui, ad v. apud aliquem ; in aliquem, *against* ; ad aliquid, in answer to ; *sententiam*, to *give an opinion* ; *jus*, to *administer justice*, to *pronounce sentence* ; *multam ei*, to *amerce or fine* ; *diem ei*, to *appoint a day for his trial before the people* ; *prodicere*, to *put it off* ; *causam*, to *plead* ; *testimonium*, to *give evidence* ; *non idem loqui est ac dicere*, to *harangue*, Cic. *sacramento*, *seldom sacramentum*, to *take the military oath*.

ADDICERE aliquid ei, to *call out at an auction*, to *sell* ; *servituti*, v. in *servitutum*, to *sentence or adjudge to bondage* ; *bona*, to *give up the goods of the debtor to the creditor* ; *se alicui*, to *devote himself to one's service* ; *aves non addixerunt*, v. *abdixerunt*, the *birds did not give a favorable omen* ; *pretio abdicatam habere fidem*, to *be corrupt*, Cic.

CONDICERE operam alicui, to *promise assistance* ; *cœnam alicui*, v. ad *cœnam*, to *purpose supping with one without invitation*.

EDICERE alicui, to *order* ; *delectum*, to *appoint a levy* ; *prædam militibus*, to *promise by an edict* ; *justitium*, *diem comitiis*, *vel comitia consulibus creandis*, to *appoint*.

INDICERE bellum, *justitium*, to *proclaim war* ; *legem sibi*, to *appoint*, Cic. *cœtus in domos tribunorum*, to *summon*, Liv. *indicare*, to *show* ; *Indictus*, an adj. *not said* ; *causâ indictâ*, v. *non cognitâ condemnari*, to *be condemned without being heard* ; *me indicente*, *hæc non fiunt*, *not telling*, Ter.

INTERDICERE alicui, aliquid v. aliqua re ; *scæminis usum purpuræ*, to *forbid*, or *debar from* ; *ei aquâ & igne*, v. *aquam et ignem*, to *banish* ; *male rem gerentibus bonis paternis interdicti solet*, Cic. *interdicti non poterat socero gener*, *discharged the company of*, Nep.

PRÆDICERE alicui aliquid, de aliqua re, id in hac re, to *foretell*, to *forewarn*.

DUCERE in carcerem v. vincula, to *lead* ; *exercitum*, to *command* ; *spiritum*, *animam*, *vitam*, to *breathe*, to *live* ; *soffam*, *murum*, *suleum*, to *make or draw* ; *bellum*, to *prolong* ; also to *carry on*, Virg. *ætatem*, *diem*, to *spend* ; *uxorem*, to *take a wife* ; in *jus*, to *summon before a judge* ; *aliquem*, & *vultum alicujus*, *ære*, *ex ære*, *de auro*, *marmore*, &c. to *make a statue* ; *genus*, *nomen ab v. ex aliquo*, to *derive* ; *omnia pro nihilo*, *infra se* : id *laudi*, *laudem*, v. in *laudem*, *oftener the first*, to *reckon it a praise to him* ; in *conscientiam*, to *impute to a consciousness of guilt* ; in *gloria*, Plin. in *crimen*, Tacit. *centesimas*, sc. *usuras*, *vel fœnus centesimis*, to *compute interest at one for the hundred a month* ; or *at 12 per cent. per annum* ; *binis centesimis fœnerari*, to *take 24 per cent. per annum*, Cic. *ducere longas voces in fletum*, to *draw out*, Virg. *ordines*, to *be a centurion*, Liv. *ilia*, to *pant like a broken-winded horse*, Hor.

ADDUCERE aliquem in *judicium*, *arbitrium meum*, to *bring to a trial* ; in *suspicionem regi*, Nep. *arcum*, to *draw in* ; *habenas*, to *straiten the reins*.

CONDOCERE aliquem ex loco, to *convey* ; *navem*, *domum*, *coquos*, to *hire* ; *columnam faciendam*, to *engage to make at a certain price* ; *Conducit hoc tuæ laudi*, in v. ad *rem*, is of *advantage*.

DEDUCERE naves, to *launch* ; *classem in prælium*, to *bring*, Nep. *equites*, to *make to alight*, Liv. *eum domum*, to *accompany*, to *carry home* ; *de sententia*, Cic. *coloniam*, to *transplant* ; *lacum*, to *drain*.

EDUCERE gladium e vagina, to *draw* ; *florem Italiæ*, to *lead out* ; *copius in aciem*, Cic. *filium*, to *educate*, *oftener educare* ; in *astra*, to *extol*, Hor. *cælo*, Virg.

INDUCERE tenebras clarissimis rebus, to *bring on*, Cic. *animum*, v. in *animum*, to *persuade himself* ; *senta pelli-bus*, to *cover*, Cæs. *soleas pedibus* v. in *pedes*, to *put on* ; *colorem picturæ*, to *varnish*, Plin. *nomina*, to *cancel or rase*, to *rub out*.

OBDOCERE exercitum, to *lead against* ; *callum dolori*, to *blunt it* ; *sepulchrum sentibus*, to *cover*.

REDUCERE aliquem in *memoriam* alicujus, *vel alicui aliquid in memoriam*, to *bring back to one's remembrance* ; in *gratiam cum aliquo*, to *reconcile* ; *Vallis reducta*, *retired or low*.

PRODUCERE testes, *to bring out*; funus, *to attend*; sermonem in noctem, *to prolong, to continue*; rem in hiemem, *to defer*; servos vendendos, *to bring to market*.

SUBDUCERE se a custodibus, *to steal away*; naves, *to draw up on shore*; cibum ei & deducere, *to take from*; summam, rationes, *to reckon, to cast up accounts*.

PARCERE sibi, labore, *to spare, &c.* a cædibus, *to forbear*; aurum natis, Virg.

ASSUESCERE rei alicui, v. re aliqua, in v. ad hoc, *to be accustomed*; mentem pluribus & assuefacere, Hor. Animis bella, Virg. *to accustom*. So, insuesco rei v. re; insuevit hoc me pater, Hor.

SCISCERE legem, *to vote, to decree*; hence plebiscitum.

ASCISCERE regium nomen, *to assume*; socios sibi, ad societatem sceleris, *to associate*; ritus peregrinos, *to adopt*.

CONSCISCERE mortem v. necem sibi, *to kill one's-self*; fugam sibi, *to flee*, Liv.

DISCERE aliquid ab aliquo, v. apud aliquem, ex aliqua re, *or without ex*; Dediscere, *to forget what he hath learned*; Ediscere, *to get by heart*.

DESCENDERE de palatio, præsidio, ædibus; in forum, curiam, campum; ad accusandum, ad omnia, ad extrema, *to have recourse to*, Cic.

DO.

LUDERE aleâ v. -am, *to play at dice*; par impar, *at even and odd*; operam, *to lose one's labor*.

ALLUDERE alicui, ad aliquem; Coludere ei, cum eo; illudere ei, eum, in eum, in eo; id, *to mock*.

EVADERE insidias, -iis, vel ex, *to escape*; in muro, *to mount*; Hæc quorum evadant, nescio, *to what they will turn out*; Clarus evasit, *became*.

CEDERE multa multis de suo jure, Cic. Bona creditoribus, *to yield, whence cessio bonorum*; alicui loco, de, a, ex loco, v. locum, *to give place*; vitâ, e vita decedere, *to die*; foro, *to turn bankrupt*; Hæreditas cedit mihi, *falls to*; Cedit in proverbium, *becomes*.

ACCEDERE oppidum, -do, ad v. in oppidum, *to approach*; ad conditiones, *to agree to*; Ciceroni, sententiâ, v. ad sententiam ejus, *to agree with*; ad Cicero-nem, *to go to*; ad rempublicam, *to bear the questorship, or the first public office*; ad amicitiam Philippi, *to gain the friendship of*, Nep. Ad hæc mala hoc mihi accedit etiam, *added*, Ter. Robur accessit ætati, Cic. Animi necessere

hosti, Liv. Ad corporis firmitatem plura animi bona accesserant, Nep. Accedit plurimum pretio, huc, eò, accedit quod, *is added*.

ANTECEDERE alicui rei; aliquem, rarely alicui, *to excel*.

CONCEDERE ei aliquid & de aliquo; paullum de suo jure; tempus ad rem, *to grant*; ab oculis, ad dextram, in exilium, in hiberna, *to retire, to go*; fato, naturæ, vitâ, *to die*; in sententiam ejus, *to come into one's measures*; in conditiones, *to agree to*, Liv.

DISCEDERE transversum, & latum unguem, v. digitum a re, *to depart in the least*.

INTERCEDERE legi, *to give a negative against, to oppose a law*; pecuniam pro aliquo, *to become surety*; Intercedit mihi tecum amicitia vel inter nos, *there is, &c.*

SUCCEEDERE ei, in locum ejus, *to succeed*; muro, v. murum; ad urbem; sub primam aciem; in pugnam, *to come to*.

CADERE altè, ab alto, in terram, *to fall*; causâ formulâ, in judicio, & litem perdere, *to lose one's cause, to be cast*; in v. sub sensum, oculos, potestatem, &c. in morbum, & incidere, Cic. Non cadit in virum bonum mentiri, *is incapable of*, Cic. Homini lachrymæ cadunt, quasi puero, gaudio, Ter.

ACCIDERE genibus, v. ad genua, *to fall at*; auribus v. ad aures, *to come to*; alicui, casu, præter opinionem, *to happen*; accidit in te istud verbum, *applies*, Ter.

TENDERE vela, *to stretch*; insidias, retia, plagas, &c. *to lay snares*; arcum, *to bend*; iter, cursum, *to direct*; ad altiora, in cælum, *to aim at*; extra vallum, sc. tabernaculum, *to pitch a tent*; Manibus tendit divellere nodos, *tries*, Virg.

ATTENDO te, Cic. tibi, Plin. de hac re, ad hanc rem; *to take heed*; animum ad rem; res hostium, Sall.

CONTENDERE nervos, omnibus nervis, *to exert one's-self*; aliquid ab aliquo, *to ask earnestly*; inter se; amori, poet. for cum amore, *to strive*; causas, sc. inter se, *to compare*, Cic. Aliquid ad aliquid, cum aliquo, & alicui.

COMPREHENDERE naturam rerum, *to understand*; rem pluribus & luculentioribus verbis, *to express*; aliquem humanitate, amicitia, *to gain*; rem fictam, *to discover*.

INTENDERE animum rei, ad v. in rem, *to apply*; Intendi animo in rem, Liv. Vocem, nervos, *to exert*; arcum, *to bend*; actionem, v. litem alicui, v. in

aliquem, *also impingere, to raise a lawsuit against one*; telum ei, v. in eum, *to shoot at*; manum, v. digitum in aliquid, *to point at*; aliquo sc. ire, *to go to*; officia, *to overdo, to do more than is required*, Sall.

OBTENDERE velum rei, v. rem velo, *to cover, to veil*.

PENDERE pecuniam, *to pay*; pœnas, *to suffer*; id parvi, *to value it little*.

SUSPENDERE aliquem arbori, de, in, v. ex arbore, *to hang*; expectatione, vel suspensum detinere, *to keep in suspense*; ædificium, *to arch a house*; naso adunco, *to sneer at*, Horat.

ABDERE se literis, in literas, *to hide, or shut up one's-self among books*; se domum, rus, &c. domo, Virg. in silvas, tenebras, &c.

CONDERE urbem, *to build*; fructus, *to lay up*; in carcerem, *to imprison*; carmen, *to compose*; lumina, *to close*, Ov. Jura, *to establish*; terrâ, sepulchro, in sepulchro, *to bury*.

DEDERE se alicui, in ditionem alicujus, *ad aliquem, to surrender*; Deditus præceptor, & studiis, *fond of*; vino epulisque, *engaged in*, Nep. deditâ operâ, *on purpose*.

EDERE, librum, & in lucem, *to publish*; ovum, *to lay*; sonos, cantus, risus, gemitus, questus, hinnitum, pugnam, stragem, *to sound, sing, &c.* munus gladiatorium, *to exhibit a show of gladiators*; nomen, *to mention*; fœtus, *to bring forth*; extremum spiritum, *to die*; exempla cruciatûs in aliquem, *to inflict exemplary torture*.

ORDERE pessulum foribus, *to bolt the door*.

PRODERE arcem hostibus, *to betray*; aliquid posteris, v. memoriæ, *to hand down*; genus ab aliquo, *to derive*; flaminem, interregem, *to appoint*; aliquot dies nuptiis, *to put off*, Ter. exemplum, *to give to posterity*, Liv.

REDDERE animum, se sibi, *to revive*; animam v. vitam, *to die*; Latinè, verbum verbo, *to translate*; matrem, i. e. referre, *to resemble*; epistolam alicui, *to deliver*.

SUBDERE calcar equo, *to spur*; spiritus alicui, *to encourage*.

CREDERE rem; homini, *to believe*; aliquid alicui, *to trust*; pecuniam ei per syngrapham, *to lend on bond or bill*; rumoribus credi non oportet; Itaque credo, si, &c. *I suppose*, Cic.

FUNDERE aquam, *to pour out*; hostes, *to rout*.

EFFUNDERE fruges, copiam oratorum, *to produce*; ærarium, *to spend*;

odium, i. e. dimittere, *to drop*; gratiam collectam, i. e. perdere; omnia, quæ tacuerat, *to tell*.

GO.

JUNGERE se cum aliquo, alicui, & ad aliquem, dextram dextræ; equos curru; annem ponte, *to make a bridge*.

ADJUNGERE accessionem ædibus, *to build an addition to one's house*; animum ad studia, *to apply*.

STRINGERE cultrum, gladium, enses, *to draw*; frondes, *to lop off*; glandes, baccas, *to beat down*; rem, *to waste one's fortune*, Hor. litus, *to touch, to brush or graze upon*, Virg.

TANGERE rem acu, *to hit the nail on the head*.

ATINGERE Britanniam navibus, *to reach*; reges, res summas, *to mention*, Nep. Aliquem cognatione, affinitate, *to be related to*; forum, *to reach manhood*, Cic. Res non te attingit, *concerns*.

FINGERE orationem, *to polish*; oratorem, *to form*; se ad arbitrium alterius, *to adapt*; Vultus a mente fingitur, lingua fingit vocem, Cic. Sic cuique mores fingunt fortunam, Nep.

FRANGERE nucem, *to break*; navem, *to suffer shipwreck*; fœdus fidem, *to violate*; sententiam ejus, *to refute*, Cic. hostem, *to subdue*.

AGERE, gratias, *to give thanks*; vitam, *to live*; prædas, *to plunder*; fabulam, *to act a play*; triumphum de aliquo, ex aliqua re, *to triumph*; nugas, *to trifle*; ambages, *to beat about the bush*; stationem, custodiam urbis, *to be on guard*; rimas, *to chink, to leak, to be rent*; causam, *to plead*; de re, *to speak*; radices, *to take root*; cuniculos, *to undermine*; undam, *to raise a steam*; animam, *to be at the last gasp*; altas res, *to be inattentive*; festum diem, natalem, ferias, &c. *to keep, to observe*; actum, v. rem actam, *to labor in vain*; censum, & habere, *to make a review of the people, their estates, &c.* forum, *to hold a court to try causes*; lege in aliquem, & cum aliquo, *to go to law with one*; hence actor, a plaintiff; in hereditatem, *to claim*; cum populo, *to treat with, to lay before*; decimum agit annum, *he is ten years old*; id agitur, *that is the question*; libertas agitur, v. de libertate, *is at stake*; actum est de libertate, *is lost*; actum est, ilicet, *all is over*; actum est de pace, *was treated about*; cum illo bene actum est, *he has been lucky, or well used*; hoc age, *mind what you are about*; Civitas læta agere, *for erat*, Sall.

ADIGERE milites sacramento ad v. in

jusjurandum, in sua verba, per *jusjurandum*, to force to enlist; *arbitrum*, i. e. agere v. cogere aliquem ad *arbitrum*, to force to submit to an arbitration, Cic.

COGERE copias, to bring together; ad *militiam*, to force to enlist; *senatum*, to assemble; in *senatum*, sc. *minis pignoribus captis*, &c. to force to attend; *agmen*, to rally, to bring up; *lac*, to curdle; *jus civile diffusum* & *dissipatum*, in certa genera *cogere*, to digest, to arrange.

EXIGERE foras, to drive out, to divorce; aliquid ab aliquo, to require; *sarta tecta* sc. et, i. e. *sarta et tecta*, ut sint bene reparata, to require that the public works be kept in good reparation, Cic. *supplicium de aliquo*, to inflict; *sua nomina*, to demand, or call in one's debt; *ævum*, *vitam*, *annos*, to spend; aliquid ad normam, to try or examine; *columnam ad perpendicularum*, to apply the plummet, to see if it be straight; *monumentum*, to finish, Hor. *tempus & modum*, to settle, Virg. *comœdiam*, to disapprove, to hiss off, Ter.

REDIGERE aliquid in *memoriam* aliqujus, to bring back; *pecuniam ex bonis venditis*, to raise money; *hostes sub imperium*, to reduce.

LEGERE oram, *littus*, to coast along; *vela*, to furl the sails; *halitum*, to catch one's breath; *militēs*, to enlist; aliquem in *senatum*, in *Patres*, to choose; *sacra*, to steal, to commit sacrilege, Hor.

HO.

TRAHERE *obsidionem*, *bellum*, to prolong; *purpurās*, to spin; aliquid in *religionem*, to scruple; *navem remulco*, to tow.

DETRAHERE aliquem, to draw down; alicui vel de aliquo, de *fama*, to detract from, to lessen one's fame; aliquid alicui, to take by force; *laudem* v. de *laudibus*: *novem partes mulctæ*, to take from the fine, Nep.

EXTRAHERE diem, to spin out, to spend; *certamen*, *bellum*, *judicium*, to prolong.

VEHERE, *vehens*, in *vehens*, *invecus curru*, *quadrigis*, &c. riding in a chariot; *invehi in portum ex alto*, to enter; in aliquem, to inveigh against; *provehi longius*, to proceed too far.

LO.

CONSULERE rem, v. de re, to consult about; eum, to ask his advice; ei, to consult for his good; de *salute sua*; *gravius in aliquem*, to pass a severe sentence against; in *commune*, *publicum*, *medium*, to provide for the common good; *verba boni*, to take in good part; *ego consulor*, my advice is asked; *mihi*

consultitur, my good is consulted; *mihi consultum ac provisum est*, for a me, I have taken care, Cic.

APPELLERE classe in *Italiam*, vel *classem*, to land on; se aliquò, Ter. ad *villam nostram navis appelletur*, Cic. *animum ad philosophiam*, to apply.

ANTECELLERE ei, rarely eum; excellere aliis, super, inter, præter alios aliqua re, v. in re, to excel.

TOLLERE animos suos, to take courage; animos alicui, to encourage; aliquem *laudibus*, & *laudes ejus in astra*, to extol; *inducias*, to break a truce; *clamos*, to cry; *filium*, to educate; de vel e medio, to kill.

MO.

ADIMERE *claves uxori*, to divorce; *annulum* v. *equum equiti*, to take away from a knight the ring or horse given him by the public, to degrade.

DIRIMERE *litem*, *controversiam*, to determine.

EXIMERE aliquem *servitio*, *noxæ e vinculis*, a culpa, de numero *proscriptorum*, *obsidione*, to free; de *dolia*, to draw out; *diem dicendo*, to waste in speaking.

INTERIMERE se, to kill.

REDIMERE captivos, to ransom; *pecuaria de censoribus*, to take or farm the public pastures.

SUMERE in manus; *diem tempus ad deliberandum*; *exemplum* ex, v. de eo, to take; *pœnas supplicium de aliquo*, to punish; *pecunias mutuas*, to borrow; *togam virilem*, to put on the dress of a man; *sibi inimicitias*, to get ill-will; *operam in re*, vel in rem *insumere*, to bestow pains; *sumo tantum*, vel hoc mihi, I take this upon me.

PREMERE caseum, to make cheese; *vocem*, to be silent; *dolorem corde*, to conceal; *vestigia ejus*, to follow; *littus*, to come near; *pollicem*, to save a gladiator; *librum in nonum annum*, to delay publishing, Hor.

EXPRIMERE succum, to press out; *risum alicui*; *pecuniam ab aliquo*, to force from; *effigiem*, to draw to the life; *verbum verbo*, de verbo e verbo, ad verbum, de *Græcis*, &c. to translate word for word.

IMPRIMERE aliquid animo, in animo, v. in animum, to imprint.

REPRIMERE se, & *reprehendere* v. *retinere*, to check.

NO.

PONERE spem in homine v. re, & habere; *castra*, to pitch; *vitem*, to plant; *vitam*, to die; *ova*, to lay; *insidias alicui*; *panem convivis*, not ante; *personam amici*, to lay aside the

character of a friend; *præmia, to propose*; *pocula, to stake or lay*; *studium, tempus, multum operæ in aliqua re, to employ, to bestow*; *aliquid in laude, in vitiis, in loco beneficii, to reckon*; *ferocia corda, to lay aside*; *aliquem in gratiam v. gratia, i. e. efficere gratiosum apud alterum, Cic. ventos, to calm*; *hominem coloribus saxo, to paint, engrave, Hor. pecuniam in fenore, to lay out at interest*; *tempis, to build, Virg. Venti posuere, are hushed, Virg. Pone esse victum eum, Ter. Positum sit, suppose, grant, Cic.*

COMPONERE carmen, literas, &c. to compose; *lites, to settle*; *bellum, to finish by treaty*; *parva magnis, dicta cum factis, to compare*; *manus manibus, to join, Virg.*

DEPONERE v. ponere togam prætextam, to lay aside the dress of a boy; *imperium & demittere, to lay down a command.*

EXPONERE rem, to set forth or explain; *frumentum, to expose to sale, Cic. pueros, foetus, to leave to perish, Liv. exercitum, sc. in terram, to land.*

IMPONERE onus alicui v. in aliquem; aliquem in equum, to set upon; *personam v. partes duriores ei, to lay a task or duty on one*; *alicui, to impose on, to deceive, Nep. honorem ei, to confer*; *vadimonium ei, to force to give bail, Nep. manum summam v. extremam rei alicui, in aliqua re, to finish*; *pontem flumini, to make a bridge, Curt. Hoc loco libet interponere, to insert, Nep.*

OPPONERE se periculis & ad pericula, to expose; *pignori, to pledge*; *manu fronti, ante oculos, to put, Ovid.*

PROPONERE aliquid sibi facere, exempla ei ad imitandum, to propose, to set before; *edicta, legem in publicum, i. e. publicè legenda effigere*; *congiarium, to promise a largess, a gift of corn or money.*

SUPPONERE ova gallinæ, to set a hen; *testamentum, v. subicere, to forge.*

CANERE aliquem, to praise; *signa, classicum, bellicum, i. e. ad arma conclamare, to sound an alarm, to give the signal for battle*; *receptui, rarely -um, to sound a retreat*; *tibia, to play on the pipe*; *ad tibiam, to sing to it*; *palinodiam, to utter a recantation.*

STERNERE lectos, to spread or cover the couches; *equos, to harness*; *viam, to pave*; *æquora, to calm, Virg.*

PO.

CARPERE agmen, to cut off the rear; *somnos, quietem, to sleep*; *viam,*

iter, to go, Virg. opera alterius, to censure; *labores, virtutes, to diminish or obscure, Hor.*

RUMPERE fidem, foedus, amicitiam, to violate; *vocem v. silentium, to speak, Virg.*

ERUMPERE ex tenebris, castris, &c. se portis, to break out; *stomachum in aliquem, to vent passion*; *nubem, to break, Virg.*

RO.

QUÆRERE bonam, gratiam, sibi, to seek or gain, Cic. sermonem, to beat about for conversation, Ter. rem mercaturis faciendis, to make a fortune by merchandise; *ex aliquo, & in aliquem, de re aliqua per tormenta, to put to the rack: in dominum de servo quæri noluerunt Romani, Cic.*

INQUIRERE aliquid, to search after; *aliquem capitis, v. -te, to accuse or try for a capital crime.*

GERERE res, to perform; *negotium, malè, to manage*; *consulatum, to bear, to manage*; *se bene vel malè, to behave*; *exercitum, to conduct, Sallust*; *morem ei, vel morigerari, to humor*; *civem, se pro cive, personam alicujus, to pass for, to bear the character of*; *inimicitias vel simultatem cum aliquo, to be at enmity or variance with.*

INGERERE convicia ei, in eum, to inveigh against.

SUGGERERE aliquid ei, to suggest, to hint; *sumptus his rebus, to supply or afford, Horatium, Bruto, to choose in place of, to put after, Liv.*

SERERE crimina in eum, to raise, to spread accusations.

CONSERERE manus, manu, certamen, pugnam cum hostibus, inter se, to engage.

ASSERERE aliquid, to affirm; *aliquem manu, ab injuria, in libertatem, to free*; *in servitutem, to reduce*; *divinam majestatem, to claim.*

TO.

PETERE aliquid alicui; id ab eo, rarely eum; in beneficii gratiæque loco, Cic. to ask; *urbem Romam, murum, montes, to go to, to make for*; *aliquem sagittâ, lapide, to aim at*; *consulatum poenas ab aliquo, repetere, to punish.*

COMPETERE animo, to be in one's senses; *in eum competit actio, an action lies against law, Cic.*

REPETERE res, to demand restitution; *bona lege, v. prosequi lite, to recover by law*; *castra, oppidum, huc, to return to*; *aliquid memoriâ, to call to mind*; *altè, to trace from the beginning. Mihi*

nihil suppetit, multa suppetunt, *I have; si vita suppetet, if life shall remain, Cic.*

MITTERE alicui, v. ad aliquem; in suffragia, *to send the people to vote; aulæum, mappam, to drop the curtain; talos, to throw the dice; senatum, to dismiss; timorem, to lay aside; in acta, to register, to record; sanguinem, vel emittere, to let blood; noxam, to forgive; signa timoris, to show; vocem, to utter, to speak; habenas, v. remittere, to slacken; manu et emittere, to free a slave; filium emancipare, to free a son from the power of his father; sub jugum, to make to pass under the yoke; inferias manibus diis, to sacrifice to the infernal gods; rem, v. de re, to omit; mitto rem, I say nothing of fortune, Ter. in possessionem bonorum, to give the possession of the debtor's effects; misit orare, ut venirem; i. e. aliquem ad orandum, Ter.*

AMITTERE litem, v. causam: vitam, sidem, lumina, aspectum, *to lose, Cic.*

ADMITTERE in cubiculum, *to admit; equum immittere, & permittere, to gallop; delictum in se, to commit a fault; aves non admiserunt, have not given a favorable omen, Liv.*

COMMITTERE facinus, *to commit; se alicui, v. in fidem alicujus, to intrust; prælum, to engage; exercitum pugnæ, rem in casum ancipitis eventus prælii, to risk a battle, Liv. iv. 27. aliquem cum aliquo, homines inter se, to set at variance, or by the ears; rem eo, to bring to that pass; gladiatores, pugiles Græcos cum Latinis, to match or pair; committere, ut, to cause; incommoda sua legibus & judiciis, to seek redress by law.*

COMPROMITTERE, Candidati compromiserunt, H. S. quingenis in singulos apud M. Catonem depositis, petere ejus arbitrato, ut qui contra fecisset, ab eo condemnaretur, *made a compromise or agreement, &c.*

DIMITTERE exercitum, *to disband; uxorem, & repudiare, nuntium v. repudiam ad eam remittere, to divorce.*

PROMITTERE id ei, *to promise; capillum, barbam, to let grow, Liv.*

PERMITTERE alicui, *to allow; divis cætera, to leave, Horat. se in sidem v. fidei ejus; vela ventis; equum in hostem; rem suffragiis populi, to let the people decide; tribunatum vexandis consulibus, to give up, to employ, Liv.*

REMITTERE animum, *to ease; calces, tela, to throw back; ex pecunia, de supplicio, tributo, &c. to abate; debitum, iras alicui, to give up, to forgive; justi-*

cium, to discontinue; pugnam, to slacken; remittit explorare, neglects, Salust.

SUBMITTERE fasces populo, *to lower; se, v. animum, to submit, to humble; percussores alicui, to suborn assassins.*

TRANSMITTERE in Africam, neut. *to pass over.*

VERTERE in fugam, *to put to flight; terga, to fly; ab imo, to overthrow; solum, to go into banishment; id ei vitio, v. crimini, & in crimen, to blame; in superbiam, to impute; Platonem, Latine Græca, Græca vel ex Græcis in Latinum, to translate; pollicem, to doom a gladiator to death by turning up the thumb; terram, to plow; crateram, to empty, Virg. Stilum, to correct, Horat. Salus vel causa in eo vertitur, depends; fortuna verterat, Liv. Annus vertens, a whole year, Nep. Res bene vertat, Di bene vertant, prosper.*

ANIMADVERTERE id, *to observe; in eum verberibus, morte, &c. to punish.*

ADVERTERE agmen urbi, *to bring up to, Virg. oras, to arrive at; aures, mentes, animum, v. animo ad aliquid, monitis, to attend to; in aliquem, oftener animadvertere, to punish.*

ANTEVERTERE ei, *to come before; damnationem veneno, to prevent; rem rei, to prefer, Plaut.*

INTERVERTERE pecuniam alicujus, & aliquem pecuniâ, *to embezzle, to cheat; candelabrum, to steal, to pilfer; promissum & receptum, sc. Dolobellæ consulatum, intervertit, ad seque transtulit, treacherously withheld, Cic.*

PRÆVERTERE, & -ti, dep. ventos cursu, *to outstrip; desiderium plebis, to prevent; metum supplicii morte voluntariâ, Liv. Aliquid alicui rei, to put before, Id.*

SISTERE vadimonium; se in judicio, *to appear in court at one's trial; nec sisti posse, nor could the state be saved, Liv.*

ASSISTERE ei, *to stand by; adfores, contra, super eum.*

CONSISTERE in digitos, *to stand on tiptoe; in anchoris, ad anchoram, to ride at anchor; frigore, to be frozen, Ovid. Spes in velis consistebat, depended on: virtus in actione consistit, Cic.*

INSISTERE jacentibus, *to stand upon; vestigiis ejus; viam, v. viâ; in re aliqua, in rem, v. rei; in dolos, negotium, Plaut. to insist upon, to urge.*

OBISTERE ei, *to stop, to oppose.*

RESISTERE ei, *to resist.*

SUBSISTERE, *to stand still; sumptui, to bear.*

VO.

SOLVERE pecuniam ei, *to pay*; ver-
surâ, *to pay a debt by borrowing from*
another, Ter. Fidem, *to break a prom-*
ise, or according to others, *to perform*,
Ter. And. IV. l. 19. litem æstimatam,
to pay the fine imposed on him, Nep.
Votum, *to discharge*; obsidionem urbis,
v. urbem obsidione, to raise a siege;
navem e portu, to set sail; epistolam,
v. resignare, to break open; aliquem le-

gibus, *legum vinculis, to free from*;
solvitur in somnos, Virg. Oratio solu-
ta, *i. e. libera, numeris non astricta &*
devicta, prose; solve metus, *dismiss*,
Virg.

DISSOLVERE societatem, *to break*.

RESOLVERE vocem, *v. ora, to break*
silence, Virg. jura, *to violate*; vectigal,
to take off taxes, Tacit. In pulverem,
to reduce to.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

AUDIRE aliquem, aliquid ex *v. ab*
aliquo, to hear from one; de aliquo,
about one, also from one, as, sæpe hoc
audivi de patre, *for ex patre*, Cic. Au-
dire bene *v. malè* apud socios, ab om-
nibus, *to be well spoken of, to have a*
good character; rexque paterque audis-
ti, *have been called*, Hor. Antigonus
credit de suo adventu esse auditum,
Nep.

VENIRE ad finem, aures, paction-
nem, certamen, manus, nihilum, &c.
in suspicionem, odium, gratiam, &c. in
jus, *to go to law*, Liv. in circulum, *into*
a company, Nep. Hæreditas ei venit,
he has succeeded to an estate; ei usu
venit, *happened*, Nep. Quod in buc-
cam venerit, scribito, *occurs*, Cic.

ADVENIRE & adventare ei, urbem,
ad urbem, *to come to*.

ANTEVENIRE aliquem, & antever-
tere, Sall. rei, Plaut. tempus, consilia
& itinera.

CONVENIRE in colloquium; fratrem,
to meet with, to speak to; ego et frater
conveniemus, *copiæ convenient, will*

meet together; convenit mihi cum fra-
tre de hac re, inter me et fratrem, in-
ter nos; hæc fratri mecum conveniunt,
I and my brother are agreed; sævis
inter se convenit ursis, Juv. Ipsi se-
cum non convenit, *vel ipse, he is inconsi-*
stent; pax convenit, *vel conventa est,*
is agreed upon; rem conventuram pu-
tamus, Cic. conditiones non convene-
runt; mores conveniunt, *agree*; calcei
pedibus, *v. ad pedes conveniunt, fit,*
suit; hoc in illum convenit; Catilinam
interfectum esse convenit, *ought to have*
been slain, Cic. Convenire in manum,
the usual form of marriage, named Co-
emptio, whereby women were called ma-
tres familias.

SENTIRE sonorem, colorem, &c. *to*
perceive; cum aliquo, *to be of one's*
opinion; bene vel malè de eo, *to think*
well or ill of him.

CONSENTIRE tibi tecum, inter se;
alicui rei, de *v. in aliqua re*; ad aliquid
peragendum, *to agree*; So dissentire:
et ab aliquo, to disagree; ne vita ora-
tioni dissentiat, Senec.

DEPONENT VERBS.

PROFITERI philosophiam, *to pro-*
fess, to teach publicly; se candidatum,
to declare himself a candidate for an
office; pecunias, agros, nomina, &c.
apud censorem, *to give an account of,*
to declare how much one has; indicium,
to promise to make a discovery.

LOQUI cum aliquo, inter se; some-
times alicui, ad *v. apud aliquem*; ali-
quid, de aliqua re.

SEQUI feras; sectam Cæsaris, *to be*
of his party, Cic. Assequi, consequi,
to overtake; gloriam, *to attain*. Conse-
qui hereditatem, *to get*, Cic.

PROSEQUI aliquem amore, laudibus,
&c. *to love, praise, &c.*

NITI hastâ; in cubitum, *to lean*;
ejus consilio, in eo, *to depend on*; ad
gloriam, ad *v. in summa, to aim at*; in
vetitum, in adversum, contra aliquem,
pro aliquo, *to strive*; gradibus, *to as-*
cend.

UTI eo familiariter, *to be familiar*
with one; ventis adversis, *to have cross*
winds; honore usus, *one who has enjoy-*
ed a post of honor.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

ESSE magni roboris, *v. -no, -re*; ejus
opinionis, *v. ea opinione*; in maxima

spe: in timore, luctu, opinione, itinere,
&c. cum telo, in *vel* cum imperio; mag-

no periculo, *v. in periculo; in tuto; apud se, in his senses; sui juris, v. mancipii, sui potens, v. in sua potestate, to be at his own disposal; Res est in vado, is safe, Ter. Est animus, sc. mihi, I have a mind, Virg. Est ut, cur, quomobrem, quod, quin, &c. there is cause; bene, male est mihi, with me; nihil est mihi tecum, I have nothing to do with you; Quid est tibi, sc. rei, What is the matter with you? Ter. Cernere erat, one might see; religio est mihi id facere, I scruple to do it; si est, ut facere velit, ut facturus sit ut admiserit, &c. for si velit, &c. Ter. Est ut viro vir latius ordinet arbusta sulcis, it happens, Hor. Certum est facere, sc. mihi, I am resolved, Ter. Non certum est, quid faciam, I am uncertain, Id. Cassius quærere solebat, Cui BONO FUERIT: Omnibus bono fuit, it was of advantage, Cic.*

ADDESSE pugnae, in pugna, ad exercitum, ad tempus, in tempore, cum aliquo, to be present; alicui, to favor, to assist; scribendo, *v. esse ad scribendum, to subscribe one's name to a decree of the senate, Cic. consilio utrique, to be a counsellor to, Nep.*

ABESSE domo, urbe, a domo, ab signis, to be absent; alicui, *v. deesse, to be wanting, not to assist; a sole, to stand out of the sun; sumptus funeri defuit, he had not money to bury him, Liv. abesse a persona principis, to be inconsistent with the character, Nep. Paulum v. parum abfuit quin urbem cape- rent, quin occideretur, &c. they were near taking, &c. Tantum abest ne enervetur oratio, ut, &c. is so far from being, &c. Cic. Tantum abfuit a cupiditate pecuniæ, a societate sceleris, &c. Nep.*

INTERESSE convivio, *v. in convivio, to be at a feast; anni decem interfue- runt, intervened; stulto intelligens quid interest, Ter. Hoc dominus & pater interest, Id. Inter hominem & bellu- am hoc interest, Cic. differ in this, this is the difference; multum interest, utrum, it is of great importance. Pons inter eos interest, is between, Cic.*

PRÆESSE exercitui, to command; comi- tibus iudicio, quæstioni, to preside in or at.

OBSSESE ei, to hurt, to hinder.

SUPERESSE, to be read over and above; alicui, to survive; modo vita supersit, *sc. mihi, if I live; super est, ut, it re- mains, that.*

IRE ad arma, ad saga, to go to war; in jus, to go to law; pedibus in senten- tiam alicujus, to agree with; viam v.

via; res bene eunt, Cic. Tempus, dies, mensis, it passes.

ABIRE magistratu, to lay down an office; a conspectu, to retire from com- pany; in ora hominum, to be in every body's mouth; ab' emptione, to retract his bargain; decem menses abierunt, have past, Ter. Non hoc tibi sic abi- bit, i. e. non feres hoc impune, Ter. Abi in malam rem, a form of impreca- tion.

ADIRE periculum capitis, to run the hazard of one's life.

EXIRE vitâ, e, *v. de vita, to die; ære alieno, Cic. Verbum exit exore, Id. tela, to avoid, Virg. Tempus inducia- rum eum Vejenti pupulo exierat, had expired, Liv.*

INIRE magistratum; suffragium, ra- tionem, consilium, pugnam, viam, &c. to enter upon, to begin; gratiam ejus, apud eum, cum vel ab eo, to gain his favor: Ineunte æstate, vere, anno, &c. in the beginning of; but we seldom say, Ineunte die, nocte, &c. Ab ineunte ætate, from our early years.

OBIRE diem edicti, vel auctionis ju- dicialium, vadimonium, to be present at; provinciam, domos, nostras, to visit, to go through, Cic. negotia, res, munus, officium, legationem, sacra, to perform; pugnas, Virg. mortem, vel morte; diem supremum, *v. diem, to die.*

PRÆIRE alicui, to go before; verba, carmen, vel sacramentum alicui, to re- peat or read over before; alicui voce, quid judicet, to prescribe or direct by crying, Cic.

PRODIRE in publicum, to go abroad; non præterit te, you are not ignorant, Cic. Dies induciarum præterit, is past, Nep.

REDIRE in gratiam cum aliquo, to become friends again; ad se, to come to himself, to recover his senses.

SUBIRE murum, vel -o, ad montes, to come up to; laborem vel -i, onus, pœ- nam, periculum, crimen, to undergo; sues, timor subiti animum, came into.

VELLE aliquem, *sc. alloqui vel con- ventum, to desire to speak with; alicui, ejus causâ, to wish one's good; tibi con- sultum volo; nihil tibi negatum volo, I wish to deny, Liv. Quid sibi vult?*

What does he mean; Volo te hoc facere, hoc a te fieri: si quid recte curatum velis; illos monitos etiam atque etiam volo, *sc. esse, I will admonish them again and again, Cic. nollem factum, I am sorry it was done; nollem huc ex- citum, sc. esse a me, I wish I had not come out here, Ter.*

FERRE legem, to propose or make;

privilegium de aliquo, *to propose or pass an act of impeachment against one*, Cic. rogationem ad populum, *to bring in a bill*; conditiones ei, *to offer terms*; suffragium, *to vote*; sententiam, *to give an opinion*; centuriam, tribum, *to gain the vote of*; perdere, *to lose it*; victoriam ex eo; omne punctum, omnia suffragia, *to gain all the votes*; repulsam, *to be rejected*; fructum hoc fructi, *to reap*, Ter. lætitiā de re, *to rejoice*; præ se, *to pretend or declare openly*; alienam personam, *to disguise one's-self*; in oculis, *to be fond of*, Ter. manus in prælia, *to engage*, Virg. acceptum et expensum, *to mark down as received and spent, or lent, as Dr. and Cr.* Cic. animus, opinio fert, *inclines*; tempus, res, causa fert, *allows, requires*.

CONFERRE benevolentiam alicui, *in vel erga aliquem, to show*; beneficia, culpam in eum, *to confer, to lay*; operam, tempus, studium ad vel in rem, & impendere, *to apply*; capita inter se, consilia sua, *to lay their heads together, to consult*; signa, arma, manus, *to engage*; omne bellum circa Corinthum, Nep. pedem, *to set foot to foot*; rationes, *to cast up accounts*; castra, castres, *to encamp over against one another*; se in vel ad urbem, *to go to*; tributa, *to pay*; se alicui vel cum aliquo, *to compare*; neminem cum illo conferendum pietate puto, Cic. Hæc conferunt ad aliquid; oratori futuro, *serve, are useful to*, Quinct.

DEFERRE situlam vel sitellam, *to bring the ballot-box*; aliquid ad aliquem, *to carry word, to tell*; rarely alicui; causam ad patronos; honores ei; gubernacula reipublicæ in eum; summam rerum ad eum, *to confer*; in beneficiis ad ærarium, *to recommend for a public service*, Cic. aliquem ambitus, de ambitu, nomen alicujus ad prætorem, apud magistratum, *to accuse of bribery*; primas, sc. partes ei, *to give him the preference*, Cic.

DIFFERE vel transferre rem in animum; post bellum, diem solutionis, *to put off*; rumores, *to spread*; ab aliquo, alicui, inter se, moribus, *to differ in character*; amore, cupiditate, doloribus, differri, *to be distracted or torn asunder*, Cic. & Ter.

EFFERRE fruges, *to produce*; verba, *to utter*; verbum de verbo expressum, *to translate*, Ter. pedem domo, *to go out*; corpus amplo funere, & cum funere, *to bury*; ad honorem, ad cælum laudibus, *to raise, to extol*; foras peccatum, *to divulge*.

INFERRE bellum patriæ; vim, manus, necem alicui, *to bring upon*; signa, se, pedem, *to advance*; litem, vel periculum capitis alicui, vel in aliquem, *to bring one to a trial for his life*.

OFFERRE se morti, ad mortem, ut discrimen, *to expose, to present*.

PERFERRE legem, *to carry through, to pass it*.

PRAEFERRE faciem ei, *to carry before*; salutem ei reipublicæ suis commodis, & anteferre, antepone, *to prefer*. Prælatu equo, *riding before*.

PROFERRE imperium, pomerium, terminos, *to enlarge*; in medium, in apertum, in lucem, *to publish*; nuptias, diem, *to delay*; diem Illo, *to defer the destruction of*, Hor.

REFERRE alicui, *to answer*; se, gradum v. pedem, *to retreat*; gratiam alicui, *to make a requital*; par pari, Ter. victoriam ab, vel ex aliquo, et reportare; *to gain*; institutum, *to renew*; iudicia ad equestrem ordinem, *to restore to the Equites the right of judging*; aliquis, de aliqua re, ad senatum, ad consilium, ad sapientes, ad populum, *to lay before*; aliquid in tabulam, codicem, album, commentarium, &c. *to mark down*; aliquid acceptum alicui, & in acceptum, *to acknowledge one's-self indebted*; pecunias acceptas & expensas, nomina vel summas in codicem accepti et expensi, *to mark down accounts*; alienos mores ad suos, *to judge of by*; in v. inter ærarios, *to reduce to the lowest class*; in numerum deorum, in vel inter deos, & reponere, *to rank among*; pugnas, res gestas, *to relate*; patrem ore, *to resemble*; amissos colores, *to regain*, Horat.

TRANSFERRE rationes in tabulas, *to post one's books, to state accounts*; in Latinam linguam, *to translate*; verba, *to use metaphorically*; culpam in eum & rejicere, *to lay the blame on him*.

II. FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

A *Figure* is a manner of speaking different from the ordinary and plain way; used for the sake of beauty or force.

The figures of *Syntax*, or *Construction*, may be reduced to these three, *Ellipsis*, *Pleonasm*, and *Hyperbāton*.

The two first respect the constituent parts of a sentence; the last respect only the arrangement of the words.

1. ELLIPSIS.

ELLIPSIS is when one or more words are wanting to complete the sense; as, *Aiunt, ferunt, dicunt, perhibent*, scil. *homines*: *Dic mihi, Damæta, cujū pecus*; that is, *Dic (tu) mihi, Damæta, (eum hominem) cujū pecus*; (est hoc pecus.) *Aberant bidui*, sc. *iter vel itinere*. *Decies sestertiūm*, sc. *centena millia*. *Quid multa?* sc. *dicam*. *Antiquum obtines*, sc. *morem v. institutum*, Plaut. *Hodie in ludum occepi ire literarium, ternas jam scio*, sc. *litteras*, i. e. *AMO*, Id. *Triduo abs te nullas acceperam*, sc. *litteras*, i. e. *epistolam*, Cic. *Brevi dicam*, sc. *sermone*: So *complecti, respondere, &c. breve*. *Dii meliora*, sc. *faciant*: *Rhodum volo, inde Athenas*, sc. *ire*, Id. *Bellicum v. classicum canere*, sc. *signum* Liv. *Civicā donatus*, sc. *coronā*. So *obsidionalem, muralem adeptus, &c.* Id. *Epistola librarii manu est*, sc. *scripta*, Cic. So in English, "The twelve," i. e. apostles; "the elect," i. e. persons.

When a conjunction is to be supplied, it is called *ASYNDETON*; as, *Deus optimus maximus*, sc. *et*; *Sartum tectum conservare*, i. e. *sartum et tectum*: So *Abiit, excessit, evasit, erupit*, Cic. *Ferte citi flammās, date vela, impellite remos*, Virg. *Velis nolis*, sc. *seu*.

To this figure may be reduced most of those irregularities in Syntax, as they are called, which are variously classed by grammarians, under the names of *ENALLAGE*, i. e. the changing of words and their accidents, or the putting of one word for another; *ANTIPTOSIS*, i. e. the putting of one case for another; *HELLENISM* or *GRÆCISM*, i. e. imitating the construction of the Greeks; *SYNESIS*, i. e. referring the construction, not to the gender or number of the word, but to the sense, &c.; thus, *Samnitium duo millia cæsi*, is, *Duo millia (hominum) Samnitium (fuerunt homines) cæsi*, Liv. So *Servitia immemores*, Liv. *Monstrum quæ*, scil. *mulier*, Hor. *Scelus qui*, sc. *homo*, Ter. *Omnia Mercurio similis*, scil. *secundum*, Virg. *Missi magnis de rebus uterque, legati*; i. e. *Missi legati (et) uterque (legatus missus) de magnis rebus*, Horat. *Servitia repudiabat, cujus*, scil. *servitii*, Sall. Cat. 51. *Familia nostra, quorum, &c. sc. hominum*, Sall. *Concursus populi, mirantium*, Liv. *Illum ut vivat optant*, for *ut ille vivat*, Ter. *Populum late regem*, for *regnantem*, Virg. *Expediti militum*, for *milites*; *Classis stabat Rhegii*, for *ad Rhegium*, Liv.

Latium Capuaque agro multati, sc. *homines*, Id. *Utraque formosæ*, sc. *mulieres*, Ovid. *Aperite aliquis ostium*, Ter. *Sensit delapsus*, for *delapsus*, sc. *se esse*, Virg.

When a writer frequently uses the Ellipsis, his style is said to be elliptical or concise.

PLEONASM.

PLEONASM is when a word more is added than is absolutely necessary to express the sense; as, *Video oculis*, I see with my eyes; *Sic ore locuta est*; *adest præsens*; *Nusquam gentium*; *vivere vitam*; *servire servitutum*; *Quid mihi Celsus agit?* *Fac me ut sciam*, &c. *Suo sibi gladio hunc jugulo*, Ter. *Suo sibi succo vivant*, Plaut.

When a conjunction is used apparently redundant, it is called POLYSYNDETON; as, *Una Eurusque Notusque ruunt* Virg.

When that which is in reality one, is so expressed as if there were two, it is called HENDIADYS; as, *Pateris libamus et auro*, for *aureis pateris*, Virg.

When several words are used to express one thing, it is called PERIPHRAISIS; as, *Urbs Trojæ*, for *Troja*, Virg. *Res voluptatum*, for *voluptates*, Plaut. *Usus purpurarum*, for *purpura*; *Genus piscium*, for *pisces*; *Flores rosarum*, for *rosæ*, Hor.

3. HYPERBATON.

HYPERBATON is the transgression of that order or arrangement of words which is commonly used in any language. It is chiefly to be met with among the poets. The various sorts into which it is divided, are, *Anaströphe*, *Hystëron proteron*, *Hypalläge*, *Synchësis*, *Tmesis*, and *Parenthësis*.

1. ANASTROPHE is the inversion of words, or the placing of that word last which should be first; as, *Italiam contra*; *His accensa super*; *Spemque metumque inter dubii*; for *contra Italiam*, *super his*, *inter spem*, &c. Virg. *Terram sol facit are*, for *arefacit*, Lucret.

2. HYSTERON PROTERON is when that is put in the former part of the sentence, which, according to the sense, should be in the latter; as, *Valet atque vivit*, for *vivit atque valet*, Ter.

3. HYPALLAGE is the exchanging of cases; as, *Dare clas-sibus austros*, for *dare classes austris*, Virg.

4. SYNCHESIS is a confused and intricate arrangement of words; as, *Saxa vocant Itali mediis, quæ in fluctibus aras*, for *Qua saxa in mediis fluctibus Itali vocant aras*. Virg.

This occurs particularly in violent passion; as, *Per tibi ego hunc juro fortem castumque cruorem*, Ovid, Fast. ii. 841. *Per vos liberos atque parentes*, sc. oro vos per liberos, &c. Sallust. Jug. 14.

5. TMESIS is the division of a compound word and the interposing of other words betwixt its parts; as, *Septem subjēcta trioni gens*, for *Septentrioni*, Virg. *Quæ meo cunque animo libitum est facere*, for *quæcunque*, Ter. *Quem sors dierum cunque dabit, lucro Appone*, Horat.

6. PARENTHESIS is the inserting of a member into the body of a sentence, which is neither necessary to the sense, nor at all affects the construction; as, *Tityrè, dum redeo*, (brevis est via,) *pasce capellas*, Virg.

III. ANALYSIS AND TRANSLATION.

The difficulty of translating either from English into Latin, or from Latin into English, arises in a great measure from the different arrangement of words which takes place in the two languages.

In Latin the various terminations of nouns, and the inflection of adjectives and verbs, point out the relation of one word to another, in whatever order they are placed. But in English the agreement and government of words can only be determined from the particular part of the sentences in which they stand. Thus, in Latin, we can either say, *Alexander vicit Darium*, or *Darium vicit Alexander*, or *Alexander Darium vicit*, or *Darium Alexander vicit*; and in each of these the sense is equally obvious: but, in English, we can only say, *Alexander conquered Darius*. This variety of arrangement in Latin gives it a great advantage over the English, not only in point of energy and vivacity of expression, but also in point of harmony. We sometimes, indeed, for the sake of variety and force, imitate in English the inversion of words which takes place in Latin; as, *Him the Eternal hurl'd*, Milton. *Whom ye ignorantly worship, him declare I unto you*. But this is chiefly to be used in poetry.

With regard to the proper order of words to be observed in translating from English into Latin, the only certain rule which can be given, is to imitate the CLASSICS.

The order of words in sentences is said to be either *simple* or *artificial*; or, as it is otherwise expressed, either *natural* or *oratorial*.

The *Simple* or *Natural* order is, when the words of a sentence are placed one after another, according to the natural order of syntax.

Artificial or *Oratorical* order is, when words are so arranged as to render them most striking, or most agreeable to the ear.

All Latin writers use an arrangement of words, which appears to us more or less artificial, because different from our own, although to them it was as natural as ours is to us. In order, therefore, to render any Latin author into English, we must first reduce the words in Latin to the order of English, which is called the *Analysis* or *Resolution* of sentences. It is only practice that can teach one to do this with readiness. However, to a beginner, the observation of the following rule may be of advantage.

Take *first* the words which serve to introduce the sentence, or show its dependence on what went before; *next*, the nominative, together with the words which it agrees with or governs; *then*, the verb and adverbs joined with it; and *lastly*, the cases which the verb governs, together with the circumstances subjoined to the end of the sentence; supplying, through the whole, the words which are understood.

If the sentence is compound, it must be resolved into the several sentences of which it is made up; as,

Vale igitur, mi Cicero, tibi que persuade esse te quidem mihi carissimum; sed multo fore cariorem, si talibus monumentis præceptisque lætabere, Cic. Off. lib. 3. fin.

Farewell then, my Cicero, and assure yourself that you are indeed very dear to me; but shall be much dearer, if you shall take delight in such writings and instructions.

This compound sentence may be resolved into these five simple sentences; 1. *Igitur, mi (fili) Cicero, (tu) vale*, 2. *et (tu) persuade tibi (ipsi) te esse quidem (filium) carissimum mihi*; 3. *sed (tu) persuade tibi ipse te) fore (filium) cariorem (mihi in) multo (negotio)*, 4. *si (tu) lætabere talibus monumentis*, 5. *et (si tu lætabere talibus) præceptis*.

1. Fare (you) well then, my (son) Cicero, 2. and assure (you) yourself that you are indeed (a son) very dear to me: 3. but (assure you yourself that you) shall be (a son) much dearer (to me), 4. if you shall take delight in such writings, 5. and (if you shall take delight in such) instructions.

It may not be improper here to exemplify *Analogical Analysis*, as it is called, or the analysis of words, from the foregoing sentence, *Vale igitur*, &c. thus,

Vale, scil. *tu*; Fare (thou) well; Second person singular of the imperative mode, active voice, from the neuter verb, *Valeo, valui, valitum, valere*, to be in health, of the second conjugation, not used in the passive. *Vale* agrees in the second person singular with the nominative *tu*, by the third rule of syntax.

Igitur, then, therefore, a conjunction, importing some inference drawn from what went before.

Mi, voc. sing. masc. of the adjective pronoun, *meus, -a, -um*, my; derived from the substantive pronoun *Ego*, agreeing with *Cicero*, by Rule 2. *Cicero*, voc. sing. from the nominative *Cicero, -onis*, a proper noun of the third declension.

Et, and, a copulative conjunction which connects the verb *persuade* with the verb *vale*, by Rule 53. We turn *que* into *et*, because *que* never stands by itself.

Persuade, scil. *tu*, persuade thou, second person singular of the imperative active, from the verb *persua-deo*, -*si*, -*sum*, -*dere*, to persuade; compounded of the preposition *per* and *sua-deo*, -*si*, -*sum*, to advise; used impersonally in the passive; thus, *Persuadetur mihi*, I am persuaded; seldom or never *Ego persuadeor*. We say, however, in the third person, *Hic persuadetur mihi*, I am persuaded of this.

Tibi, dat. sing. of the personal pronoun *tu*, thou; governed by *persuade*, according to Rule 17. *Te*, accusative singular of *tu*, put before *esse*, according to Rule 4.

Esse, present of the infinitive from the substantive verb *sum*, *fui*, *esse*, to be.

Quidem, indeed, an adverb, joined with *carissimum* or *esse*.

Carissimum, accusative sing. masc. from *carissimus*, -*a*, -*um*, very dear, dearest, superlative degree of the adjective *carus*, -*a*, -*um*, dear: Comparative degree, *carior*, *carior*, *carius*, dearer, more dear; agreeing with *te* or *filium* understood, by Rule 2., and put in the accusative by Rule 5.

Mihi, to me, dat. sing. of the substantive pronoun *Ego*, I; governed by *carissimum*, by Rule 12.

Sed, but, an adversative conjunction, joining *esse* and *fore*.

Fore, the same with *esse futurum*, to be, or to be about to be, infinitive of the defective verb, *fōrem*, -*res*, -*ret*, &c. governed in the same manner with the foregoing *esse*, thus, *te fore*, Rule 45, or thus, *esse sed fore*. See Rule 53.

Multo, scil. *negotio*, ablat. sing. neut. of the adjective *multus*, -*a*, -*um*, much, put in the ablative according to observation 6, Rule 56. But *multo* here may be taken adverbially in the same manner with *much* in English.

Cariorem, accus. sing. masc. from *carior*, -*or*, -*us*, the comparative of *carus*, as before; agreeing with *te* or *filium* understood. Rule 2 or Rule 5.

Si, if, a conditional conjunction, joined either with the indicative mode or with the subjunctive, according to the sense, but oftener with the latter. See Rule 55, obs. 2.

Lætābĕre, Thou shalt rejoice, second person singular of the future of the indicative from the deponent verb *lĕtor*, *lĕtatus*, *lĕtāri*, to rejoice: Future *lĕtabor*, -*abĕris* or -*ābĕre*, -*ābitur*, &c.

Talibus, ablat. plur. neut. of the adjective *talis*, *talis*, *tale*, such; agreeing with *monumentis*, the ablat. plur. of the substantive noun *monumentum*, -*ti*, neut. a monument or writing, of the second declension; derived from *moneo*, -*ui*, -*itum*, -*ĕre*, to admonish; here put in the ablative according to Rule 44. *Et*, a copulative conjunction, as before.

Præceptis, a substantive noun in the ablative plural from the nominative *præceptum*, -*ti*, neut. a precept, an instruction; derived from *præcipio*, -*cĕpi*, -*ceptum*, -*cipĕre*, to instruct, to order, compounded of the preposition *præ*, before, and the verb *cipio*, *cĕpi*, *captum*, *capĕre*, to take. The *ā* of the simple is changed into *i* short; thus, *præcipio*, *præcipis*, &c.

The learner may in like manner be taught to analyze the words in English, and, in doing so, to mark the different idioms of the two languages.

To this may be subjoined a *Praxis*, or Exercise on all the different parts of grammar, particularly with regard to the inflexion of nouns and verbs in the form of questions, such as these, Of Cicero? *Cicerōnis*. With Cicero? *Cicerōne*. A dear son? *Carus filiū*. Of a dear son? *Cari filii*. O my dear son? *Mi* or *meus care fili*. Of dearer sons? *Cariōrum filiōrum*, &c.

Of thee? or of you? *Tui*. With thee or you, *te*: Of you? *Vestrū* or *vestri*. With you? *Vobis*.

They shall persuade? *Persuadebunt*. I can persuade? *Persuadeam*, or much more frequently *possum persuadere*. They are persuaded? *Persuadetur*, or *persuasum est illis*, according to the time expressed. He is to persuade? *Est persuasurus*. He will be persuaded? *Persuadebitur*, or *persuasum erit illi*. He cannot be persuaded? *Non potest persuaderi illi*. I know that he cannot be persuaded? *Scio non posse persuaderi illi*. That he will be persuaded? *Est persuasum iri*, &c.

When a learner first begins to translate from the Latin, he should keep as strictly to the literal meaning of the words as the different idioms of the two languages will permit. But

after he has made farther progress, something more will be requisite. He should then be accustomed, as much as possible, to transfuse the beauties of an author from the one language into the other. For this purpose it will be necessary that he be acquainted, not only with the idioms of the two languages, but also with the different kinds of style adapted to different sorts of composition, and to different subjects; together with the various turns of thought and expression which writers employ, or what are called the figures of words and of thought; or the *Figures of Rhetoric*.

IV. DIFFERENT KINDS OF STYLE.

The kinds of Style (*genera dicendi*) are commonly reckoned three; the low, (*humile, submissum, tenue*); the middle, (*medium, temperatum, ornatum, floridum*); and the sublime, (*sublime, grande*).

But besides these, there are various other characters of style; as, the *diffuse* and *concise*; the *feeble* and *nervous*; the *simple* and *affected*, &c.

There are different kinds of style adapted to different subjects and to different kinds of composition; the style of the Pulpit, of the Bar, and of Popular Assemblies; the style of History and of its various branches, Annals, Memoirs, or Commentaries, and Lives; the style of Philosophy, of Dialogue or Colloquial Discourse, of Epistles, and Romance, &c.

There is also a style peculiar to certain writers, called their *Manner*; as, the *style* of Cicero, of Livy, of Sallust, &c.

But what deserves particular attention is, the difference between the style of poetry and of prose. As the poets in a manner paint what they describe, they employ various epithets, repetitions, and turns of expression, which are not admitted in prose.

The first virtue of style (*virtus orationis*) is perspicuity, or that it be easily understood. This requires, in the choice of the words, 1. *Purity*, in opposition to barbarous, obsolete, or new-coined words, and to errors in Syntax: 2. *Propriety*, or the selection of the best expressions, in opposition to vulgarisms or low expressions: 3. *Precision*, in opposition to superfluity of words or a *loose style*.

The things chiefly to be attended to in the structure of a sentence, or in the disposition of its parts, are, 1. *Clearness*, in opposition to *ambiguity* and *obscurity*: 2. *Unity* and *Strength*, in opposition to an *unconnected, intricate, and feeble* sentence: 3. *Harmony*, or musical arrangement, in opposition to *harshness* of sound.

The most common defects of style (*vitia orationis*) are distinguished by various names :

1. A BARBARISM is when a foreign or strange word is made use of ; as, *croftus*, for *agellus* ; *rigorosus*, for *rigidus* or *severus* ; *alterare*, for *mutare*, &c. Or when the rules of Orthography, Etymology, or Prosody are transgressed ; as, *charus* for *carus* ; *stavi* for *steti* ; *tibicen*, for *tibicen*.

2. A SOLECISM is when the rules of Syntax are transgressed ; as, *Dicit libros lectos iri*, for *lectum iri* : *We was walking*, for *we were*. A barbarism may consist in one word, but a solecism requires several words.

3. An IDIOTISM is when the manner of expression peculiar to one language is used in another ; as an *Anglicism* in Latin, thus, I am to write, *Ego sum scribere*, for *Ego sum scripturus* ; it is I, *Est ego*, for *Ego sum* : Or a *Latinism* in English, thus, *Est sapientior me*, He is wiser than me, for *than I* ; *Quem dicunt me esse* ? Whom do they say that I am ? for *who*, &c.

4. TAUTOLOGY is when we either uselessly repeat the same words, or repeat the same sense in different words.

5. BOMBAST is when high-sounding words are used without meaning, or upon a trifling occasion.

6. AMPHIBOLOGY is when, by the ambiguity of the construction, the meaning may be taken in two different senses ; as in the answer of the oracle to Pyrrhus, *Aio te, Æacide, Romanos vincere posse*. But the English is not so liable to this as the Latin.

V. FIGURES OF RHETORIC.

Certain modes of speech are termed *Figurative*, because they convey our meaning under a borrowed form, or in a particular dress.

Figures (*figuræ* or *schemata*) are of two kinds ; figures of words, (*figuræ verborum*,) and figures of thought, (*figuræ sententiarum*.) The former are properly called *Tropes* ; and if the word be changed, the figure is lost.

1. TROPES, OR FIGURES OF WORDS.

A *Trope* (*conversio*,) is an elegant *turning* of a word from its proper signification.

Tropes take their rise partly from the barrenness of language, but more from the influence of the imagination and passions. They are founded on the relation which one object bears to another, chiefly that of resemblance or similitude.

The principal tropes are the *Metaphor*, *Metonymy*, *Synecdöche*, and *Irony*.

1. METAPHOR (*translatio*) is when a word is transferred from that to which it properly belongs, to express something to which it is only applied from similitude or resemblance; as, a *hard* heart; a *soft* temper; he *bridles* his anger; a *joyful* crop; *ridet* ager, the field *smiles*, &c. A metaphor is nothing else but a short comparison.

We likewise call that a metaphor, when we substitute one object in the place of another, on account of the close resemblance between them; as when instead of *youth*, we say *the morning* or *spring time of life*; or when, in speaking of a family connected with a common parent, we use the expressions which properly belong to a tree, whose trunk and branches are connected with a common root. When this allusion is carried on through several sentences, or through a whole discourse, and the principal subject kept out of view, so that it can only be discovered by its resemblance to the subject described, it is called an ALLEGORY. An example of this we have in Horace, book I. ode 14, where the republic is described under the allusion of a ship.

An ALLEGORY is only a continued metaphor. This figure is much the same with the *Parable*, which so often occurs in the sacred scriptures; and with the *Fable*, such as those of Æsop. The *Ænigma* or *Riddle* is also considered as a species of the Allegory; as likewise are many *Proverbs* (*proverbia* v. *Adagia*;) thus, *In sylvam ligna ferre*, Horat.

Metaphors are improper when they are taken from low objects; when they are forced or far-fetched; when they are mixed or too far pursued; and when they have not a natural and sensible resemblance; or are not adapted to the subject of discourse, or to the kind of composition, whether poetry or prose.

When a word is very much turned from its proper signification, it is called *Catachrêsis* (*abusio*;) as, *a leaf of paper*, of *gold*, &c. *the empire* flourished; *parricida*, for any murderer; *Vir gregi ipse caper*, Virg. *Altum ædificant caput*, Juv. *Hunc vobis deridendum propino*, for *trado*, Ter. *Eurus per Siculas equitavit undas*, Hor.

When a word is taken in two senses in the same phrase, the one proper and the other metaphorical, it is called *Syllepsis* (*comprehensio*;) as, *Galatæa thymo mihi dulcior Hyblæ*, Virg. *Ego sardois videar tibi amarior herbis*, Id.

2. METONYMY (*mutatio nominis*) is the putting of one name for another. In which sense it includes all other tropes;

but it is commonly restricted to the following particulars:

1. When the cause is put for the effect; or the inventor for the thing invented; or the author, for his works; as, *Boum labores*, for *corn*; *Mars*, for *war*; thus, *Æquo Marte pugnatum est*, with equal advantage, Liv. *Ceres*, for *grain*, or *bread*; *Bacchus*, for *wine*; *Venus*, for *love*; *Vulcanus*, for *fire*; thus, *Sine Cerere & Baccho friget Venus*, Ter. *Furit Vulcanus*, Virg. So a *general* is put for his *army*; *Cicero*, *Virgil*, and *Horace*, for their *works*; *Moses* and the *Prophets*, for their *books*; a beautiful *Raphael*, *Titian*, *Guido Rheni*, *Rembrandt*, *Reubens*, *Vandyke*, &c. for their *pictures*.
2. When the effect is put for the cause; as, *Pallida mors*, *Pale death*, because it makes pale; *atra cura*, &c.
3. The container, for what is contained, and sometimes the contrary; as, *Hausit pateram*, for *vinum*, Virg. *He loves his bottle*, for *drink*: *Secundum mensam servis dispertiit*, i. e. *fercula in mensa*, Nep. So *Roma*, for *Romani*; *Europe*, for the *Europeans*; *Heaven*, for the *Supreme Being*; *Secernit Europen ab Afro*, for *Africa*; *In arduos tollor Sabinos*, for *in agrum Sabinorum*; *Incolumi Jove*, for *Capitolio*; *Janus*, for the *temple of Janus*, Hor. *Proxi-mus ardet Ucalëgon*, for *domus Ucalegontis*, Virg. So *Ser-gestus*, for his *ship*, Id. *Æn.* v. 272.
4. The sign, for the thing signified; as, *The crown*, for *royal authority*; *palma* or *laurus*, for *victory*; *cedant arma togæ*, that is, as Cicero himself explains it, *bellum concedat paci*. *Ferri togæque consilia*, consultations about war and peace, *Stat. Sylv.* v. 1. 82.
5. An abstract, for the concrete; as, *Scelus*, for *scelestus*, Ter. *Audacia*, for *audax*, Cic. *Custodia*, for *custodes*, Virg. *Servitus*, for *servi*; *nobilitas*, for *nobiles*; *juventus*, for *juvenes*; *vicinia*, for *vicini*; *vires*, for *strong men*, Hor. *Furta*, for *stolen oxen*, Ovid, *Fast.* i. 560.
6. The parts of the body, for certain passions or sentiments, which were supposed to reside in them; thus, *cor*, for *wisdom* or *address*; as, *habet cor*, *vir cordatus*, a man of sense, *Plaut.* But with us the *heart* is put for courage or affection, and the *head* for wisdom; thus, *a stout heart*; *a warm heart*; *a sound head*, &c. So, *to have a well-hung tongue*, for *to speak with ease*, &c.

When we put what follows to express what goes before, or the contrary, it is called *Metalepsis*, (*transmutatio*;) thus, *desiderari*, to be desired or regretted, for *to be dead*, *lost*, or *absent*: So *Fuimus Troes, & ingens gloria Dardaniæ*, i. e. are no more, *Virg. Æn.* ii. 325.

3. SYNECDOCHE (*comprehensio*, or *conceptio*) is a trope by which a word is made to signify more or less than in its proper sense; as, 1. When a *genus* is put for a *species*, or a

whole for a part, and the contrary; thus, *Mortales*, for *homines*; *summa arbor*, for *summa pars arboris*; *priusquam pabula gustassent Trojæ*, *Xanthumque bibissent*, for *partem pabuli*, & *fluminis Xanthi*, Virg. *Nat uncta carina*, for *navis*; *centum puppes*, a hundred sail, or a hundred ships; *tectum*, the roof, for the whole house; *capita* or *animæ*, for *homines*; *ungula*, for *equus* or *equi*, Horat. Sat. i. 1. 114; the door, or even the threshold, for the house or temple, *tum foribus divæ*, for *in templo divæ*, Virg. *Tempe*, for any beautiful vale, &c.

2. When a singular is put for a plural, and the contrary; thus, *Hostis*, *miles*, *pedes*, *eques*, for *hostes*, &c. *It is written in the prophets*, for in a book of some one of the prophets; *milles*, a thousand times, for many times.

3. When the materials are put for the things made of them; as, *Æs* or *argentum*, for money; *æra*, for vases of brass, trumpets, arms, &c.; *ferrum*, for a sword; *taurus*, for a bull's hide, Virg. *Dust thou art*, i. e. made of dust, &c.

When a common name is put for a proper name, or the contrary, it is called *Antonomasia* (*pronomnatio*;) as, the *Philosopher*, for *Aristotle*; the *Orator*, for *Demosthenes* or *Cicero*; the *Poet*, for *Homer* or *Virgil*; the *Wise Man*, for *Solomon*; *Astu*, for *Athens*: *Urbs*, the city or town, for the capital of any country; *Pænus*, for *Hannibal*; a *Nero*, for a cruel prince; *Mæcenas*, for a patron of learning; as, *Sint Mæcenates, non deerunt*. *Flacce, Marones*, i. e. *sint munifici patroni, non deerunt boni poetæ*, Martial, viii. 56. 5.

An *Antonomasia* is often made by a *Periphrasis*; as, *Pelöpis parens*, for *Tantalus*; *Anÿti reus*, for *Socrates*; *Trojanî belli scriptor*, for *Homer*; *Chironis alumnus*, for *Achilles*; *Potor Rhodâni*, for *Gallus*; *Jubæ tellus*, for *Mauritania*, Horat, &c. or by a patronymic noun; as, *Anchisiâdes*, for *Æneas*; *Tyndâris, idis*, for *Helëna*, &c. or by an epithet; as, *Impius reliquit*, for *Æneas*, Virg. sometimes with the noun added; as, *Fatâlis et incestus judex, famosus hospes*, for *Paris*, Hor.

4. **IRONY** is when one means the contrary of what is said; as, when we say of a bad poet, *he is a Virgil*; or of a profligate person, *Tertius e cælo cecidit Cato*.

When any thing is said by way of bitter raillery, or in an insulting manner, it is called a **SARCASM**; as, *Satia te Sanguine, Cyre*, Justin. *Italiam metire jacens*, Virg.

When an affirmation is expressed in a negative form, it is called **LITOTES**; as, *He is a fool*, for *he is a man of sense*; *Non humilis mulier*, for *nobilis* or *superba*; *non indecoro pulvere* for *decoro*, Horat. When a word has a meaning con-

trary to its original sense, it is called *Antiphrasis*; as, *auri sacra fames*, for *execrabilis*, Virg. *Pontus Euxini falso nomine dictus*, i. e. *hospitalis*, Ovid.

When any thing sad or offensive is expressed in more gentle terms, it is called *EUPHEMISMUS*; as, *Vitâ functus*, for *mortuus*; *conclamare suos*, to give up for lost, Liv. *Valeant*, for *abeant*; *mactare* or *ferire*, for *occidere*; *Fecerunt id servi, Melonis, quod suos quisque servos in tali re facere voluisset*, i. e. *Clodium interfecerunt*, Cic. This figure is often the same with the *Periphrasis*.

The *PERIPHRAISIS*, or *Circumlocution*, is when several words are employed to express what might be expressed in fewer. This is done either from necessity, as in translating from one language into another; or to explain what is obscure, as in definitions; or for the sake of ornament, particularly in poetry, as in the descriptions of evening and morning, &c.

When, after explaining an obscure word or sentence by a periphrasis, one enlarges on the thought of the author, it is called a *Paraphrase*.

When a word imitates the sound of a thing signified, it is called *Onomatopœia*, (*nominis fictio*;) as, the *whistling* of winds, *purling* of streams, *buzz* and *hum* of insects, *hiss* of serpents, &c. But this figure is not properly a trope.

It is sometimes difficult to ascertain to which of the above-mentioned tropes certain expressions ought to be referred. But in such cases minute exactness is needless. It is sufficient to know in general that the expression is figurative.

There are a great many tropes peculiar to every language, which cannot be literally expressed in any other. These, therefore, if possible, must be rendered by other figurative expressions equivalent; and if this cannot be done, their meaning should be conveyed in simple language; thus, *Interiore notâ Falerni*, with a glass of old *Falernian wine*: *Ad umbilicum ducere*, to bring to a conclusion, Horat. These, and other such figurative expressions, cannot be properly explained without understanding the particular customs to which they refer.

2. REPETITION OF WORDS.

Various repetitions of words are employed for the sake of elegance or force, and are therefore also called *Figures of words*. Rhetoricians have distinguished them by different names, according to the part of the sentence in which they take place.

When the same word is repeated in the beginning of any member of a sentence, it is called **ANAPHORA**; as, *Nihilne te nocturnum præsidium palatii, nihil urbis vigiliæ, &c.* Cic. *Te dulcis conjux, te solo in litore secum, Te veniente die, te descendente canebat,* Virg.

When the repetition is made in the end of the member it is called **EPISTROPHE**, or *conversio*; as, *Pænos Populus Romanus justitiâ vicit, armis vicit, liberalitate vicit,* Cic. Sometimes both the former occur in the same sentence, and then it is called **SYMPLOCE**, or *Complexio*; as, *Quis legem tulit? Rullus, Quis, &c.* Rullus, Cic.

When the same word is repeated in the beginning of the first clause of a sentence, and in the end of the latter, it is called **EPANALEPSIS**; as, *Vidimus victoriam tuam præliorum exitu terminatam; gladium vaginâ vacuum in urbe non vidimus,* Cic. pro Marcello.

The reverse of the former is called **ANADAPLOSIS**, or *Reduplicatio*; as, *Hic tamen vivit; vivit! imo in senatum venit,* Cic.

When that which is placed first in the foregoing member, is repeated last in the following, and the contrary, it is called **EPANODOS**, or *Regressio*; as, *Crudelis tu quoque mater; Crudelis mater magis an puer improbus ille? Improbus ille puer, crudelis tu quoque mater,* Virg.

The passionate repetition of the same word in any part of a sentence, is called **EPIZEUXIS**; as, *Excitate, excitate eum ab inferis,* Cic. *Fuit, fuit ista virtus, &c.* Id. *Me, me adsum qui feci, in me convertite ferrum,* Virg. *Bella, horrida bella,* Id. *Ibimus, ibimus,* Hor.

When we proceed from one thing to another, so as to connect by the same word the subsequent part of a sentence with the preceding, it is called **CLIMAX**, or *Gradatio*; as, *Africano virtutem industria, virtus gloriam gloria æmulos comparavit,* Cic.

When the same word is repeated in various cases, moods, genders, numbers, &c. it is called **POLYPTOTON**; as, *Pleni sunt omnes libri, plenæ sapientium voces, plena exemplorum vetustas,* Cic. *Littora littoribus contraria, fluctibus undas imprecor, arma armis,* Virg. To this is usually referred what is called **SYNONYMYA**, or the using of words of the same import, to express a thing more strongly; as, *Non feram, non patiar, non sinam,* Cic. *Promitto, recipio, spondeo,* Id. Also **EXPOSITIO**, which repeats the same thought in different lights.

When a word is repeated, the same in sound but not in sense, it is called **ANTANACLASIS**; as, *Amari jucundum est, si curetur ne quid insit amari,* Cic. But this is reckoned a defect in style, rather than a beauty. Nearly allied to this figure is the **PARONOMASIA**, or *Agnominatio*, when the words only resemble one another in sound; as, *Civem bonarum artium, bonarum partium; Censul pravo animo & parvo; De oratore arator factus,* Cic. *Amantes sunt amantes,* Ter. This is also called a **PUN**.

When two or more words are joined in any part of a sentence in the same cases or tenses, it is called **HOMOIOPOTON**, i. e. *similiter cadens*; as, *Pollet auctoritate, circumflui opibus, abundat amicis,* Cic. If the words have only a similar termination, it is called **HOMOIOTELEUTON**, i. e. *similiter desinens*; as, *Non ejusdem est facere fortiter, & vivere turpiter,* Cic.

3. FIGURES OF THOUGHT.

It is not easy to reduce figures of thought to distinct classes, because the same figure is employed for several different purposes. The principal are the *Hyperbole*, *Prosopopœia*, *Apostrôphe*, *Simile*, *Antithêsis*, &c.

1. **HYPERBOLE** is when a thing is magnified above the truth; as, when Virgil speaking of *Polyphêmus* says, *Ipse arduus altaque pulsat sidera.* So *Contracta pisces æquora sentiunt,* Hor. When an object is diminished below the truth, it is called *Tapeinôsis*. The use of extravagant Hyperboles forms what is called *Bombast*.

2. PROSOPOPEIA, or *Personification*, is when we ascribe life, sentiments, or actions, to inanimate beings, or to abstract qualities; as, *Quæ (patria) tecum. Catilina, sic agit, &c. Cic. Virtus sumit aut ponit secures, Hor. Arbore nunc aquas culpante, Id.*

3. APOSTROPHE, or *Address*, is when the speaker breaks off from the series of his discourse, and addresses himself to some person, present or absent, living or dead, or to inanimate nature, as if endowed with sense and reason. This figure is nearly allied to the former, and therefore often joined with it; as, *Trojaque nunc stares, Priamique arx alta maneres, Virg.*

4. SIMILE, or *Comparison*, is when one thing is illustrated or heightened by comparing it to another; as, *Alexander was as bold as a lion.*

5. ANTITHESIS, or *Opposition*, is when things contrary or different are contrasted, to make them appear in the most striking light; as, *Hannibal was cunning, but Fabius was cautious. Cæsar beneficiis ac munificentia magnus habebatur, integritate vitæ Cato, &c. Sall. Cat. 54. Ex hac parte pudor pugnat, illinc petulantia, &c. Cic. Similar to this figure is the Oxumōron, i. e. acute dictum; as, Amici absentes adsunt, &c. Cic. Impietate pia est, Ovid. Num capti potuere capi, Virg.*

6. INTERROGATION, (Græc. *Erotēsis*;) is a figure whereby we do not simply ask a question, but express some strong feeling or affection of the mind in that form; as, *Quousque tandem, &c. Cic. Creditis avectos hostes? Virg. Heu! quæ me æquora possunt accipere, Id. Sometimes an answer is returned, in which case it is called Subjectio; as, Quid ergo? audacissimus ego ex omnibus? minime, Cic. Nearly allied to this is Expostulation, when a person pleads with offenders to return to their duty.*

7. EXCLAMATION, (*Ecphonēsis*;) as, *O nomen dulce libertatis! &c. Cic. O tempora, O mores! Id. O patria! O Divum domus Ilium! &c. Virg.*

8. DESCRIPTION, or *Imagery*, (*Hypotypōsis*;) when any thing is painted in a lively manner, as if done before our eyes. Hence it is also called *Vision*; as, *Videor mihi hanc urbem videre, &c. Cic. in Cat. iv. 6. Videre magnos jam videor duces, Non indecoro, pulvere sordidos, Hor. Here a change of tense is often used, as the present for the past, and conjunctions omitted, &c. Virg. xi. 637, &c.*

9. EMPHASIS is when a particular stress is laid on some word in a sentence; as, *Hannibal peto pacem, Liv. Proh! Jupiter ibit hic! Virg.*

10. EPANARTHOSIS, or *Correction*, is when the speaker either recalls or corrects what he had last said ; as, *Filium habui, ah! quid dixi habere me? imò habui*, Ter.

11. PARALEPSIS, or *Omission*, is when one pretends to omit or pass by what he, at the same time declares.

12. APARITHMESIS, or *Enumeration*, is when what might be expressed in a few words, is branched out into several parts.

13. SYNATHROISMUS, or *Coacervatio*, is the crowding of many particulars together ; as,

———*Faces in castra tulissem,
Implessemque foros flammis, natumque, patremque,
Cum genere extinxem, memet super ipsa dedissem.* Virg.

14. *Incrementum*, or CLIMAX in sense, is when one number rises above another to the highest ; as, *Facinus est vincire civem Romanum, scelus verberare, parricidium necare*, Cic. When all the circumstances of an object or action are artfully exaggerated, it is called AUXESIS, or *Amplification*. But this is properly not one figure, but the skilful employment of several, chiefly of the Simile and the Climax.

15. TRANSITION (*metabasis*) is when a speech is abruptly introduced ; or when a writer suddenly passes from one subject to another ; as, Horat. Od. ii. 13. 13. In strong passion, a *change of person* is sometimes used ; as, Virg. *Æn.* iv. 365, &c. xi. 406, &c.

16. SUSPENSIO, or *Sustenatio*, is when the mind of the hearer is long kept in suspense ; to which the Latin inversion of words is often made subservient.

17. CONCESSIO is the yielding of one thing to obtain another ; as, *Sit fur, sit sacrilegus, &c. at est bonus imperator*, Cic. in Verrem, v. 1. PROLEPSIS, *Prevention* or *Anticipation*, is when an objection is started and answered. ANACOINOSIS, or *Communication*, is when the speaker deliberates with the judges or hearers ; which is also called *Diaporësis* or *Addubitatio*. LICENTIA, or the pretending to assume more freedom than is proper, is used for the sake of admonishing, rebuking, and also flattering ; as, *Vide quam non reformidem, &c.* Cic. pro Ligario. APOSIOPESIS, or *Concealment*, leaves the sense incomplete ; as, *Quos ego — sed præstat motos componere fluctus*, Virg.

18. SENTENTIA, (*gnome*), a sentiment, is a general maxim concerning life or manners, which is expressed in various forms ; as, *Otium sine literis mors est*, Seneca. *Adeo in teneris assuescere multum est*, Virg. *Probitas laudatur & alget ; Misera est magni, custodia censûs ; Nobilitas sola est atque unica virtus*, Juv.

As most of these figures are used by orators, and some of them only in certain parts of their speeches, it will be proper that the learner know the parts into which a regular formal oration is commonly divided. These are, 1. The *Introduction*, the *Exordium* or *Præmium*, to gain the good-will and attention of the hearers: 2. The *Narration*, or *Explication*: 3. The argumentative part, which includes, *Confirmation* or proof, and *Confutation* or refuting the objections and arguments of an adversary. The sources from which arguments are drawn, are called *Loci*, topics; and are either intrinsic or extrinsic; common or peculiar. 4. The *Peroration*, *Epilogue*, or *Conclusion*.

THE QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES.

The quantity of a syllable is the space of time taken up in pronouncing it.

That part of grammar which treats of the quantity and accent of Syllables, and of the measures of verse, is called **PROSODY**.

Syllables, with respect to their quantity, are either *long* or *short*.

A long syllable, in pronouncing, requires double the time of a short; as, *tēndĕrĕ*.

Some syllables are *common*: that is, sometimes long, and sometimes short: as the second syllable in *volucris*.

A vowel is said to be long or short by nature, which is always so by custom, or by the use of the poets.

In polysyllables or long words, the last syllable except one is called the *Penultima*, or, by contraction, the *Penult*, and the last syllable except two the *Antepenultima*.

When the quantity of a syllable is not fixed by some particular rule, it is said to be long or short by *authority*; that is, according to the usage of the poets. Thus *le* in *lēgo*, is said to be short by authority, because it is always made short by the Latin poets.

In most Latin words of one or two syllables, according to our manner of pronouncing, we can hardly distinguish by the ear a long syllable from a short. Thus *le* in *lēgo* and *lēgi* seem to be sounded equally long; but when we pronounce them in composition, the difference is obvious; thus, *perlēgo*, *perlēgi*; *relēgo*, *-ĕre*; *relēgo*, *-āre*, &c.

The rules of quantity are either *General* or *special*. The former apply to all syllables, the latter only to some certain syllables.

GENERAL RULES.

I. A vowel before another vowel is short ; as,

Mēus, aliūs : so *nihil* ; *h*, in verse, being considered only as a breathing. In like manner, in English, *crēate, bēhave*.

Exc. 1. *I* is long in *fio, fiēbam, &c.* unless when followed by *r* ; as, *fiēri, fiērem* ; thus,

Omnia jam fient, fiēri, quæ posse negabam, Ovid.

Exc. 2. *E* having an *i* before and after it, in the fifth declension, is long ; as, *speciēi*. So is the first syllable in *āer, diūs, ēheu*, and the penultima in *aulāi, terrāi, &c.* in *Pompēi, Cūi*, and such like words ; but we sometimes find *Pompei* in two syllables, *Horat. Od. II. 7.*

Exc. 3. The first syllable in *ohe* and *Diana* is common : so likewise is the penult of genitives in *ius* ; as, *illius, unius, &c.* to be read long in prose. *Alius*, in the genit. is always long, as being contracted for *alius* ; *alterius*, short.

In Greek words, when a vowel comes before another, no certain rule concerning its quantity can be given.

Sometimes it is short ; as, Danæ, Idæa, Sophiā, Symphoniā, Simōis, Hýades, Phæon, Deucaliōn, Pygmalion, Thebæis, &c.

Often it is long ; as, Lycæon, Machæon, Didymæon ; Amphion, Arion, Ixion, Pandion, Nais, Lais, Achæia ; Briséis, Cadméis ; Latōus, & Latōis, Myrtōus, Nerēus, Priamēus, Achelōus, Minōus ; Archelāus, Menelāus, Amphiarāus ; Æneās, Penēus, Epēus, Acrisionēus, Adamantēus, Phœbēus, Gigantēus ; Darius, Basirius, Eugenius, Bacchius ; Cassiopēa, Cæsarēa, Chæronēa, Cytherēa, Galatēa, Laodicea, Medea, Panthēa, Penelopēa ; Clio, Enyo, Elegia, Iphigenia, Alexandria, Thalia, Antiochia, idololatria, litania, politia, &c. Læertes, Dēiphobus, Dēijanira, Trōes, hērōes, &c.

Sometimes it is common ; as, Chorea, Platea, Malea, Nereides, canopeum, Orion, Geryon, Eos, eōus, &c. So in foreign words, Michael, Israel, Raphael, Abraham, &c.

The accusative of nouns in *eus* is usually short ; as, *Orphēa, Salmonēa, Capharēa, &c.* but sometimes long ; as, *Idomenēa, Ilionēa, Virg.* Instead of *Elegia, Cytherēa*, we find *Elegēia, Cythērēia, Ovid.* But the quantity of Greek words cannot be properly understood without the knowledge of Greek ; yet the following rules may be useful :

1. Greek words ending in *ais, eis, ois, æon, and ion*, for the most part lengthen the penult.

2. *Lais* ending Greek words makes two syllables, and has *z* long ; as, *Arche-lais, &c.*

In English, a vowel before another is also sometimes lengthened ; as, *science, idæa.*

II. A vowel before two consonants, or before a double* consonant is long (*by position, as it is called* ;) as,

ārma, fallo, āxis, gāza, māior ; the compounds of *jugum* excepted ; as, *bijūgus, quadrijūgus, &c.*

* *X, z, and j*, are double consonants ; *x* sounds like *ks* or *cs* ; *z* like *ds* ; and *j* nearly like *d* and soft *g*.

When the foregoing word ends in a short vowel, and the following begins with two consonants or a double one, that vowel is sometimes lengthened by position; as,

Ferte citi flammas, date velā, scandite muros, Virg.

But this rarely occurs.

¶ A vowel ending monosyllables is long; but enclitics, *quē, nē*, (interrogatives), also *vē, cē, te*, and *pte*, are short: *nē*, lest, is long.

All nouns of one syllable ending with a consonant are long; as, *jūs, mūs*; but all other monosyllabic words ending with a consonant are short; as, *īs, quīs*, &c.

For exceptions, see final syllables.

¶ A vowel before a mute and a liquid is common;

as the middle syllable in *volucris, tenebræ*, thus,

Et primò similis volūcri, mox vera volūcris. Ovid.

Nox tenēbras, profert Phœbus fugat inde tenēbras. Id.

But in prose these words are pronounced short. So *peragro, pharetra, podagra, chiragra, celebris, latebræ*, &c.

To make this rule hold, three things are requisite. The vowel must be naturally short, the mute must go before the liquid, and be in the same syllable with it. Thus, *a* in *patris* is made common in verse, because *a* in *pater* is naturally short, or always so by custom: but *a* in *matris, acris*, is always long, because long by nature or custom in *mater* and *acer*. In like manner the penult in *salūbris, ambulācrum*, is always long, because they are derived from *salus, salutis*, and *ambulātum*. So *a* in *arte, abluo*, &c. is long by position, because the mute and the liquid are in different syllables.

L and *r* only are considered as liquids in Latin words; *m* and *n* do not take place except in Greek words.

III. A contracted syllable is long; as,

Nil for *nihil*; *mī*, for *mihi*; *cōgo*, for *coāgo*; *alius*, for *aliius*; *tibicen*, for *tibiicen*; *it*, for *iit*; *sōdes*, for *si audes*; *nōlo*, for *non volo*; *bīgæ*, for *bijūgæ*; *scīlicet*, for *scire licet*, &c.

IV. A diphthong is always long; as,

Aurum, Cæsar, Eubæa, &c. Only *præ*, in composition, before a vowel is commonly short; as, *præire, præustus*; thus,

Nec totâ tamen ille prior præeunte carinâ. Virg.

Stipitibus duris agitur sudibusque præustis. Id.

But it is sometimes lengthened; as,

———— cum vacuus domino præiret Arion. *Statius.*

In English, we pronounce several of the diphthongs short, by sinking the sound of one vowel; but then there is properly no diphthong.

SPECIAL RULES.

I. CONCERNING THE FIRST AND MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

Preterites and Supines of Two Syllables.

V. Preterites of two syllables lengthen the former syllable; as, *Vēni, vīdi, vīci*.

Except *bibi*, *scīdi*, from *scindo*, *fīdi*, from *findo*, *tūli*, *dēdi*, and *stēti*, which are shortened.

VI. Supines of two syllables lengthen the former syllable; as, *Vīsum*, *cāsum*, *mōlum*.

Except *sātum*, from *sēro*; *cītum*, from *cīeo*; *lītum*, from *līno*; *sītum*, from *sīno*; *stātum*, from *sisto*; *ītum*, from *eo*; *dātum*, from *do*; *rūtum*, from the compounds of *ruo*; *quītum*, from *queo*; *rātus*, from *reor*.

OBS. 1. Also fut. active and perf. passive participles generally have the first syllable long; as, *vīsurus*, *vīsus*; *mōturus*, *mōtus*, &c.

OBS. 2. Supines in *ūtum*, of more syllables than two, lengthen the penult; as, *solūtum*, from *solvo*. Participles in *ūrus* lengthen the penult *u*; as, *lectūrus*.

Also polysyllabic supines in *itum*, from preterites in *ivi*, lengthen the *i*; as, *petitum*, from *peto*; but all others in *itum*, (except *recensitum*,) shorten the penult *i*; as, *monītum*, *tacītum*, from *moneo-ui* and *taceo-ui*.

Preterites which double the First Syllable.

VII. Preterites which double the first syllable, have both the first syllables short; as,

Cēcīdi, *tētīgi*, *pēpūli*, *pēpēri*, *dīdīci*, *tūtūdi*: except *cēcīdi*, from *cædo*; *pēpēdi*, from *pēdo*; and when two consonants intervene; as, *fēfelli*, *tētēdi*, &c.

INCREASE OF NOUNS.

A noun is said to increase, when it has more syllables in any of the oblique cases than in the nominative; as, *rex*, *rēgis*. Here *re* is called the *increase* or *crement*, and so through all the other cases. The last syllable is never esteemed a crement.

Some nouns have a double increase, that is, increase by more syllables than one; as, *iter*, *itīnēris*.

A noun in the plural is said to increase, when in any case it has more syllables than the genitive singular; as, *gener*, *genēri*, *genērōrum*; or nominative plural; as, *sedes*, *sedibus*.

Nouns of the first, fourth, and fifth declension, do not increase in the singular number, unless where one vowel comes before another; as, *fructus*, *fructūi*; *res*, *rēi*; which fall under Rule I.

¶ In nouns of the second declension singular number, the

increase is short ; as, *gener, genĕri ; vir, vĭri ; prosper, prospĕra, prospĕrum*, gen. *prospĕri* ; where the nominative, fem. and neut., as in all adjectives, having a syllable more than the masculine, may be said to increase.

But *Iber*, an inhabitant of Iberia, makes *Ibĕri* long ; so its compound, *Celtiber, Celtibĕri*.

Third Declension.

VIII. Nouns of the third declension which increase, make *a* and *o* long ; *e, i, and u* short ; as, *Pietātis, honōris ; muliĕris, lapīdis, murmūris*.

The chief exceptions from this rule are marked under the formation of the genitive in the third declension. But here, perhaps, it may be proper to be more particular.

A.

A noun in A shortens *atis* in the genitive ; as, *dogma, -ātis ; poema, -ātis*.

O.

O shortens *inis*, but lengthens *ĕnis* and *ōnis* ; as, *Cardo, -inis ; Virgo, -inis ; Anio, -ĕnis ; Cicero, -ōnis*. Gentile or patrial nouns vary their quantity. Most of them shorten the genitive ; as, *Macĕdo, -ōnis ; Saxo, -ōnis*. Some are long ; as, *Suessiōnes, Vettōnes*. *Brittones* is common.

I. C. D.

I shortens *itis* ; as, *Hydromĕli, -itis*. *Ec* lengthens *-ĕcis* ; as, *Halec, -ĕcis*.

A noun in D shortens the crement ; as, *David, -idis*.

L.

Masculines in AL shorten *ālis* ; as, *Sal, sālis ; Hannibal, -ālis ; Hasdrubal, -ālis* ; but neuters lengthen it ; as, *animal, -ālis*.

Sōlis, from *sol*, is long, also Hebrew words in *el* ; as, *Michael, -ĕlis*. Other nouns in L shorten the crement ; as, *Virgil, -ilis ; consul, -ūlis*.

N.

Nouns in ON vary their crement. Some lengthen it ; as, *Helicon, -ōnis ; Chiron, -ōnis*. Some shorten it ; as, *Memnon, -ōnis ; Actæon, -ōnis*.

EN shortens *inis* ; as, *flumen, -inis ; tibācen, -inis*. Other nouns in E lengthen the penult. AN *ānis* ; as, *Titan, -ānis* ; EN *ĕnis* ; as, *Siren, -ĕnis* ; In *īnis* ; as, *delphin, -inis* ; YN *īnis* ; as, *Phorcyn, -īnis*.

R.

1. Neuters in AR lengthen *aris* ; as, *calcar, -āris*. Except the following : *bauchar, -āris ; jubar, -āris ; nectar, -āris*. Also the adjective *par, pārīs*, and its compounds, *impar, -āris ; dispar, -āris, &c.* But masculines in *ar* shorten *āris* ; as, *Cæsar, Cæsāris ; Hamilcar, -āris ; lar, lārīs*.

2. The following nouns in R lengthen the genitive ; *Nar, nārīs*, the name of a river ; *fur, fūrīs ; ver, vērīs* : Also *Recimer, -ĕris ; Byzer, -ĕris ; Ser, Sērīs ; Iber, -ĕris*, proper names.

3. Greek nouns in TER lengthen *teris* ; as, *crater, -ĕris ; character, -ĕris*. Except *æther, -ĕris*.

4. OR lengthens *oris* ; as, *amor, -ōris*. Except neuter nouns ; as, *marmor, -ōris ; æquor, -ōris* ; Greek nouns in *tor* ; as, *Hector, -ōris ; Actor, -ōris ; rhetor, -ōris* : Also *arbor, -ōris* and *memor, -ōris*.

5. Other nouns in R shorten the genitive ; ER *eris* of any gender ; as, *æer, aĕris ; mulier, -ĕris ; cadāver, -ĕris ; ūter*, anciently *itĕner, itinĕris ; verbĕris*, from the obsolete *verber*. UR *uris* ; as, *vultur, -ūris ; murmur, -ūris*. YR *yris* ; as, *Martyr, -īris*.

AS.

1. Nouns in AS, which have *atis*, lengthen the crement; as, *pietas*, -*ātis*; *Mæcenas*, -*ātis*. Except *anas*, -*ātis*.

2. Other nouns in AS shorten the crement; as, Greek nouns having the genitive in *adis*, *ātis*, and *ānis*; thus, *Pallas*, -*ādīs*; *artocreas*, -*ēātis*; *Melas*, -*ānis*, the name of a river. So *vas*, *vādīs*; *mas*, *māris*: But *vas*, *vāsīs*, is long.

ES.

ES shortens the crement; as, *miles*, -*itis*; *Ceres*, -*ēris*; *pes*, *pēdis*.

Except *locuples*, -*ētis*; *quies*, -*ētis*; *mansues*, -*ētis*; *hæres*, -*ēdis*; *merces*, -*ēdis*.

IS.

Nouns in IS shorten the crement; as, *lapis*, -*idis*; *Sanguis*, -*inis*; *Phyllis*, -*idis*.

Except *Glis*, *gliris*; and Latin nouns which have *itis*; as, *lis*, *litis*; *dis*, *dītis*; *Quiris*, -*itis*; *Samnis*, -*itis*: But *Charis*, a Greek noun, has, *Charītis*.

The following also lengthen the crement; *Crenis*, -*idis*; *Psophis*, -*idis*; *Nesis*, -*idis*, proper names. And Greek nouns in *is*, which have also *in*; as, *Salāmis*, or *in*, *Salamīnis*.

OS.

Nouns in OS lengthen the crement; as, *nepos*, -*ōtis*; *flos*, *flōris*.

Except *Bos*, *bōvis*; *compos*, -*ōtis*; and *impos*, -*ōtis*.

US.

US shortens the crement; as, *tempus*, -*ōris*; *tripus*, -*ōdis*.

Except nouns which have *ūdis*, *ūris*, and *ūtis*; as, *incus*, -*ūdis*; *jus*, *jūris*; *salus*, -*ūtis*. But *Ligus* has *Ligūris*; the obsolete *pecus*, *pecūdis*; and *intercus*, -*ūtis*.

The neuter of the comparative has, -*ōris*; as, *melius*, -*ōris*.

YS.

YS shortens *ydis* or *ydos*; as, *chlamys*, -*ŷdis* or -*ŷdos*; and lengthens *ynis*; as, *Trachys*, -*ŷnis*.

BS. PS. MS.

Nouns in S, with a consonant going before, shorten the penult of the genitive; as, *cælebs*, -*ibis*; *inops*, -*ōpis*; *hiems*, *hiēmīs*.

Except *Cyclops*, -*ōpis*; *seps*, *sēpis*; *gryps*, *grŷphīs*; *Cecrops*, -*ōpis*; *plebs*, *plēbīs*; *hydrops*, -*ōpis*.

T.

T shortens the crement; as, *caput*, -*itis*; so *occiput*, -*itis*.

X.

1. Nouns in X, which have the genitive in *gis*, shorten the crement; as, *conjux*, -*ūgis*; *remex*, -*igis*; *Allobrox*, -*ōgis*; *Phryx*, *Phrŷgis*. But *lex*, *lēgis*, and *rex*, *rēgis*, are long; and likewise *frūgis*.

2. Ex shortens *icis*; as, *vertex*, -*icis*; except *vibex*, -*icis*.

3. Other nouns in X lengthen the crement; as, *pax*, *pācis*; *radix*, -*icis*; *vox*, *vōcis*; *lux*, *lūcis*; *Pollux*, -*ūcis*, &c.

Except *fācis*, *nēcis*, *vīcis*, *prēcis*, *calicis*, *cilicis*, *pīcis*, *fornīcis*, *nīvis*, *Cappadōcis*, *dūcis*, *nūcis*, *crūcis*, *trūcis*, *onŷchis*, *Erŷcis*, *mastŷx*, -*ŷchis*, the resin of the *lentiscus*, or *mastich-tree*, and many others, whose quantity can only be ascertained by authority.

4. Some nouns vary the crement; as, *Syphax*, -*ācis*, or -*ācis*; *Sandŷx*, -*icis*, or -*icis*; *Bebryx*, -*ŷcis*, or -*ŷcis*.

Increase of the Plural Number.

IX. Nouns of the plural number which increase, make *A*, *E*, and *O*, long; but shorten *I* and *U*; as,

Musārum, *rērum*, *dominōrum*; *rēgibus*, *portūbus*: except *bōbus* or *būbus*, contracted for *bōvibus*, by Syncope.

INCREASE OF VERBS.

A verb is said to increase, when any part has more syllables than the second person singular of the present of the indicative active; as, *amas*, *amāmus*, where the second syllable *ma* is the *increase* or *crement*; for the last syllable is never called by that name.

A verb often increases by several syllables; as, *amas*, *amābāmini*; in which case it is said to have a *first*, *second*, or *third increase*.

X. In the increase of verbs, *a*, *e*, and *o*, are long; *i* and *u* short; as,

Amāre, *docēre*, *amātōte*; *legimus*, *sūmus*, *volūmus*.

The poets sometimes shorten *dēderunt* and *stēterunt*; and lengthen *rīmus* and *rītis*, in the future of the subjunctive; as, *transierītis aquas*, Ovid. All the other exceptions from this rule are marked in the formation of the verb.

¶ But to be more explicit, observe,

1. *Do*, with its compounds, shortens the increase *da* throughout; as, *dāmus*, *dābunt*, *dāre*, *circumdāmus*, *dābunt*, &c. But the second crement of *do* is long, by general rule; as, *dābāmini*.

2. *E* is always short in the syllables *-bēris* and *-bēre*, *-ēram*, *-ēro*, *-ērim*, through every person; as, *amabēris*, vel *-abēre*. *E* before *r* is also short, in the first crement of all the present and imperfect tenses of the third conjugation; as, *legēs*, vel *-ēre*, pres. indic. pass. *Legērem* and *Legērer*, &c.

3. *I*, in the first crement of the fourth conjugation, is long; as, pres. indic. *Venīmus*; also in *velim*, *sim*, *malim*, *nelim*, *noli*, and their compounds; as, *noīto*, *velītis*, *Malītis*, *Simus*, *Possimus*, &c.

All preterites in *īvi* are long; as, *petīvi*, *quāsīvi*; but of the first crement in all preterites in *īmus*, *ī* is short; as, *venīmus*, perf. we are come. In the terminations *rīmus* and *rītis*, of the subjunctive, *i* is common; though, about this, prosodians differ.

The first or middle syllable of words which do not come under any of the foregoing rules, are said to be long or short by *authority*; and their quantity can only be discovered from the usage of the poets, which is the most certain of all rules.

REMARKS on the Quantity of the PENULT of Words.

1. Patronymics in *IDES* or *ADES* usually shorten the penult; as, *Priamīdes*, *Atlantiādes*, &c. Unless they come from nouns in *eus*; as, *Pelīdes*, *Tydidēs*, &c.

2. Patronymics, and similar words in *AIS*, *EIS*, *ITIS*, *OIS*, *OTIS*, *INE*, and *ONE*, commonly lengthen the penult; as, *Achāis*, *Ptolemāis*, *Chrysēis*, *Æneīs*, *Memphītis*, *Latōis*, *Icariōtis*, *Nerīne*, *Arisiōne*. Except *Thebāis*, and *Phocāis*; and *Nereis*, which is common.

3. Adjectives in *ACUS*, *ICUS*, *IDUS*, and *IMUS*, for the most part shorten the penult; as, *Ægyptiācus*, *academīcus*, *lepīdus*, *legitīmus*; also superlatives; as, *fortissīmus*, &c.

Except *opācus*, *amīcus*, *apricus*, *puḍicus*, *mendīcus*, *posticus*, *fidus*, *infīdus*, (but *perfidus*, of *per* and *fides*, is short) *bīmus*, *quadrīmus*, *patrīmus*, *matrīmus*, *opīmus*; and two superlatives, *īmus*, *prīmus*.

4. Adjectives in *ALIS*, *ANUS*, *ARUS*, *IVUS*, *ORUS*, *OSUS*, lengthen the penult; as, *dotālis*, *urbānus*, *avārus*, *æstivus*, *decōrus*, *arenōsus*. Except *barbārus*, *opipārus*.

5. Verbal adjectives in *ILIS*, shorten the penult; as, *agilis*, *facilis*, &c. But derivatives from nouns usually lengthen it; as, *anilis*, *civilis*, *herilis*, &c. To these add *exilis*, *subtilis*; and names of months, *Aprīlis*, *Quinctilis*, *Sextilis*: Except *humilis*, *parilis*; and also *similis*. But all adjectives in *atilis* are short; as, *versātilis*, *volatilis*, *umbratilis*, &c.

6. Adjectives in *INUS*, derived from inanimate things, as plants, stones, &c. also from adverbs of time, commonly shorten the penult; as, *amaracīnus*, *crocīnus*, *cedrīnus*, *fagīnus*, *oleagīnus*; *ādamantīnus*, *cristallīnus*, *crastīnus*, *pristīnus*, *perendīnus*, &c.

Other adjectives in *INUS* are long; as, *agnīnus*, *austrīnus*, *bīnus*, *clandestīnus*, *Latinus*, *marīnus*, *supīnus*, *vespertīnus*, &c.

7. Diminutives in *OLUS*, *OLA*, *OLUM*; and *ULUS*, *ULA*, *ULUM*, always shorten the penult; as, *urceōlus*, *filiōla*, *musæolum*; *lectūlus*, *rationcūla*, *corcūlum*, &c.

8. Adverbs in *TIM* lengthen the penult; as, *oppidātīm*, *virītīm*, *tribūtīm*. Except *affātīm*, *perpētīm*, and *stātīm*.

9. Desideratives in *URIO* shorten the antepenultima, which, in the second or third person is the penult; as, *esūrio*, *esūris*, *esūrit*. But other verbs in *urio* lengthen that syllable; as, *ligūrio*, *ligūris*; *scatūrio*, *scatūris*, &c.

PENULT OF PROPER NAMES.

The following proper names lengthen the penult: *Abdēra*, *Abūdus*, *Adōnis*, *Æsōpus*, *Ætōlus*, *Abāla*, *Alaricus*, *Alcides*, *Amŷclæ*, *Andronīcus*, *Anūbis*, *Archimēdes*, *Ariarāthes*, *Ariobarzānes*, *Aristīdes*, *Aristobūlus*, *Aristogiton*, *Arpīnum*, *Artabānus*; *Brachmānes*, *Busiri*, *Buthrōtus*; *Cethēgus*, *Chalcēdon*, *Cleobūlus*, *Cyrēne*, *Cythēra*, *Curētes*; *Darīci*, *Demonicus*, *Diomēdes*, *Diōres*, *Dioscūri*; *Ebūdes*, *Eriphŷle*, *Eubūlus*, *Euclides*, *Euphrātes*, *Eumēdes*, *Euripus*, *Euxīnus*; *Gargānus*, *Gætūlus*, *Granīcus*; *Heliogabālus*, *Henricus*, *Heraclīdes*, *Heraclītus*, *Hippōnax*, *Hispanus*; *Irēne*; *Lacŷdas*, *Latōna*, *Leucāta*, *Lugdūnum*, *Lycōras*, *Mandāne*, *Mausōlus*, *Maximīnus*, *Meleāger*, *Messāla*, *Messāna*, *Milētus*; *Nasica*, *Nicānor*, *Nicētas*; *Pachŷnus*, *Pandōra*, *Pelōris*, & -us, *Pharsālus*, *Phœnice*, *Polītes*, *Polyclētus*, *Polynices*, *Priāpus*; *Sarpēdon*, *Serāpis*, *Sinōpe*, *Stratonīce*, *Suffētes*; *Tigrānes*, *Thessalonica*; *Verōna*, *Veronica*.

The following are short: *Amāthus*, *Amphipōlis*, *Anabōsis*, *Anticŷra*, *Antigōnus*, & -ne, *Antilōchus*, *Antiochus*, *Antioḡa*, *Antipas*, *Antipāter*, *Antiphānes*, *Antiphātes*, *Antiphīla*, *Antiphon*, *Anŷtus*, *Apūlus*, *Areopāgus*, *Arimīnum*, *Armenus*, *Athēsis*, *Attālus*, *Attica*; *Bitūrix*, *Bructēri*; *Calāber*, *Callicrātes*, *Callistrātus*, *Candāce*, *Cantāber*, *Carneādes*, *Cherīlus*, *Chrysostōmus*, *Cleombrōtus*, *Cleomēnes*, *Corŷcos*, *Constantinopōlis*, *Cratērus*, *Cratŷlus*, *Cremēra*, *Crustumē-*

ri, Cybèle, Cyclādes, Cyzīcus; Dalmātæ, Damōcles, Dardānus, Dejóces, Dejótarus, Democritus, Demīpho, Didŷmus, Diogēnes, Drepānum, Dumnōrix; Empedōcles, Ephēsus, Evergētes, Eumēnes, Eurymēdon, Euripŷlus; Fucīnus; Gerŷōnes, Gyārus; Hecŷra, Heliopōlis, Hermiōne, Herodōtus, Hesiōdus, Hesiōne, Hippocrātes, Hippotāmos, Hypāta, Hypānis; Icārus, Icētas, Illŷris, Iphītus, Ismārus, Ithāca; Laodice, Laomēdon, Lampsācus, Lamŷrus, Lapīthæ, Leucrotīlis, Libānus, Lipāre, v. -a, Lysimāchus, Longimānus; Marāthon; Mēnālus, Marmarīca, Massagētæ, Matrōna, Megāra, Melītus, & -ta, Metropōlis, Mutīna, Mycōnus; Neōcles, Nerītos, Noricum; Omphāle; Patāra, Pegāsus, Pharnāces, Pisistrātus, Polydāmas, Polyxēna, Porsēna, or Porsenna, Praxitēles, Puteōli, Pylādes, Pythagōras; Sarmātæ, Sarsīna, Semēle, Semirāmis, Sequāni, & -a, Serīphos, Sicōris, Socrātes, Sodōma, Sotādes, Spartācus, Sporādes, Strongŷle, Stymphālus, Sybāris; Taygētus, Telegōnus, Telemāchus, Tenēdos, Tarrāco, Theophānes, Theophīlus, Tomŷrus; Urbīcus; Venēti, Vologēsus, Volūsus; Xenocrātes; Zoīlus, Zopŷrus.

The penult of several words is doubtful; thus, *Batāvi*, Lucan. *Batāvi*, Juv. & Mart. *Fortuitus*, Horat. *Fortuitus*, Mart. Some make *fortuitus* of three syllables; but it may be shortened like *gratuitus*, Stat. *Patrimus*, *matrimus*, *præstolor*, &c. are by some lengthened, and by some shortened; but for their quantity, there is no certain authority.

II. FINAL SYLLABLES.

A.

XI. *A* in the end of a word declined by cases is short; as, *Musā*, *templā*, *Tydeā*, *lampādā*.

Exc. The ablative of the first declension is long; as, *Musā*, *Æneā*; and the vocative of Greek nouns in *as*; as, *O Æneā*, *O Pallā*.

A in the end of a word not declined by cases is long; as, *Amā*, *frustrā*, *prætereā*, *ergā*, *intrā*.

Exc. *Itā*, *quā*, *ejā*, *posteā*, *putā*, (adv.) are short; and sometimes, though more rarely, the prepositions *contrā*, *ultrā*, and the compounds of *ginta*; as, *trigintā*, &c. *Contra*, and *ultra*, when adverbs, are always long.

E.

XII. *E* in the end of a word is short; as,

Natē, *sedilē*, *patrē*, *curre*, *nempē*, *antē*.]

Exc. 1. Monosyllables are long; as, *mē*, *tē*, *sē*; except these enclitic conjunctions *quē*, *vē*, *nē*; and these syllabical adjections, *ptē*, *cē*, *tē*; as, *suaptē*, *hujuscē*, *tutē*; but these may be comprehended under the general rule, as they never stand by themselves.

Exc. 2. Nouns of the first and fifth declension are long; as, *Calliōpē*, *Anchisē*, *fidē*. So *rē*, and *diē*, with their compounds *quarē*, *hodiē*, *pridiē*, *postridiē*, *quotidiē*. Also Greek nouns which want the singular, *Cetē*, *melē*, *Tempē*; and the second

person singular of the imperative of the second conjugation ; as, *Docē, manē* ; but *cave, vale, and vide*, are sometimes short.

Exc. 3. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declension are long ; as, *placidē, pulchrē, valdē*, contracted for *validē* : to these add *fermē, ferē, and ohē* ; also all adverbs of the superlative degree ; as, *doctissimē, fortissimē* : but *benē and malē* are short.

I.

XIII. *I* final is long ; as, *Dominī, patrī, docerī*.

Exc. 1. Greek vocatives are short ; as, *Alexī, Amaryllī*.

Exc. 2. The dative of Greek nouns of the third declension which increase, is common ; as, *Palladi, Minoīdi*.

Mihi, tibi, sibi, are also common : so likewise are *ibi, nisi, ubi, quasi* ; and *cui*, when a dissyllable, which in poetry is seldom the case. *Sicubi* and *necubi* are always short.

O.

XIV. *O* final is common ; as, *Virgo, Amo, quando*.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables in *o* are long ; as, *ō, dō, stō, prō*. The dative and ablative sing. of the second declension is long ; as, *librō, dominō* : also Greek nouns ; as, *Didō, and Athō*, the genit. of *Athos*, and adverbs derived from nouns ; as, *certō, falsō, paulō*. To these add *quō, eō*, and their compounds, *quōvis, quōcunque, adeō, ideō* ; likewise, *illō, idcircō, citrō, intrō, retrō, ultrō*.

Exc. 2. The following words are short : *Egō, sciō, cedō, a* defective verb, *homō, citō, illiō, immō, duō, ambō, modō*, with its compounds, *quomodō, dummodō, postmodō* ; but some of these are also found long.

Exc. 3. The gerund in *DO* in Virgil is long ; in other poets it is short. *Ergō*, on account of, is long ; *ergo*, therefore, is doubtful.

U and Y.

XV. *U* final is long ; *Y* final is short ; as, *Vultū : Molŷ*.

B, D, L, M, R, T.

XVI. *B, D, L, M, R, and T*, in the end of a word, are short ; as, *Ab, apūd, semēl, precōr, capūt*.

The following words are long: *sāl, sōl, nīl; pār*, and its compounds, *impar, dispar, &c.*; *fār, lār, Nār, cūr, fūr*; also nouns in *er* which have *ēris* in the genitive; as, *Cratēr, vēr, Ibēr*; likewise *aēr, athēr*; to which add Hebrew names; as, *Jōb, Daniēl, David*.

Also *T* is long in *It* or *At*, of the perfect tense, contracted from *Ivit, Iit*, or *avit*; as, *subīt, petit, īt, &c.*

M final anciently made the foregoing vowel short; as, *Militū octo*, Ennius. But by later poets, *m*, in the end of a word, is always cut off, when the next word begins with a vowel; thus, *Milit' octo*; except in compound words; as, *circūmāgo, circūmeo*.

C, N.

XVII. *C* and *N*, in the end of a word, are long; as,

Ac, sīc, nōn. So Greek nouns in *n*; as, *Titān, Sirēn, Salamīn; Æneān, Anchisēn, Circēn; Lacedæmōn, &c.*

The following words are short: *nēc* and *donēc*; *forsitān, ĩn, forsān, tamēn, ān, vidēn*; likewise nouns in *en*, which have *īnis* in the genitive; as, *crimēn, criminis, pectēn, tibicēn*; also in *ōn*, of Greek nouns of the second declension sing. written with an Omicron; as, *Ilīōn, Pylōn, Pelīōn*: likewise in all Greek accusatives coming from nominatives, whose final syllable is short; as, *Alexīn, Thetīn, Itījn, Parīn, Maiān, Menelaōn*; and Greek dative plurals in *-sīn*; as, *Arcasīn*.

The pronoun *hic*, and the verb *fac*, are common.

AS, ES, OS.

XVIII. *AS, ES, and OS*, in the end of a word, are long; as,

Mās, quiēs, bonōs.

The following words are short, *anās, ěs*, from *sum* and *penēs*;^{*} *ōs*, having *osis* in the genitive, *compōs*, and *impōs*; also a great many Greek nouns of all these three terminations; as, *Arcās*, and *Arcādās, herōās, Phrygēs, Arcadōs, Tenēdōs, Mēlōs, &c.* and Latin nouns in *es*, having the penult of the genitive increasing short; as, *Alēs, hebēs, obsēs*. But *Cerēs, pariēs, ariēs, abiēs*, and *pēs*, with its compounds, are long.

IS, US, YS.

XIX. *IS, US, and YS*, in the end of a word, are short; as,

Turrīs, legīs, legīmūs, annūs, Capījś.

^{*} So *ēs*, in the compounds of *sum*, present tense; as, *Potēs, Adēs, Prodēs, &c.*: but *ēs*, from *ēdo*, to eat, is long.

Exc. 1. Plural cases in *is* and *us* are long; as, *Pennīs*, *libris*, *nobīs*, *omnis* for *omnes*, *fructūs*, *manūs*: also the genitive singular of the fourth declension; as, *portūs*. But *bus* in the dat. and abl. plur. is short; as, *floribūs*, *fructibūs*, *rebūs*.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *is* are long, which have the genitive in *itis*, *inis*, or *entis*: as, *lis*, *Samnīs*, *Salamīs*, *Simoīs*. To these add the adverbs *gratis* and *forīs*; the noun *glīs* and *vīs*, whether it be a noun or a verb; also *is*, in the second person singular, when the plural has *itis*; as, *audis*, *adis*, *possis*. *Ris* in the future of the subjunctive is common.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables in *us* are long; as, *grūs*, *sūs*: also nouns which, in the genitive, have *ūris*, *ūdis*, *ūtis*, *untis*, or *ōdis*; as, *tellūs*, *incūs*, *virtūs*, *amāthūs*, *tripūs*. To these add the genitive of Greek nouns of the third declension; as, *Clītūs*, *Sapphūs*, *Mantūs*; also nouns which have *u* in the vocative; as, *Panthūs*, *Iesūs*.

Exc. 4. *Tethys* is sometimes long, and nouns in *ys*, which have likewise *yn* in the nominative; as, *Phorcys*, *Trachys*.

¶ The last syllable of every verse is common;

Or, as some think, necessarily long, on account of the pause or suspension of the voice, which usually follows it in pronunciation.

THE QUANTITY OF DERIVATIVE AND COMPOUND WORDS.

1. DERIVATIVES.

XX. Derivatives follow the quantity of their primitives; as,

Amicus, <i>from</i>	āmo.	Decōro, <i>from</i>	decus, -ōris.
Auctiōnor,	auctio, -ōnis.	Exūlo,	exul, -ūlis.
Auctōro,	auctor, -ōris.	Pāvidus,	pāveo.
Audītor,	audītum,	Quirīto,	quiris, -ītis.
Auspīcor,	auspex, -īcis.	Radīcītus,	radix, -īcis.
Caupōnor,	caupo, -ōnis.	Sospīto,	Sospes, -ītis.
Compētītor,	compētītum.	Nātura,	nātus.
Cornīcor,	cornix, -īcis.	Māternus,	māter.
Custōdio,	custos, -ōdis.	Lēgebam, &c.	lēgo.
Decūrus,	decor, -ōris.	Lēgeram, &c.	lēgi.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. Long from Short.

Dēni, <i>from</i>	dēcem.	Suspīcio, <i>from</i>	suspīcor.	Mōbillis, <i>from</i>	mōveo.
Fōmes,	fōveo.	Sēdes,	sēdeo.	Hūmor,	hūmus.
Hūmanus,	hōmo.	Sēcus,	sēcus.	Jūmentum,	jūvo.
Rēgula,	rēgo.	Pēnuria,	pēnus.	Vox, vōcis,	vōco, &c.

2. Short from Long.

Arena and <i>ārista</i> , from	<i>āreo</i> .	Lūcerna, from	<i>lūceo</i> .
Nōta and <i>nōto</i> ,	<i>nōtus</i> .	Dux, <i>dūcis</i> ,	<i>dūco</i> .
Vādum,	<i>vādo</i> .	Stābilis,	<i>stābam</i> .
Fides,	<i>fīdo</i> .	Ditio,	<i>dis, dītis</i> .
Sōpor,	<i>sōpio</i> .	Quāsillus,	<i>quālus, &c.</i>

XXI. Compounds follow the quantity of the simple words which compose them; as,

Dēdūco, of *dē* and *dūco*. So *prōfēro*, *antēfēro*, *consōlor*, *dēnōto*, *dēpecūlor*, *deprāvo*, *despēro*, *despūmo*, *desquāmo*, *enōdo*, *erūdīo*, *exūdō*, *exāro*, *expāveo*, *incēro*, *inhūmo*, *investīgo*, *prāgrāvo*, *prānāto*, *rēgēlo*, *appāro*, *appāreo*, *concāvus*, *prāgrāvis*, *dēsōlō*, *suffōco*, & *suffōco*, *diffīdit* from *diffīndo*, and *diffīdit* from *diffīdo*, *indīco* and *indico*, *permānet*, from *permāneo*, and *permānet*, from *permāno*, *effōdit*, in the present, and *effōdit* in the perfect; so *exēdit* and *exēdit*; *devēnit* and *devēnit*; *devēnīmus*, and *devēnīmus*; *reperīmus* and *reperīmus*; *effūgit* and *effūgit*, &c.

The change of a vowel or diphthong in the compound does not alter the quantity; as, *incīdo*, from *in* and *cādo*; *incīdo*, from *in* and *cādo*; *suffoco*, from *sub* and *faux*, *faucis*. Unless the letter following make it fall under some general rule; as, *ādmitto*, *pērcello*, *dēosculor*, *prōhibeo*.

Exc. 1. *Agnītum*, *cognītum*, *dējēro*, *pējēro*, *innūba*, *pronūba*, *maledīcus*, *veridīcus*, *nihilum*, *semisōpītus*; from *nōtus*, *jūro*, *nūbo*, *dīco*, *hīlum*, and *sōpio*: *ambītus*, a participle, from *ambio*, is long; but the substantives *ambītus* and *ambītio* are short. *Connubium* has the second syllable common.

Exc. 2. The preposition *PRO* is short in the following words: *prōfundus*, *prōfugio*, *prōfugus*, *prōnēpos*, *prōneptis*, *prōfestus*, *prōfari*, *prōfiteor*, *prōfānus*, *prōfecto*, *prōcella*, *prōtervus*, and *prōpāgo*, a lineage, *pro* in *prōpāgo*, a vine-stock, or shoot, is long. *Pro*, in the following words, is doubtful: *propago*, to propagate; *propīno*, *profundo*, *propello*, *propulso*, *procūro*, and *Proserpīna*. *Pro* is also short in Greek words; as, *Prōmetheus*, *prōpheta*, *Prōpontis*; but in Latin words, though often short as above, yet we most frequently find it long; as, *prōveho*, *prōmitto*.

Exc. 3. The inseparable prepositions *SE* and *DI* are long; as, *sēpāro*, *dīvello*: except *dīrīmo*, *dīsertus*. *Re* is short; as, *rēmītto*, *rēfēro*: except in the impersonal verb *rēfert*, compounded of *res* and *fero*.

Exc. 4. *E*, *I*, *O*, in the end of the former compounding word are usually shortened; as, *trēcēnti*, *nēfas*, *nēque*, *patēfacio*, &c. *Capricornus*, *omnīpotens*, *agrīcōla*, *signīfīco*, *bīformis*, *alīger*, *Trīvia*, *tubīcen*, &c. *duōdēcim*, *hōdie*, *sacrōsanc-*

tus, &c. But from each of these there are many exceptions. Thus *i* is long when it is varied by cases ; as, *quīdam*, *quīvis*, *tantīdem*, *eīdem*, &c. And when the compounding words may be taken separately ; as, *ludimagister*, *lucrīfacio*, *sīquis*, &c. Also *i* is long in compounds contracted ; as, *scīlicet*, for *scīre licet* ; *bigæ*, *quadrīgæ*, &c. ; and in the compounds of *dies* ; as, *prīdie*, *postrīdie*, *trīdium*, *merīdies*, and others : but *quotīdie* is doubtful. *Idem*, in the masc. is long, in the neuter short ; also *ubīque*, *ibīdem*. But in *ubivis* and *ubicunque*, the *i* is doubtful.

O is long in the first part of a compound Greek derived word ending in *o-mega* ; as, *Minōtaurus*, *Geōgraphus* ; it is also long in the end of the first part of words compounded with *contro*, *intro*, *retro*, and *quando*, (*quandōquidem* excepted) ; as, *intrōmitto*, &c. It is also long in *aliōqui*, *ceterōqui*, and *utrobique*.

E is also long in the end of the first part of the following compounds : *nēquam*, *nēmó*, *nēquitia*, *nēquaquam*, *nēquicquam*, *nēquando*, *sēdecim*, *mēmet*, *mēcum*, *tēcum*, *sēcum*, *vēcors*, *vēsanus*, *vidēlicet*.

U, in the end of the first part of the compound. is short ; as, *dūcenti*, *quadrūpes* ; and *y* also, in Greek compounds ; as, *Polýdamus*, *Polýphemus*, *Polýphus*.

A, in the end of the first part of a Latin compound, is long ; as, *quāre*, *trāno*, *trāduco* : but sometimes short ; as, *hexāmeter*, *catāpulta*.

ACCENT.

Accent is the tone of the voice with which a syllable is pronounced.

In every word of two or more syllables, one syllable is sounded higher than the rest, to prevent monotony, or an uniformity of sound, which is disagreeable to the ear.

When accent is considered with respect to the sense, or when a particular stress is laid upon any word, on account of the meaning, it is called *Emphāsīs*.

There are three accents, distinguished by their different sounds ; *acute*, *grave*, and *circumflex*.

1. The *acute* or *sharp* accent raises the voice in pronunciation, and is thus marked [´] ; as, *prófero*, *prófer*.

2. The *grave* or *base* accent depresses the voice, or keeps it in its natural tone ; and is thus marked [`] ; as, *doctè*. This accent properly belongs to all syllables which have no other.

The *circumflex* accent first raises and then sinks the voice in some degree on the same syllable, and is therefore placed only upon long syllables.* When written, it has this mark, made up of the two former [^]; as, *amâre*.

¶ Accents being invented to mark the tone and inflexions of the voice, are no sign of the quantity of syllables, and are thus applied to the Latin vowels.

1. Dissyllables have the first syllable accented, whatever be its quantity; as, *déos, árte, péjus, &c.*

2. Trisyllables, if the penult be short, have the antepenult accented; but if the penult be long in quantity, that has the accent; as, *cáedēre, hómīnes, Románīs.*

3. No syllable is accented further back than the antepenult; and in words of two or more syllables, the last syllable is never accented.

The accents are hardly ever marked in English books, except in dictionaries, grammars, spelling-books, or the like, where the acute accent only is used.

The accents are likewise seldom marked in Latin books, unless for the sake of distinction; as in these adverbs *aliquò, continuò, doctè, unà, &c.* to distinguish them from certain cases of adjectives, which are spelt in the same way. So *poētà, glorià*, in the ablative: *fructūs, tumultūs*, in the genitive: *nostrū, vestrū*, the genitive of *nos* and *vos*: *ergò*, on account of; *occidit*, he slew; *Pompili*, for *Pompilii*; *amàris*, for *amaveris*, &c.

VERSE.

A verse is a certain number of long and short syllables, disposed according to rule.

It is so called, because when the number of syllables requisite is completed, we always *turn* back to the beginning of a new line.

The parts into which we divide a verse, to see if it have its just number of syllables, are called *Feet*.

A verse is divided into different feet, rather to ascertain its measure, or number of syllables, than to regulate its pronunciation.

FEET.

Poetic feet are either of two, three, or four syllables. When a single syllable is taken by itself, it is called a *Cæsura*, which is commonly a long syllable.

1. Feet of two syllables.

Spondēus, consists of two long; as, *ōmnēs*.

Phyrrichius, two short; as, *dēūs*.

Iambus, a short and a long; as, *āmāns*.

Trochæus, a long and a short; as, *sērvūs*.

2. Feet of three syllables.

Dactylus, consists of a long and two short; as, *scribērē*.

Anapæstus, two short and a long; as, *piētās*.

* But monosyllables only long by position take the acute; as, *fāx*. So dissyllables generally take the acute on the penultimate; as, *pārens*; and also do polysyllables with a long penult; as, *paréntes, Aráxis, &c.*

Amphimācer, a long, a short, and a long; as, *chārītās*.
Tribrāchys, three short; as, *dōmīnūs*.

‡ Spondee comes from the Greek *Spōndē*, a libation, having been used at sacrifices, on account of its majestic gravity.

Phyrrichius is from the Greek *Pyrrikē*, a dance of armed men, invented by Pyrrhus.

Iambus is from *Iambē*, a young woman, the author of it; or from the Greek *Iapto*, to curse; as it was a foot used in invectives.

Trochee, from the Greek *trēchein*, to run. It is also called *Choree*, from *Chorus*, a company of dancers.

Dactyle, from the Greek *Daktulōs*, a finger, because in number and length its syllables agree with the number and length of the finger joints.

Anapæst, from the Greek verb *anapaio*, to invert or strike back, because it is a dactyle inverted.

Amphimacër, from the Greek *Amphi*, on both sides, and *makrōs*, long.

Tribrāchys comes from the Greek *treis*, three, and *brachus*, short, as it contains three short syllables.

Choriambus is so called because it is made up of the two feet *Choree* and *Iambus*, as, *hīstōriæ*.

The following feet are not so much used:

Molossus,	<i>dēlectānt</i> .	Antispastus,	<i>Alēxāndēr</i> .
Amphibrachys,	<i>hōnōrē</i> .	Ionicus major,	<i>calcātībūs</i> .
Bacchius,	<i>dōlōrēs</i> .	Ionicus minor,	<i>prōpērābānt</i> .
Antibacchius,	<i>pēllūntūr</i> .	Pæon primus,	<i>tēmpōrībūs</i> .
3. Feet of four syllables.		Pæon secundus,	<i>pōtēntiā</i> .
Proceleusmaticus,	<i>hōmīnībūs</i> .	Pæon tertius,	<i>ānīmātūs</i> .
Dispondeus,	<i>ōrātōrēs</i> .	Pæon quartus,	<i>cēlērītās</i> .
Dijambus,	<i>āmānītās</i> .	Epitritus primus,	<i>vōlūptātēs</i> .
Choriambus,	<i>pōntificēs</i> .	Epitritus secundus,	<i>pænītētēs</i> .
Ditrochæus,	<i>cāntilēnā</i> .	Epitritus tertius,	<i>discōridās</i> .
		Epitritus quartus,	<i>fōrtūnātūs</i> .

SCANNING.

The measuring of verse, or the resolving of it into the several feet of which it is composed, is called *Scanning*, from *scansio*, a climbing up, as if by means of these feet, step by step.

When a verse has just the number of feet requisite, it is called *Versus Acatalectus*, from the Greek *akata alēktos*, non desinens, not stopping short; if a syllable be wanting, it is called *Catalectic*, from *katalēktos*, seeming to stop, or halt by the way: if there be a syllable too much, *Hypermeter* or *Hypercatalectic*, from *hyperkatalēktos*, signifying more than its just measure.

The ascertaining whether the verse be complete, defective, or redundant, is called *Dispositio*, or *Clausula*.

DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERSE.

1. HEXAMETER.

The Hexameter, (from the Greek *hex*, six, and *mētrōn*, measure), or heroic verse, consists of six feet. Of these the fifth is a dactyle, and the sixth a spondee; all the rest may be either dactyles or spondees; as,

Lūdēre | quæ vël- | lēm cālă- | mō pēr- | mīsīt ă- | grēstī. *Virg.*
 Infān- | dūm Rē- | gīnă, jū- | bēs rēnō- | vārē dō- | lōrēm. *Id.*

A regular Hexameter line cannot have more than seventeen syllables, or fewer than thirteen.

Sometimes a spondee is found in the fifth place, whence the verse is called *Spondaic*; as,

Cāră Dē- | ūm sōbō- | lēs mă- | gnūm Jōvīs | încrē- | mēntūm. *Virg.*

This verse is used when any thing grave, slow, large, sad, or the like, is expressed. It commonly has a dactyle in the fourth place, and a word of four syllables in the end.

Sometimes there remains a superfluous syllable at the end. But this syllable must either terminate in a vowel, or in the consonant *m*, with a vowel before it; so as to be joined with the following verse, which, in the present case, must always begin with a vowel; as,

Omnĭă | Mērcūrĭ- | ō sĭmĭ- | līs vō- | cēmquē cō- | lōrēmque *Virg.*
 Et flavos crines—

Those Hexameter verses sound best, which have dactyles and spondees alternately; as,

Ludere quæ vellem calamo permisit agresti. *Virg.*
 Pinguis et ingrata premeretur caseus urbi. *Id.*

Or which have more dactyles than spondees; as,

Tityre tu patulæ recubans sub tegmine fagi.

It is esteemed a great beauty in an Hexameter verse, when, by the use of dactyles and spondees, the sound is adapted to the sense; as,

Quadrupedante putrem sonitu quatit ungula campum. *Virg.*
 Illi inter sese magna vi brachia tollunt. *Id.*
 Monstrum horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lumen ademptum.
 Accipiant inimicum imbrem, rimisque fatiscunt. *Id.*

But what deserves particular attention in scanning Hexameter verse is the *CÆSURA*, from *cædere*, to cut.

Cæsura is when, after a foot is completed, there remains a syllable at the end of a word to begin a new foot; as,

At rē-gină gră-vī jām-dudum, &c.

The *Cæsura* is variously named, according to the different parts of the Hexameter verse in which it is found. When it comes after the first foot, or falls on the third half-foot, it is called by a Greek name, *Triemimēris*: when on the fifth half-foot, or the syllable after the second foot, it is called *Penthemimēris*: when it happens on the first syllable of the fourth foot, or the seventh half-foot, it is called *Hepthemimēris*: and when on the ninth half-foot, or the first syllable of the fifth foot, it is called *Ennēemimēris*.

These names are from the Greek words *hemiseus*, a half; *meris*, a part; and the appropriate numerals, *treis*, three; *pente*, five; *hēpta*, seven; *ēnnēa*, nine; as *Triemimēris* is from *treis*, *hemiseus*, and *meris*: and so the rest.

All these different species of the *Cæsura* sometimes occur in the same verse; as,

Illē lă-tus nivē-ūm mōl-lī fūl-tūs hŷă-cīnthō. *Virg.*

But the most common and beautiful *Cæsura* is the *penthemim*, on

which some lay a particular accent or stress of the voice in reading an hexameter verse thus composed, whence they call it the *Cæsural pause*; as,

Tityre dum rede- O, brevis est via, pasce capellas. *Virg.*

When the *Cæsura* falls on a syllable naturally short, it renders it long; as, the last syllable of *fultus* in the foregoing example.

The chief melody of an hexameter verse in a great measure depends on the proper disposition of the *Cæsura*. Without this, a line consisting of the number of feet requisite, will be little else than mere prose; as,

Rōmæ moenīa tērrūt īmpīgēr Hānnībāl ārmīs. *Ennius.*

The ancient Romans, in pronouncing verse, paid a particular attention to its melody. They not only observed the quantity and accent of the several syllables, but also the different stops and pauses which the particular turn of the verse required. In modern times we do not fully perceive the melody of Latin verse, because we have now lost the just pronunciation of that language, the people of every country pronouncing it in a manner similar to their own. In reading Latin verse, therefore, we are directed by the same rules which take place with respect to English verse.

The tone of the voice ought to be chiefly regulated by the sense. All the words should be pronounced fully; and the cadence of the voice ought only to be observed, so far as it corresponds with the natural expression of the words. At the end of each line there should be no fall of the voice, unless the sense requires it; but a small pause, half of that which we usually make at a comma.

¶ Practical Rules for reading Hexameters.

1. The first and two last syllables of the verse, or line, are long; because the first is the first part of a dactyle or spondee, and the two last make a spondee.
2. The two last but two are short, unless in spondaics, because they are the two last syllables in a dactyle.
3. The last but four, unless in a spondaic line, is long, because it is the first of a dactyle.
4. A syllable between two long ones, or before or after two short ones, is long; as there cannot be less or more than two short syllables together.

Thus the student may know the quantity of many syllables without the labor of scanning: and for other sorts of verse, appropriate rules of like nature will readily suggest themselves to discriminating minds. The quantity of syllables is almost exactly the same in Latin prose as in verse; therefore let no pains be spared to learn to read both well, according to quantity.

2. PENTAMETER.

The Pentameter verse (from Greek *penta*, five, and *metron*, measure) consists of five feet. Of these, the two first are either dactyles or spondees; the third always a spondee; and the fourth and fifth an anapæstus; as,

Nātū- | ræ sēquī- | tūr sē- | mīnā quīs- | quē sūæ. *Propert.*
Cārminī- | būs vī- | vēs tēm- | pūs īn ōm- | nē mēis. *Ovid.*

But this verse is more properly divided into two hemisticks or halves; the former of which consists of two feet, either dactyles or spondees, and a cæsura; the latter, always of two dactyles and another cæsura; thus,

Nātū- | ræ sēquī- | tūr | sēmīnā | quīsquē sū- | æ.
Cārminī- | būs vī- | vēs | tēmpūs īn | ōmnē mē | is.

The Pentameter usually ends with a dissyllable, but sometimes also with a polysyllable.

3. ASCLEPIADEAN.

The Asclepiadéan verse, so called from *Asclepias*, the inventor, consists of four feet; namely, a spondee, twice a choriambus, and a pyrrhichius; as,

Mæcē- | nās ātāvīs | ēdītē rē- | gībūs. *Hor.*

But this verse may be more properly measured thus; in the first place, a spondee; in the second, a dactyle; then a cæsura; and after that two dactyles; thus,

Mæce- | nas ata- | vis | edite | regibus.

4. GLYCONIAN.

The Glyconian verse, so called from *Glycon*, has three feet; a spondee, choriambus, and pyrrhichius; as,

Nāvis | quæ tibi crē- | dītūm. *Horat.*

Or, it may be divided into a spondee and two dactyles; thus,

Navis | quæ tibi | creditum.

5. SAPPHIC and ADONIAN.

The Sapphic verse, so called from *Sappho*, the inventress, has five feet; viz. a trochee, spondee, dactyle, and two trochees; thus,

Intē- | gēr vī- | tæ, scēlē- | rīsquē | pūrūs. *Horat.*

An Adonian verse, so called from *Adon*, consists only of a dactyle and spondee; as,

Jūpītēr | urgēt. *Horat.*

6. PHERECRATIAN.

The Pherecratian verse, from *Pherecrates*, the inventor, consists of three feet, a spondee, dactyle, and spondee; thus,

Nīgrīs | æquōrā | vētīs. *Horat.*

7. PHALEUCIAN.

The Phaleucian verse, so called from the inventor, *Phalaikos*, consists of five feet; namely, a spondee, a dactyle, and three trochees; as,

Sūmmām | nēc mētū- | ās dī- | ēm, nēc | optēs. *Martial.*

8. The GREATER ALCAIC.

The Greater Alcaic, called likewise *Dactylic*, is so named from the inventor, *Alcæus*, and consists of four feet, spondee or iambus, iambus, and cæsura, then two dactyles; as,

Virtūs | rēpūl- | sæ | nēscīā | sōrdīdæ. *Horat.*

9. ARCHILOCHIAN.

The Archilochian iambic verse is so called from *Archilochus*, and consists of four feet. In the first and third place, it has either a

spondee or iambus; in the second and fourth, always an iambus; and in the end, a cæsure; as,

Nēc sū- | mīt, aūt | pōnīt | sēcū- | rēs. *Horat.*

10. The LESSER ALCAIC.

The Lesser Dactylic Alcaic consists of four feet; namely, two dactyles and two trochees; as,

Arbītrī- | ō pōpū- | lārīs | aūræ. *Horat.*

Thus, of the above kinds of verse, the two first take their names from the number of feet of which they consist; the rest from those by whom they were either first invented or frequently used.

There are several other kinds of verse, which are named from the feet by which they are most commonly measured; such as the dactylic, trochaic, anapæstic, and iambic. The last of these is most frequently used.

11. IAMBIC.

Of Iambic verse there are two kinds. The one consists of four feet, and is called by a Greek name, *Dimēter*; the other consists of six feet, and is called *Trimēter*. The reason of these names is, that among the Greeks, two feet were considered only as one measure in iambic verse; whereas the Latins measured it by single feet, and therefore called the dimeter *quaternarius*, and the trimeter *senarius*. Originally, this kind of verse was purely iambic, *i. e.* admitted of no other feet but the iambus; thus,

Dimeter, Inār- | sīt æ- | stūō- | sīus. *Horat.*

Trimeter, Sūis | ēt ī- | psā Rō- | mā vī- | rībūs | rūīt. *Id.*

But afterwards, both for the sake of ease and variety, different feet were admitted into the uneven or odd places; that is, in the first, third, and fifth places, instead of an iambus, they used a spondee, a dactyle, or an anapæstus, and sometimes a tribrachys. We also find a tribrachys in the even places, *i. e.* in the second place, and in the fourth: for the last foot must always be an iambus; thus,

Dimeter, Cānīdī- | ā trāc- | tāvīt | dāpēs. *Horat.*

Vīdē- | rē prōpē- | rāntēs | dōmūm. *Id.*

Trimeter, Quōquō | scēlēs- | tī rūī- | tīs aūt | cūr dēx- | tērīs. *Id.*

Pāvidūm | quē lēpō- | r' aūt ād- | vēnām | lāquēō | grūēm. *Id.*

Alītī- | būš āt- | quē cānī- | būš hōmī- | cīd' Hēc- | tōrēm.

In comic writers we sometimes find an iambic verse consisting of eight feet, therefore called *Tetrameter* or *Octonarius*.

FIGURES IN SCANNING.

The several changes made upon words to adapt them to the verse are called *Figures in Scanning*. The chief of these are the *Synalæpha*, *Ecthlipsis*, *Synærësis*, *Dierësis*, *Systöle*, and *Diastöle*.

1. **SYNALÆPHA**, (from the Greek *sun*, together, and *aleipho*, to be daub or anoint,) is the cutting off of a vowel or diphthong, when the next word begins with a vowel; as,

Conticuere omnes, intentique ora tenebant. *Virg.*

to be scanned thus,

Cōnticū- | ēr' ōm- | nēs īn- | tēntī- | qu' ōrā tē- | nēbānt.

The *Synalæpha* is sometimes neglected, and seldom takes place in the interjections, *ô, heu, ah, proh, vœ, vah, hei*: as,
O pater, ô hominum, Divûmque æterna potestas. *Virg.*

Long vowels and diphthongs, when not cut off, are sometimes shortened; as,

Insulæ Ionio in magno, quas dira Celæno. *Virg.*

Credimus? an, qui amant, ipsi sibi somnia fingunt. *Id.*

Victor apud rapidum Simoënta sub Ilio alto.

Ter sunt conati imponere Pelio Ossam.

Glauco et Panopææ, et Inoo Melicertæ.

2. *ECTHLIPSIS*, derived from the Greek *ekthlibein*, to break and bruise, is when *m* is cut off, with the vowel before it in the end of a word, because the following word begins with a vowel: as,
O curas hominum! O quantum est in rebus inane! *Pers.*

thus,

O cū- | rās hōmī- | n', ō quān- | t' ēst īn | rēbūs īn- | ānē.

Sometimes the *Synalæpha*, and *Ecthipsis*, are found at the end of a verse; as,

Sternitur infelix alieno vulnere, cælumque

Adspicit, et dulces moriens reminiscitur Argos. *Virg.*

Jamque iter emensi, turres ac tecta Latinorum

Ardua cernebant juvenes, murosque subibant. *Id.*

These verses are called *Hypermetri*, because a syllable remains to be carried to the beginning of the next line; thus, *qu' Adspicit*; *r' Ardua*.

3. *SYNÆRESIS*, from the Greek *sunaireō*, to draw into one, is the contraction of two syllables into one, which is likewise called *Cra-sis*; as, *Phæthon*, for *Phaethon*. So *ēi* in *Thesei*, *Orphei*, *deinde*, *Pompei*; *ūi*, in *huic*, *cui*; *ōi*, in *proinde*; *ēâ*, in *aureâ*; thus,

Notus amor Phædræ, nota est injuria Thesei. *Ovid.*

Proinde tona eloquio, solitum tibi—*Virg.*

Filius huic contra, torquet qui sidera mundi. *Id.*

Aureâ percussus virgâ, versumque venenis. *Id.*

So in *antehac*, *eadem*, *alvearia*, *deest*, *deerit*, *vehemens*, *anteit*, *eadem*, *alveo*, *graveolentis*, *omnia*, *semianimis*, *semihomo*, *fluviorum*, *totius*, *promontorium*, &c.; as,

Unâ eâdemque viâ sanguisque animusque ferentur. *Virg.*

Seu lento fuerint alvearia vimine texta. *Id.*

Vilis amicorum est annona, bonis ubi quid deest. *Hor.*

Divitis uber agri. Troiæque opulentia deerit. *Virg.*

Vehemens et liquidus puroque simillimus amni. *Hor.*

Te semper anteit dira necessitas. *Alcaic. Hor.*

Uno eodemque igni, sic nostro Daphnis amore. *Virg.*

Cum refluit campis, & jam se condidit alveo. *Id.*

Inde ubi venêre ad fauces graveolentis Averni. *Id.*

Bis patriæ cecidere manus: quin protinus omnia. *Id.*

Cædit semianimus Rutulorum calcibus arva. *Id.*

Semihominis Caci facies quam dira tenebat. *Id.*

Fluviorum rex Eridanus, camposque per omnes. *Id.*
 Magnanimosque duces, totiusque ex ordine gentis. *Id.*
 Inde legit Capreas, promontoriumque Minervæ. *Ovid.*

To this figure may be referred the changing of *i* and *u* into *j* and *v*, or pronouncing them in the same syllable with the following vowel; as in *genva, tenvis; arjetat, tenvia, abjete, pitvita; parjetibas, Nasidjenus*; for *genua, tenuis, &c.*; as,

Propterea qui corpus aquæ naturaque tenvis. *Lucr.*
 Genva labant, gelido concrevit frigore sanguis. *Virg.*
 Arjetat in portas & duros objice postes. *Id.*
 Velleraque vi foliis depectant tenvia Seres. *Id.*
 Ædificant, sectâque intexunt abjete costas. *Id.*
 Præcipuè sanus, nisi cum pitvita molesta est. *Hor.*
 Parjetibusque premunt arctis, & quatuor addunt. *Virg.*
 Ut Nasidjeni juvit te cœna beati? *Hor.*

4. DIÆRESIS, from the Greek *diaireo*, to divide, divides one syllable into two; as, *aulâi*, for *aulæ*; *Trôïæ*, for *Trojæ*; *Persêus*, for *Perseus*; *milius*, for *milvus*; *soliuit*, for *solvit*; *voliuit*, for *volvit*; *aquæ, suetus, suasit, suevos, relanguit, reliquas*, for *aquæ, suetus, &c.* as,

Aulâi in medio libabant pocula Bacchi. *Virg.*
 Stamina non ulli dissoluenda Deo. *Pentam. Tibullus.*
 Debuerant fusos evoluisse suos. *Id. Ovid.*
 Quæ calidum faciunt aquæ tactum atque vaporem. *Lucr.*
 Cum mihi non tantum furesque feræque sietæ. *Horat.*
 Atque alios alii inridant, Veneremque sua lent. *Lucr.*
 Fundat ab extremo flavos Aquilone Suevos. *Lucan.*
 Imposito fratri moribunda relanguit ore. *Ovid.*
 Reliquas tamen esse vias in mente patenteis. *Lucr.*

5. SYSTOLE, from the Greek *sustellein*, to contract, is when a long syllable is made short; as the penult in *tulerunt*; thus,
 Matri longa decem tulerunt, fastidia menses. *Virg.*

6. DIASTOLE, from the Greek *diastellein*, to lengthen, is when a syllable usually short is made long; as the last syllable in *amor*, in the following verse:

Considant, sitantus amôr, et mœnia condant. *Virg.*

To these may be subjoined the *Figures of Diction*, as they are called, which are chiefly used by the poets, though some of them likewise frequently occur in prose.

1. When a letter or syllable is added to the beginning of a word, it is called PROTHESIS;* as, *gnavus*, for *navus*; *tetûli*, for *tuli*. When a letter or syllable is interposed in the middle of a word, it is called EPENTHESIS;† as, *relligio*, for *religio*; *induperator*, for *imperator*. When a letter or syllable is added to the end, it is called PARAGOGE;‡ as, *dicier*, for *dici*.

2. If a letter or syllable be taken from the beginning of a word, it is called APHÆRESIS;§ as, *natus*, for *gnatus*; *tenderant*, for *tenderant*. If from the middle of a word, it is called SYNCOPE;|| as,

* The names of the Figures of Diction are from the Greek, as follows:

* *Prothesis*, from *Prosthêmi*, to prefix.

† *Epenthêmi*, to put in or insert.

‡ *Paragô*, to lengthen out.

§ *Sphaireo*, to take away.

|| *Sunkoptô*, to cut out.

dixti, for *dixisti*; *deum*, for *deorum*. If from the end, *Apocope*; † as, *viden'*, for *videsne*; *Antonî*, for *Antonii*.

3. When a letter or syllable is transposed, it is called *METATHE-SIS*; ** as, *pistris*, for *pristis*; *Lybia*, for *Libya*. When one letter is put for another, it is called *ANTITHESIS*; †† as, *faciundum*, for *fuciendum*; *olli*, for *illi*; *voltis*, for *vultis*.

DIFFERENT KINDS OF POEMS.

Any work composed in verse is called a *Poem*, (*Poema*, or *Carmen*.)

Poems are called by various names, from their subject, their form, the manner of treating the subject, and their style.

1. A poem on the celebration of a marriage is called an *EPITHALAMIUM*; on a mournful subject, an *ELEGY* or *LAMENTATION*; in praise of the Supreme Being, a *HYMN*; in praise of any person or thing, a *PANEGYRIC* or *ENCOMIUM*; on the vices of any one, a *SATIRE* or *INVECTIVE*; a poem to be inscribed on a tomb, an *EPITAPH*, &c.

2. A short poem adapted to the lyre or harp, is called an *ODE*, whence such compositions are called *Lyric poems*: a poem in the form of a letter is called an *EPISTLE*; a short witty poem, playing on the fancies or conceits which arise from any subject, is called an epigram; as those of Catullus and Martial. A sharp unexpected lively turn of wit in the end of an epigram, is called its *Point*. A poem expressing the moral of any device or picture, is called an *EMBLEM*. A poem containing an obscure question to be explained, is called an *ÆNIGMA* or *RIDDLE*.

When a character is described, so that the first letters of each verse, and sometimes the middle and final letters, express the name of the person or thing described, it is called an *ACROSTIC*; as the following on our Savior:

I nter cuncta micans I gniti sidera cal I,
E xpellit tenebras E toto Phœbus ut orb E;
S ic cæcas removet JESVS caliginis umbra S,
V ivificansque simul V ero præcordia mot V,
S olem justitiæ, S ese probat esse beati S.

3. From the manner of treating a subject, a poem is either *Exegetic*, *Dramatic*, or *Mixt*.

The *Exegetic*, where the poet always speaks himself, is of three kinds, *Historical*, *Didactic*, or *Instructive*, (as the *Satire* or *Epistle*); and *Descriptive*.

Of the *Dramatic*, the chief kinds are *COMEDY*, representing the actions of ordinary life, generally with a happy issue; and *TRAGEDY*, representing the actions and distresses of illustrious personages, commonly with an unhappy issue. To which may be added *Pastoral poems*, or *BUCOLICS*, representing the actions and conversations of shepherds; as most of the eclogues of Virgil.

The *Mixt* kind is where the poet sometimes speaks in his own person, and sometimes makes other characters to speak. Of this kind is chiefly the *EPIC* or *HEROIC* poem, which treats of some one great transaction of some great illustrious person, with its various circumstances; as the wrath of Achilles in the *Iliad* of Homer; the settlement of Æneas in Italy, in the *Æneid* of Virgil; the fall of man in the *Paradise Lost* of Milton, &c.

4. The style of poetry, as of prose, is of three kinds, the simple, ornate, and sublime.

COMBINATION OF VERSES IN POEMS.

In long poems, there is commonly but one kind of verse used. Thus Virgil, Lucretius, Horace in his *Satires* and *Epistles*, Ovid in his *Metamorphoses*, Lucan, Silius Italicus, Valerius Flaccus, Juvenal, &c. always use Hexameter verse; Plautus, Terence, and other

† *Apokoptō*, to cut off.

** *Metatithēmi*, to transfer or transpose

†† *Antitithēmi*, to place instead of.

writers of Comedy, generally use the Iambic, and sometimes the Trochaic. It is chiefly in shorter poems, particularly those which are called Lyric poems, as, the odes of Horace and the Psalms of Buchanan, that various kinds of verse are combined.

A poem which has only one kind of verse, is called by a Greek name, *Monocolon*, sc. *poema*, v. *carmen*; or *Monocolos*, sc. *ode*, from the Greek *monos*, alone; and *kōlōn*, a member; (and so of the other, with *dis*, twice, *tris*, thrice); that which has two kinds, *Dicolon*; and that which has three kinds of verse, *Tricolon*.

If the same sort of verse return after the second line, it is called *Dicolon Distrophon*; as when a single Pentameter is alternately placed after an *Hexameter*, which is named *Elegiac verse*, (*carmen Elegiæcum*), because it was first applied to mournful subjects; thus,

Flebilis indignos, Elegiæ solve capillos;
Ah! nimis ex vero, nunc tibi nomen erit. *Ovid.*

This kind of verse is used by Ovid in all his other works except the *Metamorphoses*; and also for the most part by Tibullus, Propertius, &c.

When a poem consists of two kinds of verse, and after three lines returns to the first, it is called *Dicolon Tristrophon*; when after four lines, *Dicolon Tetraströphon*; as,

Auream quisquis mediocritatem
Diligit, tutus caret obsoleti
Sordibus tecti, caret invidendâ
Sobrius aulâ. *Horat.*

When a poem consists of three kinds of verse, and after three lines always returns to the first, it is called *Tricolon Tristrophon*; but, if it returns after four lines, it is called *Tricolon Tetraströphon*; as, when after two greater dactylic alcaic verses are subjoined an archilochian iambic and a lesser dactylic alcaic, which is named *Carmen Horatianum*, or Horatian verse, because it is frequently used by Horace; thus,

Virtus recludens immeritis mori
Cælum, negatâ tentat iter viâ;
Cœtusque vulgares, et udam
Spernit humum fugiente pennâ.

Any one of these parts of a poem or ode, in which every different kind of its measure or verse is comprehended, when taken by itself, is called a *Strophe*, *Stanza*, or *Staff*, from the Greek *strophe*, a turning; as at the end of the stanza you turn again to the same kind of verse.

Horace, in his Lyric compositions, uses twenty species of metre combined into nineteen different stanzas; and as in the approved editions of this poet, the method of scanning these is generally explained at the beginning of each ode and epode, any additional synopsis or key of the Horatian Metres to that which follows, is deemed quite unnecessary.

DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERSE IN HORACE AND BUCHANAN.

I. ODES and PSALMS of one kind of verse.

1. *Asclepiadæan*, See No. 3. p. 270. Hor. I. 1. IV. 8. III. 30.—
Buch. Ps. 23, 40, 80.

2. *Choriambic Alcaic Pentameter*, consisting of a spondee, three choriambuses, and a pyrrhichius or iambus: Hor. I. 11. 18. IV. 10.

3. *Iambic Trimeter*, No. 11.—Hor. Epod. 17.—Buch. Ps. 25, 94, 106.

4. *Hexameter*, No. 1. Hor. Satires and Epistles.—Buch. Ps. 1, 18, 45, 78, 85, 89, 104, 107, 132, 135.

5. *Iambic Dimeter*, No. 12.—Buch. Ps. 13, 31, 37, 47, 52, 54, 59, 86, 96, 98, 117, 148, 149, 150.

6. The *Greater Dactylic Alcaic*, No. 8.—Buch. Ps. 26, 29, 32, 49, 61, 71, 73, 143.

7. *Trochaic*, consisting of seven trochees and a syllable; admitting also a tribrachys in the uneven places, i. e. in the first, third, fifth, and seventh foot; and in the even places, a tribrachys, spondee, dactyle, and anapestus.—Buch. Ps. 105, 119, 124, 129.

8. Anapestic, consisting of four anapestuses, admitting also a spondee or dactyle; and in the last place, sometimes a tribrachys, amphimacer, or trochee.—Ps. 113.

9. *Anacreontic Iambic*, consisting of three iambuses and a syllable: in the first foot it has sometimes a spondee or anapestus; and also a tribrachys.—Ps. 131.

II. ODES and PSALMS of two kinds of verse following one another alternately.

1. *Glyconian* and *Asclepiadæan*, No. 4. and 3.—Hor. I. 3, 13, 19, 36. III. 9, 15, 19, 24, 25, 28. IV. 1, 3.—Buch. Ps. 14, 35, 43.

2. Every first line, (*Dactylico-Trochaic*), consisting of the first four feet of an hexameter verse, then three trochees or a spondee for the last; every second verse (*Iambic Archilochian*) consisting of an iambus or spondæus, an iambus, a cæsure, and then three trochees.—Hor. I. 4.

3. The first line *Hexameter*; and the second, *Alcmanian Dactylic*, consisting of the four last feet of an hexameter. Hor. I. 7, 28. Epod. 12.—Buch. Ps. 4, 111.

4. Every first line, *Aristophanic*, consisting of a choriambus, and bacchius or amphimacer: every second line, *Choriambic Alcaic*, consisting of epitritus secundus, two choriambuses, and a bacchius. Hor. I. 8.

5. The first line, (*Trochaic*), consisting of three trochees, and a cæsure; or of an amphimacer and two iambuses. The second line, *Archilochian Iambic*, No. 9. Hor. II. 18.

6. The first line, *Hexameter*; the second (*Dactylic Archilochian*) two dactyles and a cæsure, Hor. IV. 7.—Buch. Ps. 12.

7. The first line, *Iambic Trimeter*; and the second, *Iambic Dimeter*, No. 11.—Hor. Epod. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10.—Buch. Ps. 3, 6, 10, 21, 22, 27, 34, 38, 39, 41, 44, 48, 53, 62, 74, 76, 79, 87, 92, 110, 112, 115, 120, 127, 133, 134, 139, 141.

8. The first line, *Iambic Dimeter*; the second, (*Sapphic*) consists of two dactyles, a cæsure, and four iambuses, admitting also a spondæus, &c. But this verse is commonly divided into two parts: the first, the latter part of a pentameter, No. 2, and the second, iambic dimeter, No. 11. Hor. Epod. 11.

9. The first line, *Hexameter*: the second, *Iambic Dimeter*. Hor. Epod. 14, 15.—Buch. Ps. 81.

10. *Hexameter* and *Iambic Trimeter*. Hor. Epod. 16.—Buch. Ps. 2, 20, 24, 57, 60, 69, 83, 93, 95, 97, 108, 109, 118, 126, 136, 137.

11. The first line, *Sapphic*, No. 5. and the second, *Iambic Dimeter*, No. 11.—Buch. Ps. 8.

12. *Sapphic* and *Glyconian*.—Buch. Ps. 33, 70, 121, 142.

13. *Iambic Trimeter*, and *Pentameter*.—Buch. Ps. 36, 63.

14. The first line, *Hexameter*: and the second line, the three last feet of an hexameter, with a long syllable, or two short syllables before.—Buch. Ps. 68.

15. *Hexameter* and *Pentameter*, or *Elegiac verse*.—Buch. Ps. 88, 114, 137.

16. The first line, (*Trochais*), three trochees and a syllable, admitting sometimes a spondee, tribrachys, &c. The second line, *Iambic Dimeter*, No. 11.—Buch. Ps. 100.

III. ODES and PSALMS of two kinds of verse, and three or four lines in each stanza.

1. The three first lines, *Sapphic*, and the fourth, *Adonian*, No. 5. Horat. Carm. I. 2, 10, 12, 20, 22, 25, 30, 32, 38. II. 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 16. III. 8, 11, 14, 18, 20, 22, 27. IV. 2, 6, 11, *Carmen Secul.*—Buch. Ps. 5, 17, 51, 55, 65, 67, 72, 90, 101, 103.

2. The three first lines, *Asclepiadæan*, and the fourth, *Glyconian*, Hor. Carm. I. 6, 15, 24, 33. II. 12. III. 10, 16. IV. 5, 12.—Buch. Ps. 23, 42, 75, 99, 102, 144.

3. The two first lines, *Ionic Trimeter*, consisting of three *Ionici minores*; the third line, *Ionic Tetrameter*, having one *Ionicus minor* more. Hor. III. 12.

4. The two first lines have four trochees, admitting, in the second foot, a spondee, dactyle, &c. The third line the same; only wanting a syllable at the end.—Buch. Ps. 66.

5. The three first lines, *Glyconian*, No. 4, admitting also a spondee, or iambus, in the first foot; the fourth line, *Pherecratian*, No. 6.—Buch. Ps. 116, 122, 128.

IV. ODES and PSALMS of three kinds of verse, and three or four lines in each stanza.

1. The two first lines, *Asclepiadæan*, No. 3, the third line, *Pherecratian*, No. 6, and the fourth, *Glyconian*, No. 4. Hor. Carm. I. 5, 14, 21, 23. III. 7, 13. IV. 13.—Buch. Ps. 9, 64, 84, 130.

2. The two lines, *the Greater Dactylic Alcaic*, No. 8. The third, *Archilochian Iambic*, No. 9. The fourth, *the Lesser Alcaic*, No. 10. Hor. Carm. I. 9, 16, 17, 26, 27, 29, 31, 34, 35, 37. II. 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 19, 20. III. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 17, 21, 23, 26, 29. IV. 4, 9, 14, 15.—Buch. Ps. 7, 11, 15, 19, 30, 46, 50, 56, 58, 77, 82, 91, 123, 125, 140, 146.

3. The first line, *Glyconian*; the second, *Asclepiadæan*; the third a spondee, three choriambuses, and an iambus, or pyrrhichius. Buch. Ps. 16.

4. The first line, *Hexameter*; the second, *Iambic Dimeter*; and the third, two dactyles and a syllable; Hor. Epod. 13.—Buch. Ps. 138. Sometimes the two last verses are joined in one, or inverted; as, Buch. Ps. 145.

ENGLISH VERSE.

The quantity of syllables in English verse is not precisely ascertained. With regard to this, we are chiefly directed by the ear. Our monosyllables are generally either long or short, as occasion requires. And in words of two or more syllables, the accented syllable is always long.

Of English verse there are two kinds, one named *Rhyme*, and the other *Blank verse*.

In rhyme the lines are usually connected two and two, sometimes three and three, in the final syllables. Two lines following one another thus connected, are called a *Couplet*; three lines, a *Triplet*.

In blank verse similarity of sound in the final syllables is carefully avoided.

In measuring most kinds of English verse, we find long and short syllables succeeding one another alternately; and therefore the accents should rest on every second syllable.

The feet by which English verse is commonly measured, are either *Iambic*, *i. e.* consisting of a short and a long syllable; as, *āloft, crēate*; or *Trochaic*, *i. e.* consisting of a long and a short syllable; *hōlŷ, lōftŷ*. In verses of the former kind the accents are to be placed on the even syllables; in the latter, on the odd syllables. But the measure of a verse in English is most frequently determined by its number of syllables only, without dividing them into particular feet.

1. IAMBIC MEASURE comprises verses,

1. Of *four syllables*, or of *two feet*; as,

With ravish'd ears,
The monarch hears. *Dryden*.

2. Of *six syllables*, or of *three feet*; as,

Aloft in awful state,
The godlike hero sat. *Dryden*.

3. Of *eight syllables*, or of *four feet*; as,

While dangers hourly round us rise,
No caution guards us from surprise. *Francis' Horace*.

4. Of *ten syllables*, or of *five feet*, which is the common measure of heroic and tragic poetry; as,

Poetic fields encompass me around,
And still I seem to tread on classic ground;
For here the muse so oft her harp has strung,
That not a mountain rears its head unsung. *Addison*.

Obs. 1. In measures of this last sort, we sometimes find the last line of a couplet or triplet stretched out to twelve syllables, or six feet, which is termed an *Alexandrine* verse; thus,

A needless Alexandrine ends the song,
Which, like a wounded snake, drags its slow length along. *Pope*.

Waller was smooth; but Dryden taught to join }
The varying verse, the full resounding line, }
The long majestic march, and energy divine. } *Pope*.

We also find the last verse of a triplet stretched out to fourteen syllables, or seven feet, but then it has commonly an Alexandrine verse before it; thus,

For thee the land in fragrant flow'rs is drest;
For thee the ocean smiles, and smoothes her wavy breast,
And heav'n itself with more serene and purer light is blest. } *Dryden*.

Sometimes also, when there is no Alexandrine before it; thus,

At length by fate to pow'r divine restor'd,
 His thunder taught the world to know its lord,
 The god grew terrible again, and was again ador'd. } *Rowe.*

Obs. 2. The more strictly Iambic these verses are, the more harmonious. In several of them, however, particularly in those of ten syllables, we often meet with a trochee, and likewise a spondee, instead of an iambus. Verses of heroic measure sometimes also admit a dactyle, or an anapestus, in place of the iambus; in which case a verse of five feet may comprehend eleven, twelve, thirteen, and even fourteen syllables; thus,

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14
 And many an humorous, many an amorous lay,
 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12
 Was sung by many a bard, on many a day.

This manner of writing every syllable fully is now generally used by the best poets, and seems much more proper than the ancient custom of cutting off vowels by an apostrophe. Our language abounds too much in consonants of itself; the elision of vowels therefore should be avoided as much as possible, and ought only to be admitted where it is absolutely necessary; as, *o'er*, for *over*; *e'er*, for *ever*, &c. The same observation may be applied to every kind of measure.

II. TROCHAIC MEASURE comprises verses,

1. Of *three syllables*; as,
 Dreadful gleams,
 Dismal screams, &c. *Pope.*

2. Of *five syllables*; as,
 In the days of old,
 Stories plainly told,
 Lovers felt annoy.

3. Of *seven syllables*; as,
 Fairest piece of well-form'd earth,
 Urge not thus your haughty birth. *Waller.*

These are the measures which are most commonly used in English poetry, especially those of seven, eight, and ten syllables.

We have another measure very quick and lively, and therefore much used in songs, which may be called *Anapestic* measure, *i. e.* a verse consisting of feet of three syllables, two short and one long, in which the accent rests upon every third syllable. Verses of anapestic measure consist of two, three, or four feet; that is, of six, nine, or twelve syllables; thus,

Let the loud trumpets sound,
 Till the roofs all around,
 The shrill echoes rebound. *Pope.*

From the plains, from the woodlands, and groves,
 How the nightingales warble their loves! *Shenstone.*

May I govern my passions with absolute sway,
 And grow wiser and better as life wears away. *Id.*

In this measure a syllable is often retrenched from the first foot; as,

The sword or the dart,
 Shall pierce my sad heart. *Addison.*
 Ye shepherds so cheerful and gay,
 Whose flocks never carelessly roam, &c.

I vow'd to the muses my time and my care,
 Since neither could win me the smiles of the fair. *Shenstone.*

These measures are variously combined together in *Stanzas*, particularly in short poems; for generally, in longer works, the same measure is always observed.

Stanzas are composed of more or fewer verses, and these variously diversified, according to the nature of the subject, and the taste of the poet. But when they are stretched out to a great length, and consist of verses of many different measures, they are seldom agreeable.

Such poems as consist of Stanzas which are not confined to a certain number of verses, nor the verses to a certain number of syllables, nor the rhymes to a certain distance, are called *Irregular* or *Pindaric* odes. Of this kind are several of the poems of Cowley. But in the odes of later authors, the numbers are exact, and the strophes regular.

Stanzas of four lines are the most frequent, in which the first verse answers to the third, and the second to the fourth. There is a stanza of this kind, consisting of verses of eight and of six syllables alternately, which is very often used, particularly in sacred poetry. Here, for the most part, the second and fourth lines only rhyme together; as,

When all thy mercies, O my God,
My rising soul surveys,
Transported with the view, I'm lost
In wonder, love, and praise. *Addison.*

Sometimes also the first and third lines answer to one another; as,

Keep silence, all created things,
And wait your Maker's nod:
The muse stands trembling, while she sings
The honors of her God. *Watts.*

This stanza is used in place of what anciently was comprehended in two verses, each consisting of fourteen syllables, having a pause after the eighth syllable.

Several of these measures are often varied by double endings, that is, by putting an additional short syllable at the end of the verse; as,

1. *In heroic measure, or verses of ten syllables, both in blank verse and rhyme.*

In Blank verse.

'Tis heaven itself that points out an hereafter. *Addison.*

In Rhyme, where it is called Double Rhyme.

The piece, you think, is incorrect? Why, take it;
I'm all submission; what you'd have it, make it. *Pope.*

2. *In verses of eight syllables.*

They neither added nor confounded,
They neither wanted nor abounded.

3. *In verses of six syllables.*

'Twas when the seas were roaring,
With hollow blasts of wind,
A damsel lay deploring,
All on a rock reclin'd. *Gay.*

4. *In verses of seven syllables.*

As Palemon, unsuspecting,
Prais'd the sly musician's art;
Love, his light disguise rejecting,
Lodg'd an arrow in his heart. *Shenstone.*

5. *In verses of three syllables.*

Glooms inviting,
Birds delighting. *Addison.*

6. *In the Anapæstic measure.*

Ah! friend, 'tis but idle to make such a pother,
Fate, fate has ordain'd us to plague one another. *Shenstone.*

Now with furies surrounded,
Despairing, confounded. *Pope.*

Double rhyme is used chiefly in poems of wit and humor, or in burlesque compositions.

Verses with double endings, in blank verse, most frequently occur in tragic poetry, where they often have a fine effect; thus,

I here devote me for my prince and country;
Let them be safe, and let me nobly perish. *Thomson.*

The dropping dews fell cold upon my head,
Darkness inclos'd, and the winds whistled round me. *Otway.*

APPENDIX.

Of Punctuation, Capitals, Abbreviations, Numerical Characters, Division of the Roman Months, and of Coins.

The different divisions of discourse are marked by certain characters called *Points*.

The points employed for this purpose are the *Comma* (,), *Semicolon* (;), *Colon* (:), *Period*, *Punctum*, or full stop (.).

Their names are taken from the different parts of the sentence which they are employed to distinguish.

The *Period* is a whole sentence complete by itself. The *Colon*, or member, is a chief constructive part, or greater division of a sentence. The *Semicolon*, or half-member, is a less constructive part, or subdivision, of a sentence or number. The *Comma*, or segment, is the least constructive part of a sentence, in this way of considering it; for the next subdivision of a sentence would be the resolution of it into *Phrases* and *Words*.

To these points may be added the *Semiperiod*, or less point, followed by a small letter. But this is of much the same use with the *Colon*, and occurs only in Latin books.

A simple sentence admits only of a full point at the end; because its general meaning cannot be distinguished into parts. It is only in compound sentences that all the different points are to be found.

Points likewise express the different pauses which should be observed in a just pronunciation of discourse. The precise duration of each pause, or note, cannot be defined. It varies according to the different subjects of discourse, and the different turns of human passion and thought. The period requires a pause in duration double of the colon; the colon double of the semicolon; and the semicolon double of the comma.

There are other points, which, together with a certain pause, also denote a different modulation of the voice, in correspondence with the sense. These are the *Interrogation* point (?), the *Exclamation* or *Admiration* point (!), and the *Parenthesis* (.). The first two generally mark an elevation of the voice, and a pause equal to that of a semicolon, colon, or a period, as the sense requires. The *Parenthesis* usually requires a moderate depression of the voice, with a pause somewhat greater than a comma. But these rules are liable to many exceptions. The modulation of the voice in reading, and the various pauses, must always be regulated by the sense.

Besides the points, there are several other marks made use of in books, to denote references and different distinctions, or to point out something remarkable or defective, &c. These are, the *Apostrophe* ('); *Asterisk* (*); *Hyphen* (-); *Obelisk* (†); *Double Obelisk* (‡); *Parallel Lines* (||); *Paragraph* (¶); *Section* (§); *Quotation* (" "); *Crotchets* []; *Brace* (}); *Ellipsis* (... or —); *Caret* (^); which last is only used in writing.

References are often marked by letters and figures.

Capitals, or large letters, are used at the beginning of sentences, of verses, and of proper names. Some use them at the beginning of every substantive noun. Adjectives, verbs, and other parts of speech, unless they be emphatical, commonly begin with a small letter.

Capitals, with a point after them, are often put for whole words; thus, A. marks *Aulus*, C. *Caius*, D. *Decimus*, L. *Lucius*, M. *Marcus*, P. *Publius*, Q. *Quinctius*, T. *Titus*. So F. stands for *Filius*, and N. for *Nepos*; as M. F. *Marci Filius*, M. N. *Marci Nepos*. In like manner P. C. marks *Patres Conscripti*; S. C. *Senatus Consultum*; P. R. *Populus Romanus*; S. P. Q. R. *Senatus Populusque Romanus*; U. C. *Urbs Condita*; S. P. D. *Salutem Plurimam dicit*; D. D. D. *Dat, dicat, dedicat*; D. D. C. Q. *Dat, dicat, consecratque*; H. S. written corruptly for L. L. S. *Sesterlius*, equal in value to two pounds of brass and a half; the two pounds being marked by L. L. *Libra, Libra*, and the half by S. *Semis*. So in modern books, A. D. marks *Anno Domini*, A. M. *Artium Magister*, Master

of Arts; M. D. *Medicinæ Doctor*; LL. D. *Legum Doctor*; N. B. *Nota Bene*; A. B. *Artium Baccalureus*; R. S. S. *Regiæ Societatis Socius*, Fellow of the Royal Society; S. T. P. *Sanctæ Theologiæ Professor*; V. D. M. *Verbi Dei Minister*, &c.

Capitals inverted stand for the proper names of women: as, *W* for *Marcia*; *Q* for *Caia*; *T* for *Lucia*, &c.

Sometimes a small letter or two is added to the capital; as, Etc. *Et cætera*; Ap. *Appius*; Cn. *Cneius*; Op. *Opiter*; Sp. *Spurius*; Ti. *Tiberius*; Sex. *Sextus*; Cos. *Consul*; Coss. *Consules*; Imp. *Imperator*; Imp. *Imperatores*.

In like manner in English, Esq. *Esquire*; Dr. *Debtor* or *Doctor*; Acct. *Account*; MS. *Manuscript*; MSS. *Manuscripts*; Do. *Ditto*; Rt. Hon. *Right Honorable*, &c.

Small letters are likewise often put as abbreviations of a word; as, i. e. *id est*; h. e. *hoc est*; e. g. *exempli gratiâ*; v. g. *verbi gratiâ*.

Several capitals were used by the ancient Romans to mark numbers, as appears under Numeral Adjectives, page 58. But in their notation, they also further combined C and I as follows:

A *thousand* is marked thus, *CIƆ.*, which, in later times, was contracted into *M*. Five hundred is marked thus, *ID.*, or, by contraction, *D*.

The annexing of *Q* to *ID.* makes its value ten times greater; thus, *IDQ.* marks five thousand; and *IDQQ.* fifty thousand.

The prefixing of *C*, together with the annexing of *Q* to the number of *CIƆ.* makes its value ten times greater; thus *CCIDQ.* denotes ten thousand; and *CCCIDQ.* a hundred thousand. The ancient Romans, according to Pliny, proceeded no farther in this method of notation. If they had occasion to express a larger number, they did it by repetition; thus, *CCCIDQ.* signified two hundred thousand, &c.

We sometimes find *thousands* expressed by a straight line drawn over the top of the numerical letters. Thus, — denotes three thousand; — ten thousand.

m.

x.

But the modern manner of marking numbers is much more simple, by these ten characters or figures, which, from the ten fingers of the hands, were called *Digits*; 1 one, 2 two, 3 three, 4 four, 5 five, 6 six, 7 seven, 8 eight, 9 nine, 0 naught, nothing. The first nine are called *Significant figures*. The last is called a *Cipher*.

Significant figures placed after one another increase their value ten times at every remove from the right hand to the left; thus,

8 Eight. 85 Eighty-five. 856 Eight hundred and fifty-six. 8566 Eight thousand five hundred and sixty-six.

When ciphers are placed at the right hand of a significant figure, each cipher increases the value of the figure ten times; thus,

1 One. 10 Ten. 100 A hundred. 1000 A thousand. 2 Two. 20 Twenty. 200 Two hundred. 2000 Two thousand.

Ciphers are often intermixed with significant figures, thus, 20202, *Twenty thousand two hundred and two*.

The superiority of the present method of marking numbers over that of the Romans, will appear by expressing the present year both in letters and figures, and comparing them together; *CIƆ, IDCCXCVIII.* or *M, DCCXCVIII.* 1798.

As the Roman manner of marking the days of their months was quite different from ours, it may perhaps be of use here to give a short account of it.

Division of the Roman Months.

The Romans divided their months in three parts, by *Kalends*, *Nones*, and *Ides*. The first day of every month was called the *Kalends*; the fifth day was called the *Nones*; and the thirteenth day was called the *Ides*; except in the months of March, May, July, and October, in which the *nones* fell upon the seventh day, and the *ides* on the fifteenth.

In reckoning the days of their months, they counted backwards. Thus, the first day of January was marked *Kalendis Januariis*, or *Januarii*, or by contraction, *Kal. Jan.* The last day of December, *Pridie Kalendas Januarias* or *Januarii*, scil. *ante*. The day before that, or the 30th day of December, *Tertio Kal. Jan.* scil. *die ante*; or *Ante diem tertium Kal. Jan.* The twenty-ninth day of December, *Quarto Kal. Jan.* And so on, till they came back to the thir-

teenth day of December, or to the ides, which were marked *Idibus Decembribus*, or *Decembris*: the day before the ides, *Pridie Idus Dec.* scil. *ante*: the day before that, *Tertio, Id. Dec.* and so back to the nones, or the fifth day of the month, which was marked *Nonis Decembribus* or *Decembris*: the day before the nones, *Pridie Non. Dec.* &c. and thus through all the months of the year.

¶ Thus we see the Romans did not, in computing time, begin at 1, the first, and go to 30 or 31, the last of the month, as we do; but they counted backwards from three fixed periods or points, beginning at the Kalends, always the first day of every month.

And in reckoning from any given point, as the Nones, (e. gr.) they included that point: thus, *tertio Nonas Aprilis*, the third day before the nones of April, (i. e. before the fifth,) is not the second of April, *but the third*. Hence, to calculate the day of the month, use this rule:

Add one to that number from which the subtraction is to be made, as in the above example: $5 + 1 - 3$ equal 3, *the third day of April*.

But if the reckoning is to be made from the Kalends of the following month, add two to the number of days in the current month for the Minuend: thus, *Sexto Kalendas Octobris*, is the 26th of September, the current month of 30 days: for $30 + 2 - 6$, equal 26.

Kalends are named from *Calo*, to call. The *Nones*, from there being *nine days*, inclusive, between them and the Ides; and the *Ides* are from *iduo*, to divide.

To facilitate the calculation of dates, as expressed in the Classics; and to show the correspondence between the Roman computation of the days of their month and our own, we subjoin the following

TABLE:

Days of our Mths.	March, May, July and October, have each 31 days.	January, August, and December, each 31 days.	April, June, September, and November, each 30 days.	February has 28, and in Leap-year 29 days.
1	Kalendis.	Kalendis.	Kalendis.	Kalendis.
2	6	4	4	4
3	5	3	3	3
4	4			
5	3			
6	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.	Pridie Nonas.
7	Nonis.	Nonis.	Nonis.	Nonis.
8	8	7	7	7
9	7	6	6	6
10	6	5	5	5
11	5	4	4	4
12	4	3	3	3
13	3	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.	Pridie Idus.
14	Pridie Idus.	Idibus.	Idibus.	Idibus.
15	Idibus.	19	18	16
16	17	18	17	15
17	16	17	16	14
18	15	16	15	13
19	14	15	14	12
20	13	14	13	11
21	12	13	12	10
22	11	12	11	9
23	10	11	10	8
24	9	10	9	7
25	8	9	8	6
26	7	8	7	5
27	6	7	6	4
28	5	6	5	3
29	4	5	4	
30	3	4	3	Pridie Kalendas Martias.
31	Pridie Kalendas, of the following month.	3	Pridie Kalendas, of the following month.	

In *Leap-year*, that is, when February has twenty-nine days, which happens every fourth year, both the 24th and 25th days of that month were marked, *Sexto Kalendas Martii* or *Martias*; and hence this year is called *Bissextilis*.

JUNIUS, APRILIS, SEPTEMque, NOVEMque tricenos;
Unum plus reliqui; FEBRUUS, tenet octo viginti;
At si bissextus fuerit, superadditur unus.
Tu primam mensis lucem dic esse kalendas,
Sex MAIUS, nonas OCTOBER, JULIUS, et MARS,
Quatuor at reliqui; dabit idus quilibet octo.
Omnes post idus lucas dic esse kalendas,
Nomen sortiri debent a mense sequenti.

Thus, the 14th day of *April, June, September, and October*, was marked XVIII. Kal. of the following month; the 15th, XVII. Kal. &c. The 14th day of *January, August, and December*, XIX. Kal. &c. So the 16th day of *March, May, July, and October*, was marked XVII. Kal. &c. And the 14th day of *February*, XVI. Kal. Martii or Martias. The names of all the months are used as Substantives or Adjectives, except *Aprilis*, which is used only as a Substantive.

ROMAN COINS.

The Romans at first had no coined money, but used a certain weight of brass, or other metal, in exchange for commodities. So their names of money (as it was at first weighed, not counted) also denote weight; as do talentum among the Greeks, shekel among the Hebrews, and pound with us.

The principal denominations of Roman money are, the *As* or *Æs*, *Sestertius*, *Aureus* or *Denarius*, *Pondo* or *Libra*. The weight and value of their coins varied in different ages of the empire.

The *As*, originally a pound of brass, was divided into twelve parts, or *uncia*; thus, *uncia*, an ounce, or $\frac{1}{12}$ of an *As*; *sextans*, 2 oz. or $\frac{2}{12}$, *quadrans*, $\frac{3}{12}$, or 3 oz.; *triens*, $\frac{4}{12}$; *quincunx*, $\frac{5}{12}$; *semis* or *semissis*, $\frac{6}{12}$; *septunx*, $\frac{7}{12}$; *bes* or *bessis*, $\frac{8}{12}$; *dodrans*, $\frac{9}{12}$; *dextans* or *decunx*, $\frac{10}{12}$; *deunx*, $\frac{11}{12}$ of an *As*, or 11 ounces. *As* was also applied to any thing divided into 12 parts, as an acre, an inheritance, &c.

The *uncia*, was also divided; thus, *semiuncia*, half an ounce, or $\frac{1}{24}$ of an *As*; *duella*, $\frac{1}{3}$, &c.

After silver was coined, the *As* was made at first $\frac{1}{7}$, then $\frac{1}{12}$, then $\frac{1}{24}$ of its original weight, and so on till at last it weighed but half an *uncia*.

The *Denarius*, half of which was a *quinarius*, was originally equal to 10 asses.

The *Sestertius* was $\frac{1}{4}$ of a *denarius*, i. e. two asses and a half, or $2\frac{1}{2}$ pounds of brass; and is frequently denoted by H. S. or L. L. S., and also called *nummus*.

Libella, $\frac{1}{10}$ of a *Denarius*; *Sembella*, $\frac{1}{20}$; and *Teruncius*, $\frac{1}{40}$, were smaller silver coins.

The *Aureus*, or *Solidus*, was at first equal to two *denarii*; but afterward was valued at 25 *denarii*.

Sestertium, used as the name of a sum, not of a coin, denoted always a thousand *Sestertii*.

The *Talentum*, used by the Romans, equalled 24 *Sestertia*.

After the Romans coined silver, they kept their accounts in *Sesterces*, instead of *Asses*, as at first.

In computing money by *Sestertii*, or *Sestertia*, observe the following rules:

If a numeral adjective agree with *Sestertii*, it denotes precisely so many *sestertii*; as, *decem sestertii*, ten *sesterces*: but if the ad-

jective agree with *sestertia*, it denotes so many thousand *sestertii*; thus, *decem sestertia*, ten thousand *sesterces*.

If a numeral adjective of a different case be joined to the genitive plural of *sestertius*, it means so many thousand *sestertii*; as, *decem sestertiūm*, ten thousand *sesterces*: but if a numeral adverb be joined, it means so many hundred thousand; as, *millies sestertiūm*, a thousand times a hundred thousand *sestertii*.

When the adverb stands by itself, it denotes the same thing; thus, *decies* implies as much as *decies nummūm* or *sestertiūm*; a million of *sesterces*, for *decies centena millia sestertiūm*.

If letters standing for sums have a bar over them, *centena millia* is understood; thus, $\overline{\text{H. S. M. C.}}$ is the same with *millies centies*, i. e. one hundred and ten millions *sestertii*; but H. S. M. C. , without the line, denotes 1100 *sesterces*.

The *As* or *Æs* was of brass, sometimes silver; the *Aureus*, of gold; the *Denarius*, *Sestertius*, and *Drachma*, were of silver.

A few Roman Coins in Sterling and Federal Money.

The *Libra* contained twelve ounces of silver, and was worth about £3 sterling, equal to \$13 33 cts. 2 m.

Talent, about £193 sterling, equal to \$861 2½ cts.

Mina, £3 4s. 7d. sterling, equal to \$14 35 cts. 18 hundredths of a cent.

As or *Libella*, £0 0s. 0d. $3\frac{1}{16}$ qrs. sterling, equal to \$0 1 ct. 43 hundredths of a cent.

Sestertius, £0 0s. 1d. $3\frac{3}{4}$ qrs. sterling, equal to \$0 3 cts. 53 hundredths, though others say $3\frac{3}{4}$ cts.

Denarius, £0 0s. 7d. 3 qrs. sterling, equal to \$0 14 cts. 35 hundredths, though others say about 15 cts.

Aureus, £0 16s. 1d. 3 qrs. sterling, equal to \$3 58 cts. 8m. though some say \$3 75 cts.

Obolus, £0 0s. 1d. $1\frac{1}{8}$ qrs. sterling, equal to \$0 2 cts. 33 hundredths of a cent.

Drachma, equal in value with the *Denarius*.

FINIS.

H23 81





Deacidified using the Bookkeeper process.
Neutralizing agent: Magnesium Oxide
Treatment Date: July 2006

PreservationTechnologies

A WORLD LEADER IN PAPER PRESERVATION

111 Thomson Park Drive
Cranberry Township, PA 16066
(724) 779-2111



APR 81



N. MANCHESTER,
INDIANA 46962

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 003 040 131 1